特高级教师

点拨®

知识
方法
素养

七年级 英语 下 （R版）

主　　编：荣德基
学科主编：李　丽
本册主编：杨书枝



握分一定有方法

吉林教育出版社

教辅资料站

电子教辅　试卷练习
知识总结　备课资源

扫码关注获取更多学习资料

点拨 不只提分



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



目录

Unit 1 Can you play the guitar?

魔法六维导图 …… 1
记忆大师 …… 1
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d） …… 3
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c） …… 11
Period 3 Section B（1a–1f） …… 16
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c） …… 17
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check） … 24
素养：了解国际象棋，学会与人共事 …… 5
了解俱乐部文化，学会享受生活 … 8

Unit 2 What time do you go to school?

魔法六维导图 …… 27
记忆大师 …… 27
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d） …… 29
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c） …… 36
Period 3 Section B（1a–1e） …… 39
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c） …… 42
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check） … 47

Unit 3 How do you get to school?

魔法六维导图 …… 51
记忆大师 …… 51
Period 1 Section A（1a–2e） …… 53
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c） …… 57
Period 3 Section B（1a–1e） …… 62
Period 4 Section B（2a–2d） …… 64
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check） … 70

Unit 4 Don't eat in class.

魔法六维导图 …… 73
记忆大师 …… 73
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d） …… 75
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c） …… 82
Period 3 Section B（1a–1d） …… 86
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c） …… 88
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check） … 95
素养：Fighting, fighting! 加油，加油！ …… 78
养成读书习惯，享受读书时间 …… 92

Unit 5 Why do you like pandas?

魔法六维导图 …… 99
记忆大师 …… 99
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d） …… 101
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c） …… 108
Period 3 Section B（1a–1d） …… 112
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c） …… 114
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check） … 120
素养：了解大象，尊重中外文化 …… 102

Unit 6 I'm watching TV.

魔法六维导图 …… 123
记忆大师 …… 123
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d） …… 125
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c） …… 131
Period 3 Section B（1a–1e） …… 136
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c） …… 138
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check） … 144
素养：了解下午茶，感受异国茶文化 …… 132

Unit 7 It's raining!

魔法六维导图 …… 147
记忆大师 …… 147
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d） …… 149
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3b） …… 157

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）…… 160
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）…… 162
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）… 167
素养：了解中外问候文化，学会与人交流… 151
学会礼貌待人，培养感恩的心 … 152

Unit 8 Is there a post office near here?

魔法六维导图…… 171
记忆大师…… 171
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）…… 173
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c）…… 181
Period 3 Section B（1a–1d）…… 184
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）…… 187
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）… 192
素养：了解异国文化，学会礼貌待人…… 179
合理用钱，培养正确的财富观 … 191

Unit 9 What does he look like?

魔法六维导图…… 195
记忆大师…… 195
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）…… 197
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3d）…… 204
Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）…… 207
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）…… 209
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）… 216
素养：了解中外文化差异，学会委婉礼貌… 199

Unit 10 I'd like some noodles.

魔法六维导图…… 219
记忆大师…… 219
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）…… 221
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c）…… 226
Period 3 Section B（1a–1d）…… 230
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）…… 233
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）… 240
素养：对比中外文化差异，学习跨文化交际… 236
了解中外节日文化，培养跨文化交际素养 …… 236

Unit 11 How was your school trip?

魔法六维导图…… 243
记忆大师…… 243
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）…… 245
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3b）…… 251
Period 3 Section B（1a–1d）…… 257
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）…… 259
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）… 267
素养：学习中西方文化，学会与人相处 … 263
培养兴趣，开启成功之门 …… 264

Unit 12 What did you do last weekend?

魔法六维导图…… 270
记忆大师…… 270
Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）…… 272
Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c）…… 279
Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）…… 283
Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）…… 285
Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）… 293
素养：走进自然，热爱生活…… 274
科学休息，学会生活 …… 277

参考答案及点拨 …… 296
教材习题参考答案 …… 307

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



全书考点索引

单词（按字母顺序排列）

actor 205
afraid 68
Africa 105
again 158
age 235
ago 287
along 186
also 19
another 214
answer 234
any 141
anything 247
around 179
arrive 77
artist 211
at 32
bad 152
because 104
beef 222
before 88
behind 178
between 67
bowl 224
bring 80
brush 31
bus 54
busy 21
by 164
camp 273
Canada 164
children 142
clean 41
cloudy 151
cold 161
cook 152
cross 66
cut 118
different 235
differently 213
draw 8
dream 69
dress 31
drink 132
dry 161
each 212
early 32
either 45
elephant 102
enjoy 191
everything 263
excellent 249
exciting 261
exercise 33
expensive 262
face 208
fast 262
feed 246
feel 92
fight 78
fire 259
first 104
fish 232
forget 117
free 190
friendly 113
front 178
funny 33
get 237
gift 263
glasses 202
group 37
grow 248
half 40
hard 165
healthy 49
hear 265
heavy 199
height 199
high 287
home 19
homework 41
hospital 175
hundred 55
idea 238
important 80
join 7
later 202
learn 96
leave 69
life 49
like 69
live 59
lovely 261
luck 93
luckily 254
make 20
man 137
many 67
message 153
milk 246
miss 142
money 191
more 91
museum 258
near 175
need 21
never 32
newspaper 126
north 182
or 13
order 224
other 141
outside 79
over 119
past 41
pay 176
person 205
pick 249
play 5
police 174
popular 238
potato 222
practice 87
put 211
quarter 41
quickly 44
race 140
rain 150
read 91
relax 91
remember 93
ride 287
right 186
rule 76
run 41
save 116
scared 290
sheep 274
shop 137
shout 280
show 12
singer 209
sleep 106
slow 261
small 114
so 213
sometimes 44
sorry 79
south 105
speak 5
special 223
spend 189
start 291
stay 277
still 143
stop 63
straight 198
strict 92
study 140
surprise 289
swim 7
take 56
tall 198
taste 46
tea 132
teach 23
tell 9
tired 277
tooth 31
turn 186
up 30
use 127
visit 163
wake 291
watch 190
way 212
wear 79
weather 151
wish 142
with 276
work 32
worry 253
write 12
yet 223
young 142

短语（按字母顺序排列）

a little 202
a lot 109
across from 176
all in all 263
any other 140
anything interesting 284
around the world 234
be from 106
be good at… 9
be good with… 20
be in (great) danger 118
be interested in 264

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



be late for… 34
between…and… 177
call sb. at… 21
come out 254
come true 69
cut up 238
each other 288
either…or… 45
every day 56
excuse me 178
far from 179
first of all 216
fly a kite 284
for a long time 117
get dressed 31
get lost 117
get to 55
get up 30
go boating 273
go to school 30
go to the movies 128
go to work 34
have a good time 153
help with sth. 22
in class 78
in the end 214
kind of 105
living habits 276
look out of 290
lots of 46
made of… 119
make a wish 236
make breakfast 87
may be 201
next to 177
not at all 265
on a vacation 165
on the phone 126
on time 77
one of… 116
play the violin 17
police artist 211
put up 287
quite a lot 247
right now 158
run away 280
show…around 248
so…that… 288
sports club 8
stay up 277
take a photo 168
take a walk 42
the number of… 235
there be 175
think of 63
too many 90
walk to… 59
wash the dishes 127
work as 275
write to… 165

句型（按字母顺序排列）

Can you…? 7
Could you…? 154
Don't+ 动词原形 . 76
Good luck! 93
How can I help you ? 179
How do/does sb. get to…? 55
How's the weather ? 150
How's it going ? 152
I'd love to. 129
It is+*adj.*+(of/for sb.)+to do sth. 66
Let's+ 动词短语 . 103
May I take your order? 224
Not bad, thanks. 152
Really ? 276
Sb. have/has a very+ 形容词 + life. 48
Sounds good. 9
Sure, no problem. 155
That's why… 281
What about…? 8
What size…? 225
What+do/does+ 主语 +look like? 200
Why don't you…? 106

辨析（按本书页码排列）

辨析：speak，say，talk 与 tell 6
辨析：join，join in 与 take part in 7
辨析：or，and，but 与 so 13
辨析：also，too 与 either 19
辨析：home，family 与 house 19
辨析：at，in 与 on 32
辨析：quickly，fast 与 soon 44
辨析：sometimes，some times，some time 与 sometime 44
辨析：either…or…,neither… nor…,both…and 与 not only… but also… 45
辨析：take the/a bus 与 on the/a bus 54
辨析：get to，arrive 与 reach 55
辨析：hundred 与 hundreds of 55
辨析：every day 与 everyday 56
辨析：cross，across 和 crossing 66
辨析：many，much 与 lots of 67
辨析：between 与 among 67
辨析：11-year-old 与 11 years old 68
辨析：be afraid to do sth. 与 be afraid of（doing）sth. 68
辨析：leave，leave for 与 leave… for… 69
辨析：on time 与 in time 77
辨析：listen 与 hear 78
辨析：in class 与 in the class 78
辨析：fight for 与 fight against/with 78
辨析：wear，put on，dress，have…on 与 in 79
辨析：bring，take 与 get 80
辨析：too many，too much 与 much too 90
辨析：read，watch，see 与 look 91
辨析：be strict with sb. 与 be strict in sth. 92
辨析：remember to do sth. 与 remember doing sth. 93
辨析：let's 与 let us 103
辨析：sleep，go to sleep 与 go to bed 107
辨析：forget to do sth. 与 forget doing sth. 117
辨析：be made of，be made from 与 be made in 119
辨析：race 与 game 140
辨析：any 与 some 141
辨析：other，others，the other，the others 与 another 141
辨析：wish 与 hope 142
辨析：cold 与 cool 161
辨析：by，near，beside 与 next to 164
辨析：vacation 与 holiday 165
辨析：there be 与 have/has 175
辨析：across，over 与 through 177
辨析：behind 与 after 178
辨析：spend，pay，cost 与 take 189
辨析：watch sb. doing sth. 与 watch sb. do sth. 190
辨析：look like 与 be like 200
辨析：may be 与 maybe 201
辨析：person 与 people 205
辨析：each 与 every 212
辨析：first of all 与 at first 216
辨析：the number of 与 a number of 235
辨析：become，get，turn 与 grow 237
辨析：quite 与 very 247
辨析：slow 与 slowly 261
辨析：exciting 与 excited 261
辨析：expensive 与 high 262
辨析：all in all，in all，after all 与 above all 263
辨析：as 与 like 275
辨析：shout at 与 shout to 281
辨析：ago 与 before 287
辨析：surprise，surprised 与 surprising 289

语法（按本书页码排列）

情态动词 can 的用法（U1） 14
询问时间与时间的表达方法（U2） 37
频度副词（U2） 38
how 引导的特殊疑问句（U3） 60
祈使句（U4） 83
情态动词 have to 和 must（U4） 84
why，where 引导的特殊疑问句（U5） 110
形容词的用法（U5） 111
现在进行时（I）（U6） 133
现在进行时（II）（U7） 158
how 询问天气状况及表达问候（U7） 159
there be 句型（U8） 182
问路和指路（U8） 183
询问及描述长相（U9） 206
描述性形容词（U9） 206
would like 的用法（U10） 228
名词的数（U10） 229
一般过去时的用法（U11） 255
一般过去时的特殊疑问句（U12） 281

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

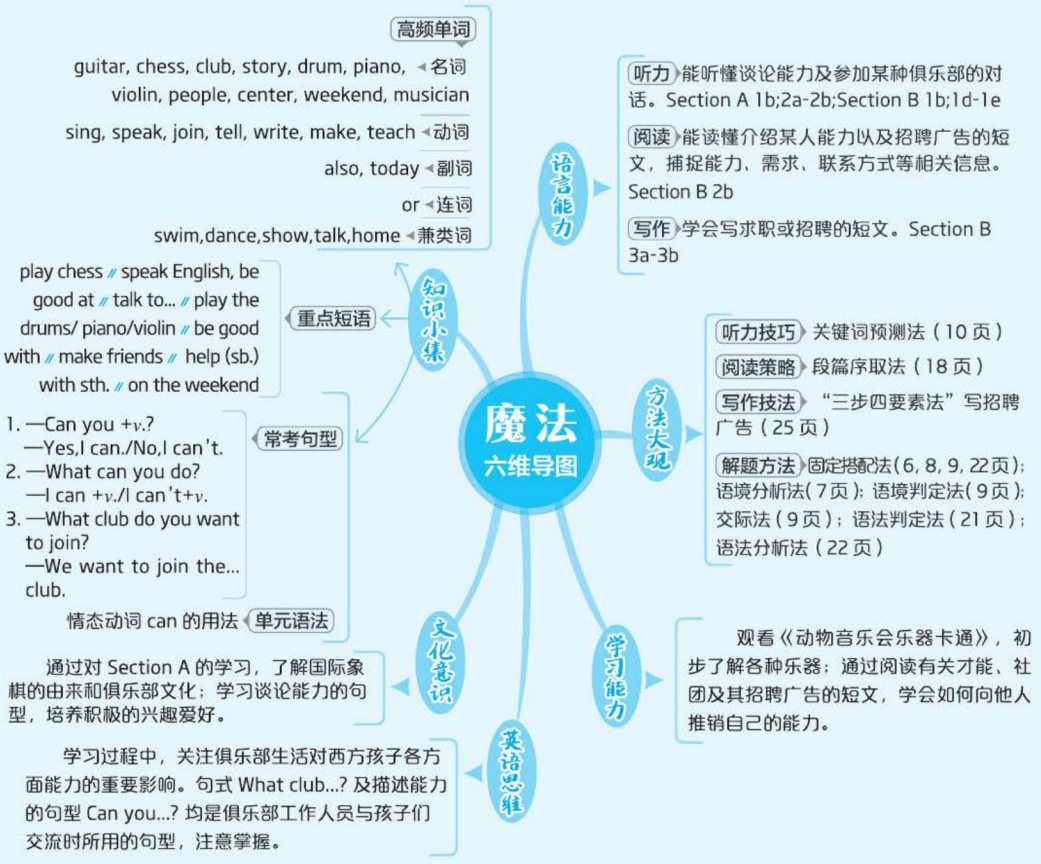
三步阅读学习法

课标中 对“读”的要求		1. 能根据上下文和构词法推断、理解生词的含义。 2. 能理解段落中各句子之间的逻辑关系。 3. 能找出文章中的主题，理解故事的情节，预测故事情节的发展和可能的结局。 4. 能读懂相应水平的常见体裁的读物。 5. 能根据不同的阅读目的运用简单的阅读策略获取信息。 6. 能利用词典等工具书进行阅读。 7. 课外阅读量应累计达到 15 万词以上。
课标中 对“写”的要求		1. 能根据写作要求，收集、准备素材。 2. 能独立起草短文、短信等，并在教师的指导下进行修改。 3. 能使用常见的连接词表示顺序和逻辑关系。 4. 能简单描述人物或事件。 5. 能根据图示或表格写出简单的段落或操作说明。
考情分析		阅读技能和写作技能是英语学科考试主要考查的两项内容，且阅读量近年来呈上升趋势，在有些省份的中考中写作分数所占的百分比也有所增加。阅读方面要求学生具有理解各种题材和体裁的书面材料并从各种材料中获取信息的能力，写作上要求学生具有运用所学语言知识与技能进行信息沟通、再现生活经历、描述周围事物、发表意见和观点的能力。简言之，就是要求学生在大量的语言材料有效输入与积累的基础上有可观的输出。
目　的		三步阅读学习法——整体式语篇学习法的目的是让学生在完整的语境中感知文本，在阅读中解读语言所表达的含义，在实际交流中体会语言所起的作用。从而提高学生的阅读技能、培养学生的阅读策略及自主阅读能力。
三步 阅读学习法	读前	有创意的读前活动是阅读课的导入关键，学生通过参与一些与课文话题相关的活动，激活了思维，从而产生阅读的愿望，并对课文进行有效的预测。
	读中	通过围绕 scanning，skimming 和 detailed reading 设置的一系列的活动，学生学会在阅读中思考，并逐步掌握一些阅读技巧，真正提高阅读水平。
	读后	阅读后的说和写活动是检查阅读理解效果和巩固运用语言材料的阶段。学生可通过复述、续写、缩写、改写、创写等读后活动，实现从语言输入到输出的迁移。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 Can you play the guitar?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1.guitar *n.* 吉他

2.sing *v.* 唱歌→ singing（现在分词）

3.swim *v.* & *n.* 游泳→ swims（第三人称单数）→ swimming（现在分词）→ go swimming 去游泳

4.join *v.* 参加；加入→ join a club 加入一个俱乐部

5.club *n.* 俱乐部；社团

6.dance *v.* 跳舞； *n.* 舞蹈

7.draw *v.* 画 → draw a picture 画一幅画

8.chess *n.* 国际象棋

9.speak *v.* 说（某种语言）；说话

10.tell *v.* 讲述；告诉

11.story *n.* 故事；小说

必背短语

12.play the guitar 弹吉他

13.play chess 下国际象棋

14.speak English 说英语

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

15.tell stories 讲故事

16.be good at... 擅长于……

必背句子

17.**What club** do you want to join?

你想加入什么俱乐部?

18.You're very **good at telling** stories.

你很擅长讲故事。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

必背单词

1.**write** *v.* 写作;写字 → writes(第三人称单数)→ writer 作家;作者

2.**show** *n.* 演出;节目 *v.* 给……看;展示 → show sb. sth./ show sth. to sb. 把某物展示给某人

3.**talk** *v.* & *n.* 说话;交谈→ talk to... 跟……说

4.**or** *conj.* 或者;也不(用于否定句)→在否定句和疑问句中代替 and

必背句子 & 语法

5.We **want** students **for** the **school show**.

我们想为学校演出招募学生。

6. —**What can** you **do**?

你会做什么?

—I **can** dance./I **can't** sing.

我会跳舞。/我不会唱歌。

7. **Come and show** us!

来展示给我们吧!

8. —**Can** you swim?

你会游泳吗?

—**Yes, I can./No, I can't.**

是,我会。/不,我不会。

Period 3 Section B (1a–1f)

必背单词

1.**drum** *n.* 鼓

2.**violin** *n.* 小提琴

必背短语

3.play the drums 敲鼓

4.play the piano 弹钢琴

必背句子

5. —**Can you** play the violin?

你会拉小提琴吗?

—**No, I can't.**

不,我不会。

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

必背单词

1.**people** *n.* 人;人们

2.**make** *v.* 使成为;制造 → make friends 交朋友

3.**teach** *v.* 教;讲授 → teach sb. sth. 教某人某事

4.**also** *adv.* 也;而且

5.**center** *n.* (=centre)中心;中央

6.**today** *adv.* 在今天

7.**home** *n.* 家;活动本部 *adv.* 到家;在家→ at home 在家 → go home 回家

8.**weekend** *n.* 周末

必背短语

9.be good with... 善于应付……的;对……有办法

10.help (sb.) with sth. 在某方面帮助(某人)

11.on the weekend (在)周末

必背句子

12.**I can** speak English **and I can** also play soccer.

我会说英语,我也会踢足球。

13. **Are** you **good with** old people?

你善于和老人打交道吗?

14. Do you **have time on the weekend**?

在周末你有时间吗?

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

必背单词

1. **musician** *n.* 音乐家→ **music** 音乐 → **musical** 音乐的

必背句子

2. **Can you** sing and dance?

你会唱歌跳舞吗?

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about abilities
语言目标：谈论能力

1a What can these people do? Match the activities with the people. 这些人会做什么？将活动与人物匹配。

1.sing /sɪŋ/ ___e___ 唱歌 ___e___
2.swim /swɪm/ _____ 游泳 _____
3.dance /dɑ:ns/,/dæns/ _____ 跳舞 _____
4.draw /drɔ:/ _____ 画画 _____
5.play① chess /tʃes/ _____ 下国际象棋 _____
6.speak /spi:k/② English _____ 说英语 _____
7.play the guitar /gɪ'tɑ:(r)/ _____ 弹吉他 _____

—I want③ to join /dʒɔɪn/④ the art club /klʌb/. ——我想加入美术俱乐部。
—Can you draw? ——你会画画吗?
—Yes, I can. ——是的，我会。
—Can you swim? ——你会游泳吗?
—No, I can't. ——不，我不会。
—I want to join the music club. ——我想加入音乐俱乐部。
—Oh, can you sing? ——哦，你会唱歌吗?
—Yes, I can. ——是的，我会。

1b Listen and number the conversations [1-3]. 听录音，给下列对话编号［1–3］。

课文听力1b

□ **A:**Can you swim⑤?⑥ □ 你会游泳吗?
B:No, I can't. 不，我不会。

□ **A:**I want to join the art club. □ 我想加入美术俱乐部。
B:Can you draw⑦? 你会画画吗?
A:Yes, I can. 是的，我会。

□ **A:**I want to join the music club. □ 我想加入音乐俱乐部。
B:Oh, can you sing? 哦，你会唱歌吗?
A:Yes, I can. 是的，我会。

1c Practice the conversations above with your partner.Then make your own conversations.
和你的同伴一起练习上面的对话。然后编写你们自己的对话。

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2a Listen to these two conversations and circle the clubs you hear.

听这两段对话，圈出你听到的俱乐部。



a. English club 英语俱乐部

b. art club 美术俱乐部

c. music club 音乐俱乐部

d. chess club 国际象棋俱乐部

e. swimming club 游泳俱乐部

—What club[8] do you want to join? ——你想加入什么俱乐部?

—I want to join the chess club. ——我想加入国际象棋俱乐部。

2b Listen again. Complete the sentences. 再听一遍录音，完成句子。

1. Lisa /ˈliːzə/ wants to join the _____ club, but she can't play_____.

   莉萨想加入_____俱乐部，但是她不会弹_____。

2. Bob wants to join the _____ club. He likes to speak _____.

   鲍勃想加入_____俱乐部，他喜欢说_____。

3. Mary likes music. She can _____ and _____. Bob likes music, too. They want to join the _____ club. 玛丽喜欢音乐。她会_____和_____。鲍勃也喜欢音乐。他们想加入_____俱乐部。

2c Look at 2b and talk about what the people can do and the clubs they want to join.

看 2b 部分，讨论一下人们会做什么以及他们想加入的俱乐部。

—What club does Lisa want to join? 莉萨想加入什么俱乐部?

—She wants to join the... 她想加入……

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。



Jane: Hi, Bob. What club do you want to join? 喂，鲍勃。你想加入什么俱乐部?

Bob: I want to join a sports club[9]. 我想加入体育运动俱乐部。

Jane: Great! What sports can you play? 很好！你会做什么运动?

Bob: Soccer. 足球。

Jane: So you can join the soccer club. 那么你可以加入足球俱乐部。

Bob: What about you? [10] You're very good at[11] telling /ˈtelɪŋ/[12] stories /ˈstɔːriz/. You can join the story telling club. 你呢? 你很擅长讲故事。你可以加入讲故事俱乐部。

Jane: Sounds good.[13] But I like to draw, too. 听起来不错。但是我也喜欢画画。

Bob: Then join two clubs,the story telling club and the art club!

那么你就加入两个俱乐部——讲故事俱乐部和美术俱乐部!

Jane: OK, let's join now! 好，咱们现在就加入吧!

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★play chess

① 【高频】**play** /pleɪ/ *v.* 参加（比赛或运动）；玩耍

【易错点】play 用作及物动词时的常见用法：

play 一词多义
- play the+乐器 意为“弹奏……”。
- play +球类/棋类 意为“打/下……”。
- play +游戏/娱乐类 意为“玩/演……”。

e.g. Let's play basketball after school. 放学后我们去打篮球吧。

He is playing the guitar over there. 他正在那边弹吉他。

考题在线1 Lily practices playing _____ piano after school every day. [武威、白银]

A. a B. an C. / D. the

考题在线2 Let's play _____ volleyball. [广元]

A. / B. the C. a

vi. 不及物动词

e.g. Dolphins can play with the ball. 海豚会玩球。

+物，表示“玩耍某物”。

Lin Zhiying likes to play with his children when he has time.

林志颖喜欢在有空的时候跟他的孩子们玩。

+人，表示“与某人玩”。

速记小筏：妙记play的用法

play用法比较多，都有哪些听我说：打球玩牌下象棋，其后不能把the加；若把乐器来演奏，定冠词the必须跟；与人比赛或扮演，动词play它都管。

核心素养之文化意识

了解国际象棋，学会与人共事

国际象棋(chess)又称西洋棋，起源于亚洲，由阿拉伯人(Arabs)传入欧洲(Europe)。关于国际象棋的产生，国际上流传着一个有趣的故事。据说2000年以前，印度有一个非常残暴的国王，自己独断专行，想干什么就干什么。国王有个聪明的亲信大臣，发明了国际象棋，借以说明“君王不能离开臣民而存在”的道理。同时，国际象棋也告诉我们一个道理：人生在世不能独断专行，刚愎自用，要有团队精神(spirit)，懂得与人共事的道理。

素养行动：你是一个比较有个性、比较自我的人吗？以后再遇到难以解决的问题时，听听他人的建议吧，你一定会有意想不到的收获。

素养行动结果：避免自以为是，学会听从他人建议及学会与人共事。

★speak English

② **speak** /spi:k/ *v.* 说（某种语言）；说话

e.g.I can speak a little French. 我会说一点法语。

First think, and then speak. 三思而后言。

I'm pleased to speak to them. 跟他们谈话我十分高兴。

拓展：speak 可用于打电话时告诉对方你要找的人是谁或者打电话的人是谁。

e.g. May I speak to Lucy？ 我可以和露西通话吗？

- speak 用作及物动词，意为“说（某种语言）”，后接表示语言的名词作宾语。
- speak 用作不及物动词，意为“说话”，通常指说话的能力或方式，也有“演讲，发言”之意；后跟宾语时要加介词to。

教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

speak 相关短语
- speak+ 语言 说某种语言
- speak with sb. 与某人交谈
- speak to sb. 对某人说话
- speak out 大声说出

辨析：speak，say，talk 与 tell

speak	*vt.* 说（某种语言）*vi.* 说话	① speak+ 语言 说某种语言 ② speak to sb. 跟某人说话
say	*vt.* 说（内容）	① say sth. to sb. 对某人说某事 ② say sth. in+ 语言　用某种语言说某事物
talk	*vi.* 说话	① talk to sb. 向某人说 ② talk with sb. 和某人交谈 ③ talk about sth. 谈论某事
tell	*vt.* 告诉，讲述，命令	① tell sb. sth.= tell sth. to sb. 告诉某人某事 ② tell sb.(not) to do sth. 让某人（不要）做某事 ③ tell sb. about sth. 告诉某人关于某事

e.g. Speak Chinese. 说中文。

The boy tries to speak to a parrot. 这个男孩试图对一只鹦鹉说话。

The baby can speak. 这个婴儿会说话。

Say it to me again. 再跟我说一遍它。

She said "Good morning" in French. 她用法语说"早上好"。

Don't talk to him. 别跟他说话。

Guo Degang is talking with Yue Yunpeng. 郭德纲正在和岳云鹏交谈。

What are you talking about？ 你们在谈论什么?

You can't tell her the joke. =You can't tell the joke to her. 你不能跟她讲那个笑话。

The teacher told us to listen carefully. 老师让我们认真听。

He wants to tell me about his family. 他想告诉我关于他的家庭的事。

一语辨异：
He told me he could speak English. When we talked about English, he said, "English isn't easy to learn." 他告诉我他会说英语。当我们谈论英语的时候，他说："英语不容易学。"

考题在线 3 —I have trouble _____ English, Mr. Lee.

—Why not go to the English Corner(英语角) and try to talk with others? 【导学号：8811889】[福建]

A. reading　　B. writing　　C. speaking

点拨：由答语"为什么不去英语角尝试和别人交谈呢？"可知，空格后的 English 是语言，指"英语"。表示"说某种语言"要用 speak。

★I want to join the art club.

③ want 用作及物动词，意为"想要"。

want
- sth. 想要某物
- to do sth. 想要做某事
- sb.(not) to do sth. 想要某人(不要)做某事

e.g. The boy wants TFBOYS' CDs. 这个男孩想要 TFBOYS 的光盘。

I want to watch Huang Xiaoming's movie. 我想看黄晓明的电影。

The mother wants her son not to learn dance. 这位妈妈不想让她儿子学习舞蹈。

敲黑板 带 to 的动词不定式！

考题在线 4 I don't want _____(be)fat. [常德]

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。want to do sth. 是固定用法，意为"想要做某事"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

④ **join** /dʒɔɪn/ *v.* 参加；加入

e.g.I want to join the chess club. 我想加入国际象棋俱乐部。

★join 指参加某个组织或加入某个团体并成为其中一员；join 还有“(将两物)连接，结合”之意。

join
- join sb. (for sth.) 加入某人 / 和某人（做某事）
- join in (sth./doing sth.) 参加（某事 / 做某事）
- join sb. in doing sth. 加入到某人的某一活动中

e.g. Come and join us. 来加入我们吧。

I join in the company party. 我参加了公司聚会。

He'll join us in singing the song. 他将和我们一起唱这首歌。

辨析：join，join in 与 take part in

加入
- join：参加某组织、团体、党派并成为其中一员，身份发生变化
- join in：参加活动、比赛、游戏，身份不发生大的变化
- take part in：参加会议或群众性活动并发挥积极作用

速记小筏：图解 join 的一词多义：



e.g. Zhao Qi joined Wang Feng's team. 赵祺加入了汪峰的战队。

He hopes to join in the game. 他希望参与这个游戏。

What competition will Fu Yuanhui take part in? 傅园慧将参加什么比赛?

考题在线 5 —Jenny, I hear there will be an art club in our school.

—Wonderful! I can't wait to _____it. [温州]

A. repeat　　B. forget　　C. receive　　D. join

★Can you swim?

⑤ **swim**/swɪm/ *v.*& *n.* 游泳

e.g.I can't swim. Can you help me ?
我不会游泳，你能帮助我吗?

swim 用作不及物动词，意为“游泳”。



拓展：【难点】① swimming *n.* 游泳

e.g. There is a swimming pool in the park. 公园里有一个游泳池。

② swimmer *n.* 游泳者

e.g. Sun Yang is a very strong swimmer. 孙杨是一位很强壮的游泳者。

Let's have a swim. 咱们游泳吧。

swim 用作名词，意思是“游泳”，其前常加不定冠词 a。

⑥ 【句法分析】 Can you...? 是询问对方能否干什么的句型，意为“你能 / 会……吗?”

e.g.—Can you play chess? 你会下国际象棋吗?

—Yes, I can. 是的，我会。

—No, I can't. 不，我不会。

★can 用作情态动词，意为“能；会”；can 的一般疑问句，其肯定回答是“Yes, I can.”，否定回答是“No, I can't.”。

考题在线 6 Nowadays, some robots are like humans.They _____ walk and dance. [云南]

A. can　　B. must　　C. need　　D. have to

点拨：用语境分析法解题。can 能，会；must 必须；need 需要；have to 不得不。由前句“现在，一些机器人很像人类。”可推知“会”走路和跳舞，表示它们具有的能力。

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



draw

★Can you draw?

⑦ **draw** /drɔ:/ *v.* 画 vt.

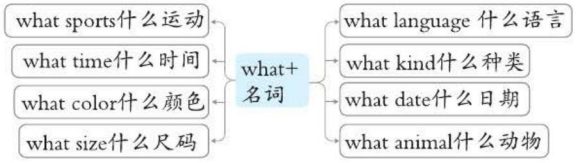
e.g.The girl is drawing a picture. 这个女孩正在画一幅画。

You draw beautifully. 你画得真好。 vi.

★What club do you want to join ?

⑧ **what club** what club 意为"什么俱乐部"，由"what+ 名词"构成。

拓展：“what+ 名词”的常见搭配还有：



★ sport 常用复数形式，意为"体育运动"，用于合成词中或在名词前作定语。

e.g. What color does your favorite star like?

你最喜欢的明星喜欢什么颜色?

What sports can you play? 你会做什么运动?

★I want to join a sports club.

敲黑板 作定语时总是用复数形式 sports，切记!

⑨ **sports club** 体育运动俱乐部

e.g.Where are my sports shoes？ 我的运动鞋在哪儿?

素养 行动：选择适合自己的俱乐部，和他人一起共享快乐时光。

素养 行动结果：学会享受生活，追求快乐人生，分享快乐并传递快乐（happiness）。

核心素养之文化意识

了解俱乐部文化，学会享受生活

club 意为“俱乐部”，新造词汇又称“可乐部”，“可乐部”与“俱乐部”的不同之处在于“可乐部”强调一个新时代的精神。可乐部崇尚的是一种开放的 *(open)*、自由的 *(free)*、平等的 *(equal)* 精神。可乐部既是一个场所，也是一群爱好、习惯相近的人追求幸福和快乐的团体。每个人都可以组建自己的圈子，每个人都应有自己快乐的空间。

★What about you?

⑩ 【句法分析】What about... ? 意为“……怎么样? ”一般用于陈述自己的情况或回答别人的问题之后，反问对方同样的问题。

What about... ? 还可用来询问消息、征求意见。相当于How about... ?

e.g.I'm from Beijing. What about you ? 我来自北京。你呢?

What/How about the iPhone X ? 那个 iPhone X怎么样?

What/How about riding shared bikes? → 询问情况

骑共享单车怎么样? → 询求建议

考题在线 7 —What about _____ a rest ?

—Let's go for a walk. [邵阳]

A. to take B. take C. taking

点拨: 用固定搭配法解题。问句意为“休息一下怎么样? ”，What about doing sth.? 是固定用法，意为“做某事怎么样? ”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★You're very good at telling stories.

⑪ **be good at... 擅长于……**

e.g.Most of the children here are good at Chinese kung fu.
这儿的大多数孩子擅长中国功夫。

My brother is good at playing the piano. 我哥哥擅长弹钢琴。

Yi Jianlian is good at playing basketball while Hu Ronghua does well in playing chess.
易建联擅长打篮球而胡荣华擅长下国际象棋。

考题在线 8 王俊凯擅长唱歌和打篮球。 [宿迁]

Wang Junkai _____ singing and playing basketball.

- be good at sth. 在某方面擅长
- be good at doing sth. 擅长做某事
- be good at 的同义短语为 do well in。

⑫ **【高频】tell** /tel/ *v.* **讲述；告诉**

e.g.His mother can tell many stories. 他妈妈会讲许多故事。

Our teacher tells us to watch *The Readers*. 老师让我们收看《朗读者》。

Please tell him the news. =Please tell the news to him.
请告诉他这个消息。

Could you please tell us about Stephen Hawking?
请你告诉我们斯蒂芬·霍金的相关情况好吗?

考题在线 9 Our teacher often tells us _____ in the river. It's dangerous.

A. not swim B. not to swim C. to swim D. swimming

点拨：用固定搭配法和语境判定法解题。tell sb. (not) to do sth. 是固定搭配，意为“告诉某人（不要）做某事”，故排除 A、D 两项；由后句“这很危险。”可知前句意为“我们的老师经常告诉我们不要在河里游泳”。

★ tell 意为“讲述”时，常用短语有 tell stories“讲故事”，tell jokes“讲笑话”等。

★ tell 意为“告诉；指示，吩咐”时，常用于以下结构：

- tell sb.（not） to do sth. 告诉某人（不要）做某事
- tell sb. sth.（=tell sth. to sb.）告诉某人某事
- tell sb. about sth. 告诉某人关于某事

★Sounds good.

⑬ **【句法分析】** Sounds good. 相当于“That sounds good.”，意为“听起来不错。”，常用于回答“Would you like...?”“What/How about...?”“Why not...?”“Let's...”等表示建议的句子。

e.g.—What about learning some traditional culture? 学些传统文化怎么样?
—Sounds good. 听起来不错。

考题在线 10 —What about going to Shanghai Disneyland Park next month, Harry ?
—_____! We'll have a lot of fun there. [连云港]

A. Good luck B. Never mind
C. Sounds great D. Certainly not

点拨：用交际法解题。good luck 祝你好运；never mind 没关系；sounds great 听起来棒极了；certainly not 当然不。What about...？表示建议，同意别人提出的建议可用 Sounds great！（听起来棒极了！）回答。

考题在线答案 1. D 2. A 3. C 4. to be 5. D 6. A 7. C 8. is good at/does well in 9. B 10. C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见296页)

听力技巧

关键词预测法(我们在听短文或对话时，并不一定需要逐字逐句理解，把所有内容全听清、听懂。初中英语听力测试题型的设计常从以下几个方面着手：①对话发生的地点；②谈话人的职业和身份；③谈话的主题及谈话人的行为状态；④简单的数字计算；⑤推理题；⑥因果题等等。只要我们抓住了关键词，找到了出题的“题眼”，问题便迎刃而解。)

听力过程

课文听力1b

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

听第一段对话，补全下面的句子。

1. The girl wants to join _____.

听第二段对话，选择正确答案。

⊙**2.**What can't the boy do?

A. Sing. B. Swim. C. Dance.

听第三段对话，选择正确答案。

3.What can the girl do?

A. Swim. B. Sing. C. Draw.

二、听 2a，选择正确答案

课文听力2a

听第一段对话，选择正确答案。

4.Who can play chess?

A. Lisa. B. David. C. John.

听第二段对话，选择正确答案。

5.What doesn't Bob like?

A. English. B. Chess. C. Music.

6.What club do they join?

A. The English club. B. The chess club.

C. The music club.

☞温馨提示：本书中此板块带⊙的题均运用听力技巧中的方法。

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见296页)

一、根据句意和图片提示补全单词



1. My brother can_____well.

2. This is Jim's _____. It's new.

3. He always likes_____in the lake.

4. The girl_____and plays chess well.

5. The girl is good at_____pictures.

二、单项选择

6. —What can she do?

—She can _____ guitar.

A. play B. play the

C. plays the D. playing

7. —_____

—OK. *You And Me* is great.

A. I can play chess.

B. Do you like music?

C. What about singing a song?

D. Her mother is an English teacher.

8. He wants _____ the art club.

A. join B. to join C. joins D. joining

9. —It's nearly lunchtime. How about having some noodles and dumplings?

—_____. 【导学号：8811889】[黄石]

A. You're welcome B. That's all right

C. That's nice of you D. That sounds good

10. Can she _____ English?

A. speak B. say C. tell D. speaks

三、完成句子

11. —— 杰克能下国际象棋下得很好吗?

—_____ Jack _____ _____ very well?

—— 是的，他能下得很好。

—Yes, _____ _____.

12. 你想加入什么俱乐部?

_____ _____ do you want to _____ ?

13. 我的朋友擅长英语。

My friend _____ _____ _____ English.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

14. 我奶奶总是想讲故事。

My grandmother always wants to _____ _____.

15. —— 艾丽斯想参加什么俱乐部?

—_____ _____ does Alice want to join?

—— 她想加入一个体育俱乐部。

—She wants to join _____ _____ _____.

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

can't 不能 =cannot 不能

Can you swim? 你会游泳吗?	Yes, I can./No, I can't. 是的，我会。/ 不，我不会。
Can he play chess? 他会下国际象棋吗?	Yes, he can./No, he can't. 是的，他会。/ 不，他不会。
Can you and Tom play chess? 你和汤姆会下国际象棋吗?	Yes, we can./No, we can't. 是的，我们会。/ 不，我们不会。
Can Jane and Jill /dʒɪl/ swim? 简和吉尔会游泳吗?	Yes, they can./No, they can't. 是的，她们会。/ 不，她们不会。
What can you do? 你会做什么?	I can dance./I can't sing. 我会跳舞。/ 我不会唱歌。
What club do you want to join? 你们想加入什么俱乐部?	We want to join the chess club. 我们想加入国际象棋俱乐部。

3a **Write questions and answers with the words and phrases.** 用这些单词和短语写出问题和答语。

1. Wu Jun/speak English/speak Chinese 吴军 / 说英语 / 说汉语

Can Wu Jun speak English? No, he can't, but he can speak Chinese.

吴军会说英语吗? 不，他不会，但是他会说汉语。

2. Mike/play basketball/play tennis 迈克 / 打篮球 / 打网球

_____

3. Jane and Jill/dance/sing 简和吉尔 / 跳舞 / 唱歌

_____

4. Grace/play soccer/play volleyball 格雷斯 / 踢足球 / 打排球

_____

5. Bill/write/raɪt/ ① stories/tell stories 比尔 / 写故事 / 讲故事

_____

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3b Complete the poster with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成这张海报。

play 弹奏　sing 唱歌　tell 讲述　dance 跳舞

Students Wanted for ② School Show /ʃəʊ/ ③ 学校演出招募学生

We want students for the school show.Can you _____ or/ɔ:(r)/ ⑤_____? ④ Can you _____ the guitar? Can you_____ stories? Please talk /tɔ:k/ to Mr. Zhang after school.

我们想为学校演出招募学生。你会_____或者_____吗？你会_____吉他吗？你会_____故事吗？请放学之后跟张老师说。

3c What can your group do in the school show? Make a list. 你们组在学校演出中能做什么？列个清单。

School Show 学校演出

Sunday 6:00 p.m. in the music room. 星期天下午 6 点在音乐教室。

What can you do? 你会做什么？

Come and show us! 来展示给我们吧！

Name　What can you do? 姓名　你会做什么？

Li Xin　do kung fu /ˌkʌŋˈfu:/ 李新　练（中国）功夫

—What can you do, Li Xin? ——李新，你会做什么？
—I can do kung fu. ——我会练（中国）功夫。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　•考点应用

★write 相关短语
- write down 写下；记下
- write back 回信
- write a letter to sb. 给某人写信

★wanted for 是 be wanted for 的简略形式。多用于广告招聘用语中，wanted 前写招收的对象，for 后接招收单位或组织、活动。

★Bill/write stories/tell stories

① **write** /raɪt/ *v.* 写作；写字

e.g.Does Mo Yan write a new book? 莫言写了一本新书吗？ vt.

The mother is teaching her daughter how to write. vi.

这个妈妈正在教她的女儿怎么写字。

Han Han is a young Chinese writer. 韩寒是一位年轻的中国作家。

作可数名词，意为“作者；作家”。

★Students Wanted for School Show

② **...wanted for...**……招收……，……需要……

e.g.Actors Wanted for School Day 校庆招收演员

Actors are wanted for School Day. 校庆招收演员。

③ **show** /ʃəʊ/ *n.* 演出；节目 *v.* 给……看；展示

e.g.I like the talk show. 我喜欢这个脱口秀节目。 n. 演出、节目

Can you show me the Silk Road routes? v. 给……看 展示

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

=Can you show the Silk Road routes to me?

你能把丝绸之路的路线给我看看吗?

注意：在此结构中，若直接宾语为指物的代词 it 或 them 时，只能用“show it(them) to sb.”结构。

e.g. 你有支新钢笔，请给我看看。

You have a new pen. Please show it to me.(√)

You have a new pen. Please show me it.(×)

show 用作名词的相关短语

- a TV show 电视节目
- a sports show 体育节目
- a talk show 脱口秀
- a talent show 才艺表演



show *v.* 给……看；展示

★ show sb. sth. 意为“把某物展示给某人”，相当于“show sth. to sb.”。

- show sb. around 带某人参观
- show off 炫耀
- show up 出现；露面
- show sb. the way 给某人指路

★Can you _____ or _____?

④ 【句法分析】该句是一个选择疑问句。选择疑问句是指说话人提出两种或两种以上的情况，要求对方选择一种进行回答的问句。回答时不用 yes 或 no，而是选择什么就回答什么。

易错点，需要牢记！ 敲黑板

e.g.—Does he like *The Readers* or *Super Brain*?

他喜欢《朗读者》还是《最强大脑》?

—He likes *Super Brain*. 他喜欢《最强大脑》。

—Is it a pen, a pencil or a ballpoint pen ?

它是一支钢笔、铅笔还是圆珠笔?

—It's a pen. 它是一支钢笔。

速记小筱：选择疑问句的用法

选择疑问句，or 是连接词；选项有二三，择一莫迟延；不用 yes/no，选择是关键。

考题在线 1 —Lucy, do you want to join the art club or the chess club?

—_____. I like drawing pictures. [长春]

A. Yes, I do　　B. The art club

C. No, I don't　　D. The chess club

⑤ **or** /ɔ:(r)/ *conj.* 或者；也不（用于否定句）

★ or 用作连词，意为“或者；也不”。用以引出另一种可能，或用于否定句，提出两种或多种事物时。

e.g. Are you coming or not? 你来还是不来?

He can't read or write. 他不会读，也不会写。

辨析：or, and, but 与 so

or	“或者”，表示选择关系。
and	“和，又”，表示并列关系，常用来连接表示对等成分的单词、短语或者句子，表示意思的顺延或增补。
but	“但是”，表示转折关系，所连接的成分意思相反或相对。
so	“因此，所以”，常用来引导结果状语从句。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. Which do you like better, juice or Coke? 果汁和可乐，你更喜欢哪个？

Our math teacher is kind and helpful.

我们数学老师和蔼可亲而且乐于助人。

They have only one child but they don't want to have a second baby.

他们只有一个孩子，但是他们不想要二孩儿。



Everyone in the town knew him, so we had no trouble finding his house. 镇上所有人都认识他，因此我们毫不费力就找到了他家。

考题在线 2 —Which coat do you like better, the red one _____ the blue one ?

—The blue one. [柳州]

A. but B. and C. or

点拨：but 表转折；and 表并列；or 表选择。由答语“蓝色那个。”可知，问句应是选择疑问句，句意为“你更喜欢哪个外套，红色的还是蓝色的？”。

考题在线答案 1. B 2. C

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

情态动词 can 的用法

情态动词 can 表示体力或智力上的能力，意为“会，能够”，它不能单独作谓语，必须和动词原形连用，没有人称和数的变化。



考点 1 can 的基本用法

考向 1：表示能力，意为“能；会”。

e.g. Can you play the guitar? 你会弹吉他吗？

考题在线 1 Could you please speak a little louder? I _____ hear you very well. [临沂]

A. can't B. mustn't

C. shouldn't D. needn't

考向 2：表示请求或许可，意为“可以”。

e.g. Can you come to my birthday party?

你能来参加我的生日聚会吗？

考题在线 2 —Could I invite my friends to the party on Saturday, Mom?

—Of course you_____. That sounds like fun. [滨州]

A. may B. could C. must D. can

点拨：Could I...? 用于向对方发出请求，意为“我可以……吗？”，对方若接受请求，常回答“Yes/Sure, you can.”。

考向 3：在否定句和疑问句中表示推测，意为“可能”。

e.g. That man can't be my English teacher.

那个人不可能是我的英语老师。

Can that boy be Wang Yuan?

那个男孩可能是王源吗？

考题在线 3 —The beautiful lady with glasses over there looks like our English teacher.

—It _____ be her. She has gone abroad. [黄石]

A. can't B. may not

C. mustn't D. needn't

点拨：表示否定的推测用 can't。

考点 2 can 的基本句型

考向 1：陈述句

①肯定句：主语 +can+ 动词原形 + 其他 .

e.g. I can sing and dance. 我会唱会跳。

②否定句：主语 +can't（can not 的缩略形式）+ 动词原形 + 其他 .

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. The boy can't read or write. 这个男孩不会读，也不会写。

考题在线 4 Please don't make so much noise. I _____hear the speaker very well. [安徽]

A. needn't B. mustn't

C. can't D. shouldn't

考向 2：疑问句

①一般疑问句：Can+ 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他? 答语：Yes, 主语 +can./No, 主语 +can't.

e.g.—Can she come to my birthday party?

她会来参加我的生日聚会吗?

—Yes, she can./No, she can't.

是的，她会。/ 不，她不会。

②特殊疑问句：特殊疑问词 + can + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?

e.g.What can you play? 你会演奏什么?

考题在线 5 —Tony, _____ you sing English songs?

—Yes, I can. [广西北部湾]

A. can B. may C. need D. must

速记小筏：

情态动词 can

can 可用来表能力，人称和数约束弃；

不可单独作谓语，须和实动连动合一起。

若是句中出现 can，动词原形后边站；

一般疑问 can 提前，否定 can 后 not 添。

用 can 提问用 can 答，不可滥用别词加；

Yes 跟 can，No can't，前后不一闹笑话。

考题在线答案 1. A 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. A

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见 296 页)

一、单项选择

1. He_____speak English, but he_____speak Chinese.

A. can; can B. can; may

C. can't; can D. can't; can't

2. Sam can't sing _____ dance.

A. for B. of C. at D. or

3. We all know Lin Shuhao can_____ basketball very well.

A. play B. plays C. to play D. playing

4. —Could you dance for your classmates?

—Yes, I _____.

A. could B. can C. couldn't D. can't

5. —Is that boy Tony?

—It _____ be him. He has gone to(去了) Shanghai. [恩施改编]

A. may not B. should

C. can't D. must

二、按要求完成句子

6. Can you speak English? (作出否定回答)

_____, I _____.

7. He can play the piano.(改为一般疑问句并作出肯定回答)

—_____ he _____ the piano?

—_____, he _____.

8. We can sing and dance. (变为否定句)

We _____ sing _____ dance.

9. Linda can play chess. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ Linda _____?

10. He can join the music club. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ _____ he _____?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section B（1a–1f）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Draw lines to match the words with the pictures. 画线将单词与图画匹配。

drums /drʌmz/ _____鼓_____ piano /piˈænəʊ/_____钢琴_____

guitar _____吉他_____ violin /ˌvaɪəˈlɪn/_____小提琴_____

1b Listen and number the words [1-4] in the order of the sounds you hear in 1a.

根据你听到的声音的顺序给 1a 中的单词编号［1–4］。

课文听力 1b

1c Ask and answer questions about the instruments. 就这些乐器提问并回答问题。

—Can you play the violin? ——你会拉小提琴吗？

—No, I can't. ——不，我不会。

1d Listen and (circle) the words and phrases you hear. 听录音，圈出你听到的单词和短语。

play the violin 拉小提琴　　(sing)唱歌

play the guitar 弹吉他　　dance 跳舞

play the drums 敲鼓　　draw 画画

play the piano 弹钢琴　　tell stories 讲故事

课文听力 1d

1e Listen again. Fill in the chart with the words and phrases in 1d.

再听一遍录音，用 1d 中的单词和短语填表。

	Can 会	Can't 不会
Bill 比尔		
Cindy 辛迪		
Frank 弗兰克		

1f Talk about what Bill,Cindy and Frank can and can't do. 讨论比尔、辛迪和弗兰克会做和不会做的事。

—Can Bill play the guitar? ——比尔会弹吉他吗？

—Yes, he can, but he can't sing. ——是的，他会。但是他不会唱歌。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见 296 页）

Ⅱ 听力过程

课文听力 1b

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

听短语，选出你所听到的乐器名称。

1. A. drums　B. guitar　C. piano
2. A. guitar　B. drums　C. violin
3. A. piano　B. violin　C. drums
4. A. guitar　B. drums　C. violin

课文听力 1d

二、听 1d，选择正确答案

5. What can Cindy do?

A. Play the guitar.　B. Play the drums.

C. Play the piano.

6. Who can't sing?

A. Cindy and Bill.　B. Cindy and Frank.

C. Bill and Frank.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用

play the violin

play the violin 意为“拉小提琴”。play 可意为“弹、拉、敲”等，与乐器类名词连用时，名词前要加定冠词 the。

e.g. What about playing the violin after school? 放学后拉小提琴怎么样?

考题在线 —Laura is _____ 11-year-old girl. She is good at playing _____ guitar. [凉山]

A. /; a　　B. an; /　　C. an; the　　D. a; an

考题在线答案 C

•考点批注

- play the guitar 弹吉他
- play the piano 弹钢琴
- play the erhu 拉二胡
- play the drums 敲/打鼓

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

2a Read the three descriptions about Peter, Alan and Ma Huan. Underline what they can do.

读关于彼得、艾伦和马欢的三段描述，在他们会做的事下面画线。

Hello, I'm Peter /pi:tə(r)/.I like to play basketball. I can speak English and I can also/ˈɔ:lsəʊ/① play soccer. 你好，我是彼得。我喜欢打篮球。我会说英语，我也会踢足球。

My name's Alan. I'm in the school music club.I can play the guitar and the piano.I can sing and dance,too. 我叫艾伦。我在学校的音乐俱乐部。我会弹吉他和钢琴。我也会唱歌和跳舞。

Hi, I'm Ma Huan.I can play ping-pong and chess.I like to talk and play games with people/ˈpi:pl/. 嗨，我是马欢。我会打乒乓球、下国际象棋。我喜欢与人们交谈、做游戏。

2b Read the ads. Match the titles with the ads. 读广告，将标题与广告配对。

课文朗读 2b

A.Help for Old People A. 帮助老年人

B.Music Teacher Wanted B. 招聘音乐老师

C.Help with Sports in English C. 用英语在运动方面提供帮助

(　　)

We need help at the old people's② home/həʊm/③. Are you free in July? Are you good with④ old people? Can you talk to them and play games with them? They can tell you stories, and you can make /meɪk/⑤ friends. It is interesting and fun! Please call us at⑥ 689-7729 today /təˈdeɪ/!

我们老人之家需要帮助。你在七月有空吗？你善于和老人打交道吗？你能和他们谈话并陪他们玩游戏吗？他们会讲故事，而且你们可以交朋友。这既有趣又好玩！请于今天拨打 689- 7729 和我们联系！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(　　)

Are you busy⑦ after school? No? Can you speak English? Yes?Then we need⑧ you to help with⑨ sports for English-speaking students. It is relaxing and easy! Please come to the Students'⑩ Sports Center /'sentə(r)/. Call Mr. Brown at 293-7742.

放学后你忙吗？不忙？你会说英语吗？会？那么我们需要你帮助说英语的学生开展体育活动。这项活动令人放松且容易！请来学生运动中心。拨打 293-7742 找布朗先生。

(　　)

Can you play the piano or the violin? Do you have time⑪ on the weekend /ˌwi:k'end/, /'wi:kend/⑫? The school needs help to teach /ti:tʃ/⑬ music. It is not difficult! Please call Mrs. Miller at 555-3721. 你会弹钢琴或拉小提琴吗？在周末你有时间吗？学校需要（有人来）帮忙教音乐。这不难！请拨打 555-3721 跟米勒夫人联系。

2c Match each person in 2a with an ad in 2b. Write A, B and C.

把 2a 中的每个人物与 2b 中的广告搭配起来，写上 A，B 和 C。

Peter _____彼得_____　Alan_____艾伦_____　Ma Huan_____马欢

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练　专攻中考阅读 60分

☞（答案见296页）

阅读策略

段篇序取法（本部分课文为招聘海报，文章短小精悍，清晰明了，层次分明。阅读此类文章，可采取段篇序取法，在各段或各层上标上序号，可在每一序号下归纳一句话或一个词组来概括段意、层意。这样把一篇文章按序号阅读，总结到一起，则为文章大意。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What are the ads mainly about?　（主旨大意题）

A. How to help others.

B. What the persons can do.

C. It's good to read all the ads.

D. Persons wanted for different jobs.

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

⊙**2.**What's the title of the first ad?　（综合归纳题）

A. Help with Sports in English

B. Music Teacher Wanted

C. Help for Old People

D. The Art Club Needs You

⊙**3.**What's the title of the second ad?　（综合归纳题）

A. Help for Old People

B. Help with Sports in English

C. The Art Club Needs You

D. Music Teacher Wanted

4.If you_____, you can help with sports for English-speaking students.　（细节理解题）

A. are busy

B. can speak English

C. have time and can speak English

D. can play the piano and aren't busy

5.If you can help to teach music, you can dial（拨打）_____.　（细节理解题）

A. 689-7729　　B. 293-7742

C. 335-3721　　D. 555-3721

☞温馨提示：本书中此板块带⊙的题均运用"阅读策略"中的方法。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点应用　　•考点批注

I can speak English and I can also play soccer.

① **also** /ˈɔːlsəʊ/ *adv.* 也；而且

e.g. Xiaolei is also a fan of Jin Yong. 小雷也是个金庸迷。

I also like TFBOYS and their songs. 我也喜欢 TFBOYS 和他们的歌。

also 常用于肯定句中，位于连系动词、助动词或情态动词之后，实义动词之前。

be 动词之后

实义动词之前

拓展：辨析：also，too 与 either

- also："也"，用于肯定句中，常放在句中，位于连系动词、情态动词或助动词之后，实义动词之前。
- too："也"，用于肯定句中，一般放在句末。多用于口语中，语气较轻。
- either："也"，用于否定句中，一般放在句末。

速记 小筏：

also 句中 too 句末，
too 前常用逗号隔；
also 与 too 表肯定，
二者此时用法合；
either 是"也"表否定，
一般放置于句末。

e.g. Jack also likes playing soccer. 杰克也喜欢踢足球。

The boy from a village wants to ride a shared bike, too.
来自乡村的这个男孩也想骑共享单车。

I don't like it either. 我也不喜欢它。

We need help at the old people's home.

② **people** 此处是集合名词，意为"人；人们"表示复数意义，着重全体，其前可以用大于一的基数词或 many, a lot of 等修饰。people 作主语时谓语动词用复数。

e.g. There are about 200 people watching the football match.
大约有 200 人在看足球比赛。

★注意：表示"一个人"时，要用 a/one person。
three people 三个人



four peoples 四个民族

拓展：① the people 常用来指"人民；平民"。

e.g. The police are working hard for the people. 警察正为人民努力工作。

② people 还可用作可数名词，意为"民族"。

e.g. There are 56 peoples in China. 中国有 56 个民族。

③ **home** /həʊm/ *n.* 家；活动本部 *adv.* 到家；在家

e.g. His home is in a big city. 他的家在一个大城市里。

★ home 用作名词，意为"家；活动本部"。at home 意为"在家"。

拓展：辨析：home, family 与 house

home	意为"家"，主要指一个人出生或居住的地方，房屋是其中的一部分，因而也有"家乡、故乡"的意思，它具有 house 所没有的感情色彩。
family	意为"家庭、家庭成员"，与居住的房子无关。当 family 作为整体概念的"家庭"讲时是单数；当"家庭成员"讲时是复数。
house	意为"房屋、住宅"，一般指家人所居住的建筑物。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

house（建筑物）



home（家）　family（家庭成员）的统称

e.g. East or west, home is the best.

金窝银窝不如自己的草窝。/ 东好西好，还是家里最好。

His family is very big. 他家里的人很多。

Jack's family are having a trip in the mountain.

杰克一家人正在山里旅行。

There are many new houses in our village. 我们村子里有很多新房子。

考题在线 1 He was born in Germany, but he makes China his _____.

[绵阳改编]

A. family　　B. address　　C. house　　D. home

【易错点】home 用作副词时，意为“到家；在家”。常用短语有：go home 回家；be home 在家。

短语中没有介词，牢记！ 敲黑板

★Are you good with old people?

④ **be good with...** 善于应付……的；对……有办法　with 后接 sb. 或 sth.

★与 good 相关的常见搭配

be good { at 擅长 / for 对……有益 / to 对……好 }

e.g. The teacher is good with students. 这个老师对学生很有办法。

His grandmother is good at using WeChat. 他的祖母很擅长使用微信。

Swimming is good for our health. 游泳对我们的健康有益。

Little Tom is very lovely and he is always good to his dog.

小汤姆非常可爱，他总是对他的狗很好。

★They can tell you stories, and you can make friends.

⑤ **make** /meɪk/ *v.* 使成为；制造

①“make sb./sth.+ 形容词”意为“使某人/某物处于某种状态”。

②“make sb.+ 名词”意为“使某人成为……”。

e.g. The singer's coming makes us very happy.

这个歌手的到来让我们非常高兴。

They want to make Tom a leader of their team. 使成为

他们想让汤姆当他们队的队长。

Can you make bread? 你会制作面包吗？ 制造；制作

The cooks often make dumplings for us . 厨师经常给我们包饺子。

The young man likes making friends. 这个年轻人喜欢交朋友。

拓展：make 还可用作使役动词，意为“使；让”，用于以下结构：make sb. do sth. 使某人做某事。交朋友　make friends with... 和……交朋友

e.g. My mother makes me clean the room. 我妈妈让我打扫房间。

★由 make 构成的动词短语

- make faces 做鬼脸
- make money 赚钱
- make progress 取得进步
- make yourself at home 请自便

考题在线 2 用括号中所给单词的适当形式完成句子，限 1 个单词。

Jenny has found it easy to make _____ at school. (friend)[包头]

点拨：由于空格处限填一词，所以此处要用可数名词复数 friends，make friends 交朋友。

考题在线 3 Kids like reading stories which can make them _____.

[哈尔滨]

A. laugh　　B. to laugh　　C. laughing

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Please call us at 689-7729 today!

⑥ **call sb. at... 拨打电话……和某人联系** at 后面接电话号码

e.g. If you have trouble, please call the police station at 110.

如果你遇到麻烦，请拨打 110 和警察局联系。

call sb. 指“给某人打电话”。

★Are you busy after school?

反义词为 free 空闲的

⑦ **busy** /ˈbɪzi/ *adj.* **忙碌的**

e.g. The writer is busy writing his new book.=The writer is busy with his new book. 这位作家正忙于写他的新书。

be busy doing sth. 忙着做某事；be busy with sth. 忙于某事，with 后面接名词、代词等。

拓展：be busy 在打电话中是指“占线”。

考题在线 4 —Why were you angry with your daughter?

— She was busy _____ and taking selfies（自 拍）when I was talking to her. [包头]

A. texting　　B. to text　　C. text　　D. texted

★Then we need you to help with sports for English-speaking students.

⑧ **need** /niːd/ *v.* **需要，必需**

e.g. The boy needs his father to play with him.

这个男孩需要他爸爸跟他一起玩。

I need to join a club. 我需要加入一个俱乐部。

My watch phone needs mending again.

=My watch phone needs to be mended again.

我的电话手表需要再修理一下。

★need 作实义动词，有人称和数的变化。

- need sb. to do sth. 需要某人做某事
- need to do sth. 需要做某事
- need doing sth. ……需要做，含有被动意味

考题在线 5 用所给单词的适当形式填空。

To make a fruit salad, you need _____（cut）up the bananas first. [吉林改编]

e.g. You needn't say sorry to me. 你不必向我道歉。

Need I go to Xiongan New Area with you?

我需要和你一起去雄安新区吗?

★need 用作情态动词，没有人称、数和时态的变化，多用于疑问句和否定句。

考题在线 6 —Does he need _____ there at once ?

—No, he _____ leave so hurriedly because he has enough time. [恩施]

A. to go；doesn't need　　B. go；needn't

C. to go；needn't



点拨：本题用语法判定法解题。问句中的 need 是实义动词，故其后用动词不定式作宾语，即 need to do sth. 意为“需要做某事”；答语中的空格后接的是动词原形 leave，故这里的 need 是情态动词，其否定形式为 needn't，意为“没有必要”。

速记小筏：need 用法总结

实义动词表“需要”，后接名词 / 代词 / 不定式 / 动词的 -ing 形式；情态动词表“需要”，没有时态、人称、数变化，其后直接跟动词原形，多用于否定句和疑问句。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

help(sb.) with sth. 意为“在某方面帮助(某人)”，相当于 help(sb.) (to) do sth. 意为“帮助(某人)做某事”。

⑨ help with sth. 在某方面帮助

敲黑板 这里的介词是 with，谨记！

e.g.Can you help with the work?

=Can you help (to) do the work? 你能帮助做这项工作吗?

考题在线7 Ann often helps me_____math after school. [温州]

A. for B. with C. on D. by

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。本句意为“放学后安经常帮助我学习数学。”help sb.with sth. 是固定搭配，意为“在某方面帮助某人”。

拓展：can't help doing sth. 忍不住做某事

help oneself to sth. 随便吃 / 用某物

e.g. She can't help crying when she knows the news.

当她知道这个消息时，她忍不住哭了起来。

Please help yourself to some bread. 请随便吃点面包。

考题在线8 Bill has made great progress _____ the help of his teachers. [福州]

A. for B. with C. under

★ help 作名词，常用短语

- with the help of sb.=with sb.'s help 在某人的帮助下
- ask sb. for help 向某人寻求帮助

★Please come to the Students' Sports Center.

⑩ students' 学生们的

students' 是复数名词的所有格。名词所有格分为以下几种情况：

①单数名词一般在词尾加 -'s。	the boy's aunt 男孩的姑姑
②以 -s 结尾的复数名词只在词尾加“'”。	the students' bags 学生们的包 ladies' room 女厕所
③不以 -s 结尾的复数名词后加 -'s。	children's toys 孩子们的玩具
④几个名词表示各自的所有关系时，名词末尾均需加所有格，若表示共同拥有时，只在最后一个名词的后面加所有格。	Tom's and Mary's books 汤姆的书和玛丽的书 Tom and Mary's book 汤姆和玛丽的书



爱学习的孩子，美呀！

考题在线9 If I leave my house at 9 o'clock and drive to the airport, I'll arrive at about 11. So it's about two _____ drive from my house to the airport. [临沂]

A. hours' B. hour's C. hours

点拨：用语法分析法解题。句意为“如果我 9 点离开家开车去机场，我将在 11 点左右到达。所以，从我家到机场大约有两个小时的车程。”故空格处要用名词所有格形式。基数词 two 后用名词复数，故先把 hour 变为 hours；此时，以 -s 结尾的复数名词 hours 的所有格在词尾加“'”即可。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Do you have time on the weekend?

⑪ have time 的用法

e.g. Many parents don't have time to stay with their children.
许多父母没有时间和他们的孩子呆在一起。

速记 小筏：week（星期）+end（末）=weekend（周末）

⑫ on the weekend 的用法

e.g. What do you do on the weekend/weekends? 你在周末做什么?

拓展：weekday 工作日　on weekdays 在工作日

e.g. The shop opens at 9:00 a.m. on weekdays, but at 10:30 a.m. on weekends. 这个商店工作日在上午 9:00 开门，但周末在上午 10:30 开门。

★have time 意为"有时间；有空"，相当于 be free。此句也可表达为"Are you free on the weekend?"have no time 意为"没有时间"。

★on/at the weekend 意为"在周末"，也可以说 on/at weekends。weekend 用作名词，意为"周末"，指星期六和星期日这两天，其对应词是 weekday，意为"工作日"。

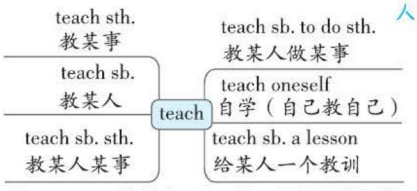
★The school needs help to teach music.

⑬ teach /tiːtʃ/ *v.* 教；讲授

e.g. Mr. Li teaches English in a middle school. 李先生在一所中学教英语。

用作及物动词，第三人称单数加 -es。

拓展：teach 还可用于以下结构：



e.g. Do not teach fish to swim. 不要班门弄斧。

One may teach himself when he is free. 人可以在空闲时间自学。

You should teach him a lesson. 你应该给他一个教训。

teach 后的宾语如果是人称代词，要用人称代词的宾格形式。

考题在线 10 Miss Green will teach _____ English next term. [渝北]

A. they　　B. them　　C. themselves　　D. their

考题在线答案 1. D　2. friends　3. A　4. A　5. to cut　6. C　7. B　8. B　9. A　10. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见296页）

一、根据句意及提示填空

1. There is a lake in the _____（中心）of the park.

2. _____（今天）is a good day.

3. There are many _____（人）in the park.

4. Miss Brown _____（teach）us math.

5. Can you come to the _____（student）Art Center?

二、单项选择

6. Jim can help me _____ kung fu.

A. on　　B. to

C. from　　D. with

7. Li Ming is good at singing. He can _____ dance well.

A. too　　B. also

C. only　　D. either

8. We need him _____ us stories.

A. tell　　B. telling

C. tells　　D. to tell

9. After school, he goes _____ with friends.

A.home　　B. family

C. house　　D. place

10. Lily can't go shopping with us because she is

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

_____ today.

A. happy　　B. busy　　C. free　　D. fine

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 如果你遇到事情，可以拨打 554-3729 找我。

If you meet something, you can _____ _____ _____ 554-3729.

12. 你有时间和我一起看《朗读者》吗?

Do you _____ _____ to watch *The Readers* with me?

13. 你能和我交朋友吗?

Can you _____ _____with me?

14. 我喜欢在周末弹钢琴。

I like playing the piano _____ _____ _____.

15. 格林先生善于应付不同的孩子。

Mr. Green _____ _____ _____ different children.

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Complete the ad with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词完成广告。

guitar 吉他　can 能　call 打电话　dance 跳舞　music 音乐　play 弹奏

Musicians /mju:' zɪʃnz/ Wanted for School Music Festival 为学校音乐节招聘音乐家

Do you like _____? 你喜欢_____吗？

Can you sing and _____? 你会唱歌和_____吗？

Can you _____ the piano or the violin? 你会_____钢琴或_____小提琴吗?

Can you play the _____ or the drums? 你会弹_____或敲鼓吗?

Then you _____ be in our school music festival. 那么你_____加入我们学校的音乐节了。

Please _____ Mr. Zhang at 622-6033. 请_____622-6033 找张老师。

3b Make a poster. Ask for help with an event at your school.

做一个海报。为你们学校的一项活动寻求帮助。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Add more words and phrases in each box. 在每个方框中添加更多的单词和短语。

Abilities 能力

Music and arts 音乐和艺术	Languages 语言	Sports 体育运动	Other abilities 其他能力
play the violin 拉小提琴	speak English 说英语	swim 游泳	tell stories 讲故事

2 Add as many words as you can to make phrases. 添加尽可能多的单词来构成短语。

1. play the drums, _____

敲鼓, _____

2. speak English, _____

说英语, _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. help with math,

帮助学数学,

4. be good at telling stories,

擅长讲故事,

5. be good with old people,

善于和老人打交道,

3 **What can you do? What can't you do? What about the people you know? Write at least five sentences.** 你能做什么？你不能做什么？你认识的人呢？至少写五个句子。

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

单元话题

假如你们学校音乐俱乐部需要招聘一些成员，请你根据下面的提示用英语拟写一个 50 词左右的招聘广告。

1. 喜欢音乐，会唱会跳；
2. 擅长弹吉他或拉小提琴；
3. 善于应对人和事；
4. 周末有时间；
5. 电话：564-8729
6. 联系人：Li Kang

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 注意本文要求写一则招聘广告；
2. 注意招聘的职位、条件及联系方式；
3. 要用一般现在时；第二人称。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三步四要素法”写招聘广告

第一步：开头开门见山指出招聘类型；

第二步：正文列出招聘的要求条件；

第三步：结尾鼓励号召并留下联系方式。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	member, music, club, art, festival, sing, dance, want, can...
短语	be good at, be good with, play the guitar/violin, have time, on the weekend
句子	① Do you like music? ② Are you good at playing the guitar or the violin? ③ Are you good with people or things?

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Members Wanted ① *for the School Music Club*

We want some new members for ① *the School Music Club. Do you like music?* ② *Can you sing and dance?* ② *Are you good at playing the guitar or the violin?* ② *Are you good with people or things?* ② *You need to have time on the weekend.*

Come and join us! ③ *You will have fun and learn more about music here!* ③ *Please call Li Kang at 564-8729.*

名师点评：本文运用了“三步四要素法”写招聘海报。结构严谨、层次清晰、语言流畅、要求具体、信息全面。

第一：开篇点题，表明招聘学校音乐俱乐部成员，即“四要素”中的“招聘类型”（some new members for the School Music Club）；

第二：列出了招聘的要求及条件。要点

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

全面，表述生动，陈述句与疑问句的使用使得行文不拘一格，即“四要素”中的“要求条件”（like music，can sing and dance...）；
第三：这是一个有诚意、有号召力的结尾，包含了“四要素”中的“鼓动号召”和“联系方式”（Come and join us! You will... 以及 call Li Kang at...）。
添彩点：①恰当运用了 ...wanted，want... for... 等招聘用语。
②巧妙地运用四个问句，自然展开话题。
③鼓动性话语 Come and join us！以及 You will have fun... 的运用，使海报语言活泼欢快，热情洋溢，充满号召力。

及测听试力卷

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见296页）

单元知识浓缩

people, be good with, story, today, make friends, also, talk to, dance, have time, club

The old people's home needs help.It needs a girl.The girl has to _____[1] in July. She must_____[2] old people. She needs to_____[3] them and play games with them. At the same time, the old_____[4] can tell her_____[5] and they can_____[6]. Ma Huan is a middle school student. She is in the school music_____[7]. She can sing and she can_____[8] well. She_____[9] likes to talk and play games with people. She thinks she can do the work.She says it's interesting and fun! _____[10], she wants to call them.

There are no secrets to success. It is the result of preparation, hard work, and learning from failure.
成功没有诀窍，它是筹备，苦干以及在失败中汲取教训的结果。

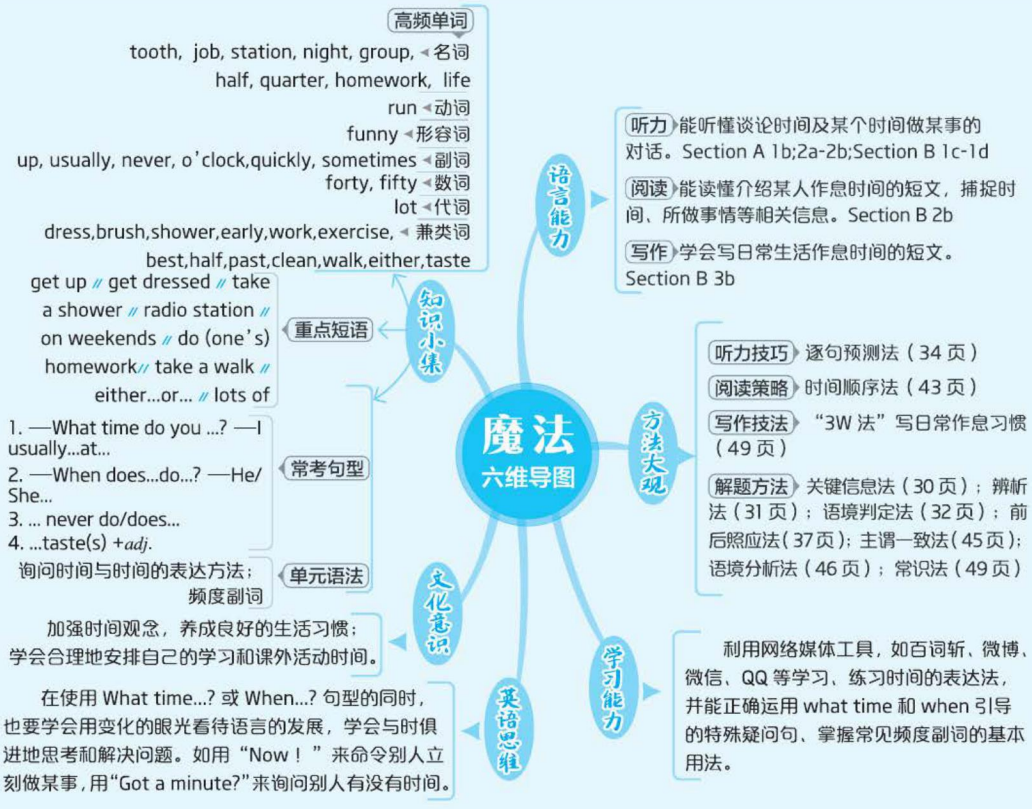


我一定要好好学习，
不然别人会说：看看那个人，
除了帅，一无所有。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 What time do you go to school?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1.up *adv.* 向上→ get up 起床；站起 → look up 向上看→ put up 举起；张贴

2.dress *v.* 穿衣服 *n.* 连衣裙→ dress sb. 给某人穿衣服→ get dressed 穿上衣服

3.forty *num.* 四十→ in one's forties 在某人四十多岁时→ fourteen 十四

4.early *adv.* & *adj.* 早（的）→ late（反义词）

5.station *n.* 电（视）台；车站→ radio station 广播电台→ at the station 在车站

6. night *n.* 晚上；夜晚→ on a cold night 在一个寒冷的夜晚→ at night 在晚上

7.funny *adj.* 奇怪的；滑稽好笑的→ fun *n.* 快乐；乐趣

8.exercise *v.* & *n.* 锻炼；练习→ do exercise 进行锻炼

9.brush *v.* 刷；刷净 *n.* 刷子→ brushes（第三人称单数）

10.tooth *n.* 牙齿→ teeth（复数形式）

11.shower *n.*&*v.* 淋浴；*n.* 淋浴器（间）

12.fifty *num.* 五十

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

13.job *n.* 工作；职业→ good job 干得不错

14.work *v.* & *n.* 工作→ at work 在工作

15.o'clock *adv.*（表示整点）……点钟

16.usually *adv.* 通常地；一般地

17.never *adv.* 从不；绝不

‖必背短语

18. go to school 去上学

19.be late for 迟到

20.brush teeth 刷牙

21.take a shower 洗淋浴

22.from...to... 从……到……

‖必背句子

23.What time do you usually **get up**, Rick ?

里克，你通常几点起床?

24. I usually get up **at six thirty.**

我通常六点半起床。

25. When do you go to work?

你什么时候去上班?

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus-3c)

‖必背单词

1.group *n.* 组；群→ a group of 一组；一群

2.best *adj.* 最好的 *adv.* 最好地；最

‖必背句子 & 语法

3. In our group, Li Fei usually gets **up late** on weekends.

在我们组里，李菲通常在周末起得晚。

4. —What time do you usually get up ?

你通常几点起床?

—I usually get up at six thirty.

我通常六点半起床。

Period 3 Section B (1a-1e)

‖必背单词

1.half *n.*& *pron.* 一半；半数→ halves（复数）→ a half 一半→ the half of...……的一半

2.past *prep.* 晚于；过（时间） *adj.* 过去的→ half past six 六点半→ in the past 在过去

3.quarter *n.* 一刻钟；四分之一→ a quarter of...……的四分之一→ three quarters 四分之三

4.run *v.* 跑；奔→ runs（第三人称单数）→ running（现在分词）

5.homework *n.* 家庭作业

6.clean *v.* 打扫；弄干净

7.walk *v.*& *n.* 行走；步行→ walk to school 步行去上学

‖必背短语

8. do（one's） homework 做（某人的）作业

9.take a walk 散步

‖必背句子

10.—When do students **usually** eat dinner?

学生们通常什么时候吃晚餐?

—They usually eat dinner **at a quarter to seven** in the evening.

他们通常在晚上六点四十五分吃晚餐。

Period 4 Section B (2a-2c)

‖必背单词

1. quickly *adv.* 很快地→ fast(同义词)→ slowly(反义词)缓慢地

2. either *conj.* 或者→ *adv.* 也

3. lot *pron.* 大量；许多→ a lot of 许多

4. sometimes *adv.* 有时

5. taste *v.* 有……的味道；品尝 *n.* 味道；滋味

‖必背短语

6. either...or... 要么……要么……；或者……或者……

7. lots of 大量；许多

‖必背句子

8. In the evening, I **either** watch TV **or** play computer games.

晚上，我要么看电视，要么玩电脑游戏。

9.She knows **it's not good for** her, but it **tastes good**!

她知道这对她没好处，但是它尝起来不错!

Period 5 Section B (3a-Self Check)

‖必背单词

life *n.* (*pl.* lives) 生活；生命→ in one's life 在某人的一生中→ family life 家庭生活

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）



I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goals: Talk about routines; Ask about and say times
语言目标： 谈论作息时间；询问和表达时间

1a Match the activities with the pictures. 将活动与图片匹配。

1.get up/ʌp/① ② ____c____ 起床 ____c____

2.go to school③ _____ 去上学_____

3.get dressed/drest/ ④ ⑤ _____ 穿上衣服_____

4.brush/brʌʃ/⑥ teeth/tiːθ/⑦ _____ 刷牙_____

5.eat breakfast _____ 吃早餐_____

6.take a shower/ʃaʊə(r)/_____ 洗淋浴_____

—What time do you usually/juːʒuəli/ get up, Rick? ——里克，你通常几点起床?

—I usually get up at⑧ six thirty. ——我通常六点半起床。

1b Listen and match the times with the actions. Draw lines from the clocks to the pictures. 听录音，将时间与所做之事配对。把钟表和图片连线。



1c Student A is the interviewer. Student B is Rick/rɪk/. Ask and answer questions about Rick's day. 学生 A 是采访者，学生 B 是里克。就里克的一天问答。

A: What time do you usually take a shower, Rick? 里克，你通常几点洗淋浴?

B: I usually take a shower at six forty/ˈfɔː(r)ti/. 我通常六点四十洗淋浴。



2a Listen to the conversation and complete the sentences. 听对话，完成句子。

Jim/dʒɪm/ has_____brothers and_____sisters. Jim's family has _____shower.

吉姆有_____兄弟和_____姐妹。吉姆家有_____淋浴间。

2b Listen again. Complete the shower schedule for Jim's family.

再听一遍录音，完成吉姆一家的淋浴时间表。

Name 名字	Bob 鲍勃	Mary 玛丽	Jack 杰克	Jim 吉姆	Anna 安娜
Time 时间	5:30				

2c Now talk about yourself. 现在谈论一下你自己。

—What time do you usually get up? ——你通常几点起床?

—I always get up at five fifty/ˈfifti/. ——我总是五点五十起床。

—Wow/waʊ/! I never/ˈnevə(r)/⑨ get up so early /ˈɜː(r)li/⑩. ——哇！我从不起那么早。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2d

Interviewer: Scott has an interesting job/dʒɒb/,/dʒɑːb/.He works/wɜː(r)ks/⑪ at a radio station/ˈsteɪʃn/. Scott,what time is your radio show?

采访者：斯科特有一份有趣的工作。他在一家广播电台工作。斯科特，你的广播节目什么时候（播出）？

Scott/skɒt/,/skɑːt/:From twelve o'clock/əˈklɒk/, /əˈklɑːk/ at night/naɪt/ to six o'clock in the morning.

斯科特：从晚上十二点到早上六点。

Interviewer: What time do you usually get up? 采访者：你通常几点起床?

Scott: At eight thirty at night.Then I eat breakfast at nine. 斯科特：晚上八点半。然后九点吃早餐。

Interviewer: That's a funny/ˈfʌni/⑫ time for⑬ breakfast! 采访者：那个时候吃早餐真有意思！

Scott: Yeah.After that, I usually exercise/ˈeksəsaɪz/⑭ at about ten twenty.

斯科特：是的。早餐之后，我通常在十点二十左右锻炼。

Interviewer: When do you go to work⑮？ 采访者：你什么时候去上班?

Scott: At eleven o'clock, so⑯ I'm never late for⑰ work. 斯科特：在十一点，因此，我上班从未迟到过。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

get up 与 go to bed



get up 起床



go to bed 上床睡觉

★get up

① get up 起床

e.g. My brother gets up at 6:00 in the morning and goes to bed at 10:00 in the evening. 我弟弟早晨 6 点起床，晚上 10 点上床睡觉。

拓展：常和 get 搭配的短语



考题在线 1 The air in the morning is so fresh here that I _____ early to exercise. [资阳]

A. get up B. get on C. get off D. get down

点拨：用关键信息法解题。get up "起床"；get on "上车"；get off "下车"；get down "写下；使沮丧"。由关键信息 to exercise "去锻炼"可知为 "起床"。



up



down

② up /ʌp/ *adv.* 向上

up 是副词，意为 "向上"，其反义词为 down "向下"。

★go to school

③ go to school 意为 "去上学"。

e.g. We go to school from Monday to Friday.

我们从周一到周五去上学。

关注微信公众号 "教辅资料站" 获取更多学习资料

★get dressed

④ **get dressed 穿上衣服** 这是"get+形容词"结构。

e.g. Let's get dressed and go to the concert. 我们穿上衣服去音乐会吧。

Zhang Jie is dressed in red/in a red jacket.

张杰穿着红色的衣服 / 一件红色的夹克衫。

get/be dressed in+衣服或表示颜色的词

拓展：get 的多种含义

get
- 意为"拿；取"。e.g.They get their money from me.他们从我这里取钱。
- 意为"买"，相当于 buy。e.g.I want to get a new pen.我想买支新钢笔。
- 意为"到达"。e.g.What time do you get to school?你什么时候到校?
- 意为"变得"，后跟形容词作表语。e.g.The day is getting longer.白天变得更长了。

⑤ **dress** /dres/ *v.* **穿衣服** *n.* **连衣裙**

e.g. The girl often dresses her little sister in the morning.

这个女孩经常在早晨给她妹妹穿衣服。

dress 用作动词，意为"给……穿衣服"。常用结构为：dress+sb.（或 oneself）。

注意：辨析 wear，put on，dress，have on 与 in，请参考 Unit 4 Period 1 考点 12 wear 的讲解。

考题在线 2 The child doesn't need any help. He is old enough（足够）to _____ himself.

A. put on　　B. wear

C. dress　　D. be in

方法真题练

点拨：用辨析法解题。put on"穿上"，表示动作，宾语是服装；wear"穿着"，表示状态，宾语是服装；be in"穿着"，表示状态，宾语是服装或颜色；dress"穿着；打扮"，其宾语为人。根据 himself 可以判断用 dress。

dress 用作可数名词，主要指女士穿的连衣裙或上下连身的女装。

e.g. My favorite singer is wearing a beautiful dress.

我最喜欢的歌手穿着一件漂亮的连衣裙。

★brush teeth

⑥ **brush** *v.* **刷；刷净** *n.* **刷子**

brush 用作动词，其第三人称单数形式为 brushes。brush one's teeth 意为"刷牙"，其中 one's 是形容词性物主代词。

拓展：brush 还可用作可数名词，意为"刷子"，其复数形式为 brushes。

e.g. The boy is brushing his teeth with a toothbrush.

这个男孩儿正在用牙刷刷牙。

tooth 为可数名词，其复数形式为 teeth，属于不规则变化。

⑦ **tooth** /tu:θ/ *n.* **牙齿** teeth *pl.*

e.g. The baby has only two teeth. 这个婴儿只有两颗牙。

拓展：不规则变化的词还有：

foot → feet 脚	mouse → mice 老鼠
man → men 男人	child → children 小孩
goose → geese 鹅	woman → women 女人

速记小筏：名词变复数不规则变化歌诀 男人女人 a 变 e，鹅足牙 oo 变 ee；老鼠也好记，ous 变 ic；孩子加上 ren。

考题在线 3 用括号内所给词的适当形式填空。

Too much sugar is bad for your _____(tooth). [武威]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★I usually get up at six thirty.

⑧ **at** /æt/ *prep.* 在（某处、某时间或时刻）

e.g. at seven forty-two 在 7 点 42 分　at 后接具体的时刻。

辨析：at, in 与 on

速记小筏：时间名词前介词的用法歌诀表达时间有规范，介词放前无疑嫌；at 后面跟时刻，也与正午、午夜连；月份、季节与年份，in 须奋勇站前边；on 表具体某一天，日期、星期、节日前；某天上午、下午与晚上，on 必担当无怨言。

at	常用于时刻前或一些习惯用语中。	at five o'clock 在五点钟 at noon/night 在中午 / 晚上 at that time 在那时
in	用在月份、季节、年份等前面，也可以表示在早上、在下午或在晚上。	in May 在五月 in spring 在春季 in 2016 在 2016 年 in the morning 在早上
on	用在具体日期、星期几、节日前，也用来表示在具体某一天的上午、下午或晚上。	on Monday 在星期一 on Children's Day 在儿童节 on the afternoon of July 8th 在 7 月 8 日的下午

考题在线 4 The city museum closes _____ 7 o'clock in the evening.

【导学号：8811889】[梧州]

A. at　　B. from　　C. on　　D. of

★I never get up so early.

⑨ **never** /ˈnevə(r)/ *adv.* 从不；绝不

never 常位于系动词、情态动词或助动词之后，实义动词之前，其反义词是 always。

e.g. Mary never goes out alone at night. 玛丽晚上从不单独外出。

It is never too late to mend. 亡羊补牢，犹为未晚。

考题在线 5 —How often do you usually go to work by subway?

—_____. I always take a bus, because there is no subway in this city.　[铜仁]

A. Sometimes　　B. Often　　C. Never　　D. Seldom

点拨：用语境判定法解题。sometimes 有时；often 经常；never 从不，决不；seldom 很少。由 always take a bus 以及 no subway 可知，“我”从不坐地铁。

★early 的反义词为 late；比较级和最高级分别为 earlier 和 earliest。

⑩ **early** /ˈɜ:(r)li/ *adv.*& *adj.* 早（的）　adv. 作状语

e.g. The early bus is very early, so we should get up early.

adj. 作定语　早班车非常早，所以我们应该早起。adj. 作表语

★He works at a radio station.

⑪ **work** /wɜ:(r)k/ *v.*& *n.* 工作

e.g. My mother works in this school. 我妈妈在这所学校工作。　v.

No one wants to be out of work. 没有人想失业。　n.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

My job/work is teaching English. 我的工作是教英语。

Can you help me find work/a job in Shanghai ?

你能帮我在上海找到工作吗?

拓展：① work + -er（名词后缀）→ worker *n.* 工作者；人员；工人

e.g. Jack is so good a worker that everyone likes him.

杰克是如此好的一个工人，以至于大家都喜欢他。

②与 work 相关的常用短语

at work 起作用　　work at 努力做；致力于

go to work 去上班　　out of work 失业

work out 计算，算出

★辨析：work 与 job

- work 指生活中的各类工作，是不可数名词。
- job 指具体的职业或工作，是可数名词。

注意：work 和 job 有时可互换。

考题在线 6 —Why do you look so excited, Tim?

—I've just got a good _____. [恩施改编]

A. news　　B. job　　C. work

★That's a funny time for breakfast!

⑫ **funny**/ˈfʌni/ *adj.* **奇怪的；滑稽好笑的**

e.g. Here, you can see many funny monkeys.

在这里，你能看见许多滑稽的猴子。

拓展：① fun 可用作形容词，意为“有趣的，使人快乐的”。

e.g. —Let's play computer games. 我们玩电脑游戏吧。

—That sounds fun. 那听起来有趣。

② fun 还可用作不可数名词，意为“乐趣，快乐”。

e.g. I hope you'll have fun at the party. 我希望你将在聚会中过得愉快。

速记 小筏：fun（乐趣）+ny（形容词后缀）= funny 有趣的。

敲黑板 要双写“n”，再加“y”，牢记！

⑬ **...time for...** 表示“做……的时间”

e.g. Tom's mother has enough time for shopping today.

今天汤姆的妈妈有足够的时间购物。

He has little time to sleep. 他几乎没有时间睡觉。

It's time for/to have lunch. 该吃午饭了。

It's time for us to go to Hua Chenyu's concert.

到了我们去华晨宇音乐会的时间了。

- ...time for.../...time to do... 做……的时间
- It's time for.../It's time to do... 到了该（做）……的时候了
- It's time for sb. to do sth. 到了某人该做某事的时候了

★After that, I usually exercise at about ten twenty.

⑭ **exercise** /ˈeksəsaɪz/ *v.*& *n.* **锻炼；练习**

exercise	*v.*	锻炼
	n.	锻炼；运动（不可数）
		训练活动；练习；习题（可数）



exercise（锻炼）



exercise（练习）

e.g. It's very important to exercise every day.

每天锻炼很重要。

Walking is good exercise. 散步是很好的锻炼。

敲黑板 不可数名词，牢记！

I have to do a lot of exercises every day. 我每天不得不做大量的练习。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

We do morning exercises and eye exercises every day.

我们每天做早操和眼保健操。

两个常用短语，熟背哦！敲黑板

★When do you go to work?

★与 go 相关的短语

go home 回家
go on 继续
go back 返回
go shopping 去购物
go out 出去
go over 仔细检查
go on a trip 去旅游
go away 离开；走开
go for a walk/swim 去散步 / 去游泳

⑮ go to work 去上班

e.g.I go to work by bus every day. 我每天乘公交车去上班。

go to work 意为“去上班”，是一种固定结构。“go + to +（冠词+）*n.*”可表示参加音乐会、聚会、会议等，也可表示去做某事。

go to 家族：go to school 去上学；go to bed 上床睡觉；go to work 去上班

★At eleven o'clock, so I'm never late for work.

⑯ so /səʊ/ *conj.* **所以；因此**

e.g. They like TFBOYS, so they always listen to their songs.

他们喜欢 TFBOYS，所以他们总是听他们的歌。

Math is interesting so I like it. 数学很有趣，所以我喜欢数学。

I like math because it's interesting. 我喜欢数学，因为它有趣。

because 与 so 不能用在一个句子中，只能用其一。

⑰ be late for... ……迟到

e.g. Do you often come to school late?=Are you often late for school?

你经常上学迟到吗？

late 副词　late for 形容词

be late for...=come to...late ……迟到

考题在线 7 完成句子。

今天下午我们将上一节关于美国乡村音乐的课，不要迟到。

This afternoon we will have a lesson about American country music. Don't _____ class. [淮安改编]

考题在线答案 1. A　2. C　3. teeth　4. A　5. C　6. B　7. be late for

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见296页）

听力技巧

逐句预测法（这是听力过程中最自然的预测，因为语言的线形性质使学生可以进行逐句预测，逐句验证。学生应用逐句增加的信息量去预测下一句的发展，积累起来，便可以把握全貌。）

听力过程

课文听力 1b

一、听 1b，完成表格

Time	Activities
six thirty	1. _____
2._____	brush teeth and take a shower
seven	eat breakfast
seven twenty	3. _____
seven thirty	go to school

二、听 2a，选择正确答案

课文听力 2a

4.How many sisters and brothers are there in the family?

A. Two.　B. Four.　C. Five.

5.Who takes a shower at five thirty?

A. Jim.　B. Bob.　C. Linda.

6.What time does Jim have a shower?

A. At six.　B. At six ten.

C. At half past six.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见296页)

一、单项选择

1. Don't be late_____class! We must be on time. [成都]

A. for B. to C. in

2. John isn't here, _____ you can't see him now.

A.because B. but C. or D. so

3. —Do you have a _____?

—Yes. I _____ at a food shop.

A. job; work B. work; work

C. work; job D. job; job

4. Our teacher stands _____ and goes out of the teachers' office.

A. down B. under C. up D. over

5. Most of the villagers took part in the Dragon Boat races _____ 9:00 a.m. _____ the morning of June 18. [乌鲁木齐]

A. at; in B. at; on C. on; in D. on; on

6. Li Ming goes to school _____ and he is the first one there.

A. late B. early C. fast D. slowly

7. He gets _____ quickly, and then _____ his brother.

A. dresses; dressed B. dressed; dresses

C. dresses; dresses D. dressed; dressed

8. Rick is a student.He usually _____ at eight o'clock in the morning.

A. goes to bed B. goes to school

C. goes to the bed D. goes to the school

9. He gets up very early, so he is _____ late for school.

A. always B. usually

C.never D. often

10. Do you know how many _____ you have? [永州]

A. tooths B. toothes C. teeth

二、根据汉语提示写单词或用所给单词的适当形式填空

11. School starts at eight_____ (……点钟).

12. My grandfather often _____ (锻炼) for a long time after dinner.

13. Their teacher is a _____ (fun) man.

14. He _____ (usual) goes to school by bus.

15. My mum bought some _____ (brush) in the supermarket.

三、根据汉语提示完成句子

16. His uncle and aunt work _____(在广播电台).

17. School should be a _____(学习的时间).

18. This animal only comes out _____(在夜晚).

19. He goes to work _____(从星期一到星期五).

20. In the morning, he _____ (起床) at six, and _____ (去上班) at 7:30.



独坐学霸界

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What time do you usually get up? 你通常几点起床?	I usually get up at six thirty. 我通常在六点半起床。
What time do they get dressed? 他们几点穿衣服?	They always get dressed at seven twenty. 他们总是在七点二十穿衣服。
What time does Rick eat breakfast? 里克几点吃早餐?	He eats breakfast at seven o'clock. 他在七点吃早餐。
When does Scott go to work? 斯科特什么时候去上班?	He always goes to work at eleven o'clock. He's never late. 他总是在十一点去上班。他从不迟到。
When do your friends exercise? 你的朋友们什么时候锻炼?	They usually exercise on weekends. 他们通常在周末锻炼。

3a Write answers or questions.Use *always, usually* or *never*.

用 always，usually 或 never 写出答语或问题。

1.What time do you get up on school days? 在上学的日子里，你几点起床?

_____

2._____?

Rick always gets up at 6:20. 里克总是在六点二十起床。

3.What time do you have breakfast? 你几点吃早餐?

_____

4._____?

Anna never eats breakfast. 安娜从不吃早餐。

5.What time does your best/best/ friend go to school? 你最好的朋友几点去上学?

_____

3b Write about something you *always* do, something you *usually* do and something you *never* do.

写某件你总是做、你通常做和你从不做的事。

always 总是 _____

usually 通常_____

never 从不_____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3c Interview three of your classmates.Find out what time they do these activities.Then give a report to the class. 采访你的三个同班同学。找出他们做这些活动的时间。然后在班上作报告。

	Student 1 学生 1 Name: 名字： _____	Student 2 学生 2 Name: 名字： _____	Student 3 学生 3 Name: 名字： _____
get up on weekends 在周末起床			
exercise 锻炼			
eat dinner 吃晚餐			
take a shower 洗淋浴			
go to school 去上学			

In our group/gru:p/, Li Fei usually gets up late on weekends.She gets up at...
在我们组里，李菲通常在周末起得晚。她在……起床。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用

★In our group, Li Fei usually gets up late on weekends.

group /gru:p/ *n.* 组；群

group 是集合名词，强调整体时，可视为单数，谓语动词用单数形式；强调成员时，视为复数，谓语动词用复数形式。

e.g. The boys go to school in groups. 男孩们成群结队地去上学。

A group of girls are cleaning the room. 一群女孩正在打扫房间。

•考点批注

★常用短语

- in one's group 在某人的组中
- in groups 成群地
- a group of... 一群……

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

询问时间与时间的表达方法

考点1 询问时间 (what time 与 when)

考向：对时间提问一般用 when 和 what time。



1. when 是疑问副词，意为“什么时候，何时”，常用于对日期（某年、某月、某日）提问。

e.g. When are you going to leave Shanghai?
你们打算何时离开上海?

2. 当询问某个具体时刻时，用 what time。当泛指“做某事的时间”时，when 和 what time 一般可互换。

3. what time 用来对某个时间提问，希望知道的时间比 when 更具体。

e.g. What time does the shop open?
这个商店几点开门?

考题在线1 —_____ will the Jinniu Lake Animal Kingdom be open?
— Maybe in the second half of this year.
[南京]

A. When　　B. Who
C. What　　D. Where

点拨：用前后照应法解题。由答语句意“可能在今年下半年。”可知，问句问的是金牛湖动物王国开放的时间，故用 when 提问。

考点2 时间的表达法

考向：【重点】英语中时间的表达方法分为三类

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

分类	用法	例子
整点法	时间为整点时，可用“整点数+o’clock”表示，o’clock 可省略。	It’s five o’clock./It’s five. 现在 5 点（整）。
顺读法	“先时后分”，先读整点数，再读分钟数，都用基数词来读。当分钟数小于 10 时，遇到数字 0，发字母 o 的音 /əʊ/。	6:30 为 six thirty 2:58 为 two fifty-eight 4:05 为 four o (/əʊ/) five
逆读法	a. 分钟数小于 30 时，用“分钟数+past+ 整点数”表示； b. 分钟数为 30 时，用“half past+ 整点数”表示； c. 分钟数超过 30 时，用“60 减去分钟数 +to+ 下一个整点数”表示； d. 分钟数是 15 的倍数时，可用 quarter 表示。	8:10 为 ten past eight 1:30 为 half past one 5:56 为 four to six 10:15 为 a quarter past ten 5:45 为 a quarter to six

速记小筏：

巧记时间表达法

“时”在前，“分”在后，quarter，half 不能有；如何使用 past 和 to，我们可要看清楚；前是“分”，后是“点”，past 或 to 立中间；past 是加，to 是减；如果表示“几点半”，要用 half 加钟点。

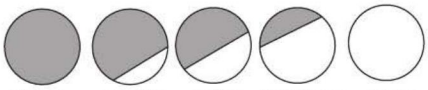
频度副词

表示次数、频率的副词称为频度副词。常用的频度副词有 usually（通常），sometimes（有时），always（总是），often（经常），never（从不）等。

考向 1：频度副词位置及用法

位置	一般放在 be 动词、情态动词、助动词之后，实义动词之前。	She is sometimes very busy. 她有时很忙。 We must always study hard. 我们必须总是努力学习。 They often exercise. 他们经常锻炼。
用法	频度副词常和一般现在时连用，表示现在或反复发生的动作。	We usually have P.E.on Wednesday. 我们通常在周三上体育课。

考向 2：常见频度副词的频率大小比较



考题在线 2 Meals are very boring.He_____ has the same thing to eat every day. [佛山]

A. never　　B. always

C. sometimes

考向 3：对频度副词提问用 how often

e.g. —How often do you play computer games？ 你多久玩一次电脑游戏？

—Never. 从不。

考题在线答案 1. A　2. B

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夯取中考语法满分

（答案见 297 页）

一、单项选择

1. —_____ does he usually go to the park?

—On Sundays.

A. Where　　B. What　　C. When　　D. Why

2. —_____ do you have dinner?

—At about 7:00 p.m.

A. How　　B. How much

C. What　　D. What time

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. —_____ is your birthday and _____ do you have a birthday party?
—Next Friday and at 6:00 in the afternoon.
A. When; what time B. What time; what
C. What; when D. What; what time

4. —Do you often go fishing with your father?
—No, _____. I don't like fishing at all. [乐山改编]
A. never B. always C. usually

5. He_____takes a bus to work. But this morning, he rode a bike.
A. never B. hardly C. seldom D. usually

二、按要求完成句子

6. We usually get up at 6:00.（对画线部分提问）
_____ _____do you usually get up?

7. Tom often exercises on weekends.（对画线部分提问）
_____ _____Tom often _____?

8. When do they come here?（改为同义句）
_____ _____do they_____here?

9. What time does your brother go to school?（用7: 00回答）
He _____ to school _____ _____.

10. He always tells us interesting stories.（改为否定句）
He_____ _____ us interesting stories.

Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）

I. 课文原文、译文

1a When do students usually do these things? Match the activities with the time of day.
学生们通常在什么时候做这些事情？把这些活动与一天中的时间搭配起来。

half/hɑ:f/,/hæf/① past/pɑ:st/,/pæst/② six in the morning_____ 早上六点半_____
a quarter/'kwɔ:(r)tə(r)/③ past three in the afternoon_____ 下午三点一刻_____
a quarter to seven in the evening_____ 晚上六点四十五分_____
a quarter to ten in the evening_____ 晚上九点四十五分_____
1.do homework/'həʊmwɜ:(r)k/④ 做家庭作业
2.eat dinner 吃晚餐
3.eat breakfast 吃早餐
4.go to bed 上床睡觉

1b Check your answers with your partner. 跟你的同伴一起检查一下你的答案。

—When do students usually eat dinner? 学生们通常什么时候吃晚餐？
—They usually eat dinner at a quarter to seven in the evening.
他们通常在晚上六点四十五分吃晚餐。

1c Listen and circle the activities you hear. 听录音，圈出你听到的活动。



1.(get up)(起床) 5:30
2.run/rʌn/⑤ 跑步 _____
6.do my homework 做我的家庭作业 _____
7.clean/kli:n/⑥ my room 打扫我的房间 _____

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3.eat breakfast 吃早餐 _____　　8.eat dinner 吃晚餐 _____

4.go to school 去上学 _____　　9.take a walk/wɔːk/ 散步 _____

5.go home 回家 _____　　10.go to bed 上床睡觉 _____

1d Listen again.Write the times next to the activities you circled in 1c.

再听一遍录音，把时间写在 1c 中你圈出来的活动旁边。

1e Ask and answer questions about Tom. 就汤姆的情况进行问答。

—When does Tom usually get up? 汤姆通常什么时候起床?

—He usually gets up at half past five. 他通常在五点半起床。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见297页)

听力过程

听 1c，选择正确答案

课文听力 1c

1. What time does Tom get up?

A. At 5:00.　　B. At 5:30.　　C. At 6:00.

2. What does Tom do at six?

A. Takes a shower.　　B. Runs.

C. Brushes his teeth.

3. When does Tom go to school?

A. At about seven.　　B. At seven forty-five.

C. At eight ten.

4. What time does Tom go home?

A. At 4:00.　　B.At 4:15.

C. At 4:45.

5. What does Tom do at seven fifteen in the evening?

A. Does his homework.　　B. Goes to bed.

C. Eats dinner.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

● half的复数为halves。half of... 意为"……的一半"。

● "half past+整点数"表示"几点半"；half an hour 意为"半个小时"。

★half past six in the morning

① **half** /hɑːf/, /hæf/ *n.*& *pron.* 一半；半数　名词

e.g. Let's cut the apple into **halves**. 我们把这个苹果切成两半吧。

Half of the books are about music. 一半的书是关于音乐的。

It's half past eleven now. 现在是十一点半。　代词

拓展：【难点】"几个半"的表达：

几个半{基数词 + 可数名词单复数 +and+a half
基数词 +and a half+ 可数名词复数

e.g.one hour and a half = one and a half hours 一个半小时

one day and a half = one and a half days 一天半

考题在线 1 The workers will complete the new bridge in _____. [郴州]

A. two and a half months　　B. two months and half

C. two and a half month

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

② **past** /pɑːst/, /pæst/ *prep.* 晚于；过（时间）*adj.* 过去的

e.g. It is twenty past seven. 现在是七点二十分。

★past 用作介词，意为“（在时间、地点、数量、程度等）超过”。

考题在线 2 —Would you please tell me the way to the Pacific Hotel?

— Go _____ the post office, and you will find it on the left（左边）.

[烟台]

A. pass　　B. past

C. to passing　　D. passed

★**a quarter past three in the afternoon**

③ **quarter**/kwɔː(r)tə(r)/ *n.* 一刻钟；四分之一

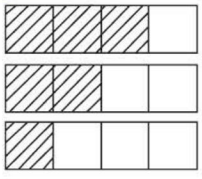
e.g.A quarter is fifteen minutes. 一刻钟是 15 分钟。

A quarter of a dollar is 25 cents. 四分之一美元是 25 美分。



四分之一　一刻钟

辨析 quarter 与 half



3/4 three quarters

1/2 one half

1/4 one quarter

★**do homework**

④ **homework** *n.* 家庭作业

★do（one's）homework 意为“做（某人的）作业”，其中 one's 代表形容词性物主代词。

e.g. How much homework do you do every day?

你们每天做多少家庭作业？　→不可数名词

My son is able to do his homework by himself.

我儿子能独立做他的家庭作业了。

速记 小筏：home（家）+ work（工作）=homework（家庭作业）

★**run**

⑤ **run**/rʌn/ *v.* 跑；奔　→不及物动词

e.g.I run 2 km every morning. 我每天早晨跑 2 千米。

He ran a race with me. 他与我赛跑。　及物动词

拓展 1：run→runner *n.* 奔跑的人（尤指参加速度比赛者）

拓展 2：run 用作及物动词，还意为“经营”。

敲黑板 双写 n，再加 er。牢记！

e.g. His father runs a shop. 他父亲经营一家商店。

拓展 3：run 用作动词，表示“（液体）流动”。

e.g. Rivers run into the sea. 河水流入大海。

ran（过去式）
↓
run（过去分词）
↓
running（现在分词）

★**clean my room**

⑥ **clean** /kliːn/ *v.* 打扫；弄干净 *adj.* 干净的

clean 既可以作动词，也可以作形容词。

clean
- *v.* 打扫，弄干净
- *adj.* 干净的



v. 打扫



adj. 干净的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g.Please clean your room and keep it clean.
请打扫你的房间并保持整洁。

★take a walk

★take a walk =take walks，同义短语还有 have a walk 和 go for a walk。

⑦ take a walk 散步

e.g.Let's take a walk. 我们去散步吧。

拓展：【难点】take 常和名词连用，表示与该名词意义相关的动作。

e.g.Can I take a look？我可以看一看吗?

I want to take a rest. 我想要休息一下。

一语辨异：walk 的用法

My grandparents often take walks in the park but they walk very slowly.
我的祖父母经常在公园里散步，但是他们走得很慢。

walk	*n.* 步行，行走	How about going for a walk？ 去散步如何?
	v. 步行，行走	He often walks to school. 他经常步行去上学。

考题在线答案 1. A 2.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见297页）

根据汉语意思，完成相应的英文句子

1. 我每天早晨 5 点半起床。
I get up at _____ every morning.

2. 我们学校四分之三的学生来自农村。
_____ of the students in our school come from the countryside.

3. 王成晚上 7 点做家庭作业。
Wang Cheng _____at 7:00 p.m.

4. 看！林书豪正在奔跑。
Look! Lin Shuhao _____.

5. 打扫完教室后去散步怎么样?
What about _____ after_____the classroom?

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

2a Check(√)the activities that you think are healthy. 在你认为健康的活动前打（√）。

_____go to bed early 早早上床睡觉
_____eat ice-cream 吃冰淇淋
_____eat quickly/kwɪkli/ ① 吃得快
_____eat vegetables 吃蔬菜
_____play sports 进行体育运动
_____take a walk 去散步

2b Tony/təʊni/ and Mary are brother and sister.They have healthy and unhealthy habits.Who is healthier? Circle the healthy activities.
托尼和玛丽是姐弟。他们有健康的和不健康的习惯。谁更健康呢？圈出健康的活动。

课文朗读 2b

Hi! I'm Tony.I don't like to get up early.In the morning,I get up at eight.Then I go to school at eight thirty.I don't have much time for breakfast,so I usually eat very quickly.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

For lunch,I usually eat hamburgers.After school, I sometimes/ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ ② play basketball for half an hour. When I get home,I always do my homework first.In the evening, I either ④ /ˈaɪðə(r)/, /ˈiːðə(r)/ watch TV or ③ play computer games. At ten thirty,I brush my teeth and then I go to bed.

嗨！我是托尼。我不喜欢早起。早晨，我八点起床，然后八点半去上学。我没有很多时间吃早餐，因此我通常吃得很快。午餐我通常吃汉堡包。放学后，我有时打半小时的篮球。当我到家后，我总是先做家庭作业。晚上，我要么看电视，要么玩电脑游戏。十点半我刷牙，然后上床睡觉。

Mary is my sister. She usually gets up at six thirty. Then she always takes a shower and eats a good breakfast. After that, she goes to school at eight thirty. At twelve, she eats lots /lɒts/,/lɑːts/ of ⑤ fruit and vegetables for lunch. After lunch, she sometimes plays volleyball. She always eats ice-cream after dinner. She knows it's not good for her, but it tastes ⑥ /teɪsts/ good! In the evening, she does her homework and usually swims or takes a walk. At nine thirty, she goes to bed.

玛丽是我的姐姐。她通常六点半起床，然后她总是洗淋浴，好好吃顿早餐。那之后，她八点半去上学。在十二点，她吃大量的水果和蔬菜作为午餐。午餐之后，她有时打排球。她总是晚餐之后吃冰淇淋。她知道这对她没好处，但是它尝起来不错！晚上，她做家庭作业，并且通常游泳或散步。九点半，她上床睡觉。

2c Write down the unhealthy habits of each person. Then think of healthy activities for them.

写下每个人不健康的习惯。然后为他们想出健康的活动。

	Unhealthy habits 不健康的习惯	Healthy activities 健康的活动
Tony 托尼	_____	_____
	_____	_____
Mary 玛丽	_____	_____
	_____	_____

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见297页）

阅读策略

时间顺序法（本部分课文主要记述了托尼和他的姐姐日常的生活习惯，其中包括健康的和不健康的活动。阅读此类文章，可以采用时间顺序法，即注意文中所涉及的先后时间，如 In the morning, ...—Then,...—After..., ...—When..., ...—In the evening, ...，同时，勾画出不同时间的不同活动，这样就会对整篇文章有一个完整的认知。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What's the passage mainly about?

（主旨大意题）

A. Tony's and Mary's activities in a day.

B. Tony is a student.

C. Mary's brother.

D. When to go to bed.

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

⊙ **2.**When does Tony play basketball?

（细节理解题）

A. At lunch.

B. After school.

C. At about ten thirty.

D.When he gets home.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Why does Tony eat very quickly?

(推理判断题)

A. Because he is a quick boy.

B. Because he likes the food.

C. Because he isn't hungry.

D. Because he has little time.

⊙4. After_____, Mary goes to school.

(细节理解题)

A. getting up at six thirty

B. going to school at eight thirty

C. taking a shower and eating breakfast

D. eating lots of fruit and vegetables for lunch

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

速记 小筏：

quick (adj. 快的)
↕ 反义词
slow (adj. 慢的)

quickly (adv. 很快地)
↕ 反义词
slowly (adv. 缓慢地)

一语 辩异：

Don't run so fast and we will get there soon, but when we get there, you should eat lunch quickly.
不要跑得那么快，我们很快就到那儿了，但是当我们到那儿时你午饭应该吃快点儿。

★eat quickly

① **quickly** /ˈkwɪkli/ *adv.* **很快地**

quickly 用作副词，意为“很快地”，其形容词形式是 quick“快的”，其反义词是 slowly“缓慢地”。

e.g. Su Bingtian runs very quickly. 苏炳添跑得非常快。

敲黑板 形容词+ly可变为副词，谨记！

辨析：quickly，fast 与 soon

quickly	迅速地	强调动作发生或完成得快，也可指人的思维敏捷。
fast	迅速（的）地	强调动作速度之快，既可作形容词，也可作副词。作副词时常可与 quickly 互换。
soon	不久以后	侧重两件事情先后发生，中间的间隔时间很短。

★After school, I sometimes play basketball for half an hour.

② **sometimes** /ˈsʌmtaɪmz/ *adv.* **有时**

e.g. Sometimes my parents use WeChat Pay. 有时我的父母使用微信支付。

考题在线1 He sometimes takes a walk with his mom.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ _____he take a walk with his mom?

sometimes 用作副词，表示频率，意为“有时”，用 how often 提问。

辨析：sometimes，some times，some time 与 sometime

sometimes	是频度副词，意为“有时候”。相当于 at times。
some times	表次数，意为“几次”。
some time	有两个用法：用作副词词组，意为“某个时候”(= sometime)；用作名词词组，意为“一段时间”。
sometime	意为“某个时候”，可用于将来或过去时。

速记 小筏：

分开“一段”，连“某时”；分开 s 表“几次”，相连 s 是“有时”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. I sometimes stay in bed until lunchtime. 我有时候睡到午饭时间。

The foreigner went to the Great Wall some times when he was in China. 当这个外国人在中国时，他去了几次长城。

Phone me some time next week. 下个星期什么时候给我打个电话吧。

It takes quite some time. 它要花费相当多时间。

Maybe we'll meet Lu Han sometime. 也许我们在某个时刻将会见到鹿晗。



考题在线 2 He usually goes to school by bus, but_____he rides a bike.

A. sometime　　B. some time

C. sometimes　　D. some times

★In the evening, I either watch TV or play computer games.

敲黑板 重点兼难点，一定注意了！

③ either...or... 要么……要么……；或者……或者……

考题在线 3 —What would you like to have for supper, Jack?

—Either noodles or rice _____ OK. I don't mind. [安顺]

A. are　　B. were　　C. is　　D. was

either...or... 连接句子中两个并列的成分，表示两者之一。连接两个并列主语时，谓语动词和最近的主语保持一致，即遵循"就近原则"。

点拨：用主谓一致法解题。either...or... 连接并列的两个主语时，谓语与邻近主语保持一致；rice 是不可数名词，且本句时态为一般现在时，故 be 动词用 is。

辨析：either...or..., neither...nor..., both...and... 与 not only...but also...

either ...or ... 或者……或者……	Either she or I am right. 她和我有一个人对。
neither ...nor ... 既不……也不……	Neither she nor I am right. 她和我都不对。
both ...and ... ……和……两者都	Both she and I are right. 她和我都对。
not only ...but also ... 不仅……，而且……	Not only she but also I am right. 不仅她，而且我也是对的。

考题在线 4 John is good at doing sports. He _____ climbs mountains _____ plays soccer at 8:00 every Sunday morning. [曲靖]

A. neither；nor　　B. either；or

C. not only；but also　　D. both；and

④ either /ˈaɪðə(r)/,/ˈiːðə(r)/ *conj.* **或者；** *adv.* **也（用在否定词组后）**

辨析：either, too 与 also（见 Unit 1 Period 4 考点 1）

e.g. I don't like the green one either.

我也不喜欢这件绿色的。

I like Zhao Liying, too. 我也喜欢赵丽颖。

My friend also eats healthily.

我的朋友也吃得健康。

either
- 副词，"也"，用于否定句。
- 代词，"（两者中）任何一个"，短语 either of...

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

歌诀助记：
either，too 和also 的用法
also 句中 too 句末，句中位置不能错；同是用来表肯定，also 语气比 too 重；如果句子表否定，either 句末来站正。

拓展：either 用作代词，在句中作主语时，谓语动词用单数；作定语时，只能修饰单数名词。

e.g.—Would you like some orange juice or coffee? 你想要橙汁还是咖啡?
—Either is OK. I don't mind. 任何一种都可以。我不介意。

考题在线 5 —Where would you like to go tomorrow, Huangguoshu Waterfall or Dragon Palace?
—_____ is OK for me. It's up to you. [安顺]
A. Either B. Neither C. Both D. All

★At twelve, she eats lots of fruit and vegetables for lunch.

⑤ **lots of 大量；许多**

敲黑板 易错内容，记熟！

e.g. There are lots of/a lot of people in the park.
公园里有许多人。

lots of=a lot of，修饰可数名词复数和不可数名词。

考题在线 6 尼泊尔地震后，其他国家向当地人捐赠了大量的钱款物资。
After the earthquake in Nepal, other countries gave away _____ _____money and things to the local people.

点拨：用语境分析法解题。分析句子可知句中缺少语意“大量”，many, much, a lot of, lots of 都表示“许多；大量”之意；因为是两个空格，所以填 lots of。

★She knows it's not good for her, but it tastes good!

⑥ **taste**/teɪst/ *v.* **有……的味道；品尝** *n.* **味道，滋味**

taste 的用法

系动词（后接形容词作表语）	It tastes sweet. 它尝起来是甜的。
实义动词（后接名词或代词）	Tom smelled the mooncake and then tasted it. 汤姆闻了闻月饼，然后尝了它。
名词	Sugar has a sweet taste. 糖有甜味。

★类似的表示感觉的连系动词还有 look“看起来”；sound“听起来”；smell“闻起来；有……的气味”；feel“摸起来”。

考题在线 7 The dish smells delicious, but it _____ a little salty. [辽阳]
A. looks B. tastes C. feels D. sounds

考题在线答案 1. How often does 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. A 6. lots of 7. B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见297页)

一、根据句意及所给提示补全句子

1. Why are they walking so_____(quick)?
2. You can c_____ do your homework or clean the classroom.
3. This kind of apple t_____ very sweet.
4. Now you can see l_____ of fish in the river again.
5. _____（有时）we talk about musicians after class.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、单项选择

6. I usually go to school by bike, but_____by bus.

A. always B. usually

C. sometimes D. often

7. This kind of peach looks really nice, but it _____very sour. [宁波]

A. tastes B. looks

C. feels D. sounds

8. I have _____work to do every day.

A. a lot B. lots of

C. a lots of D. many

9. His grandfather often_____ after dinner.

A. take a walk B. takes a walk

C. go a walk D. goes a walk

10. —Either you or she _____on duty today. Don't forget it.

—OK. I won't.

A. is B. am C. are D. be

三、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

11. 明天是校庆日，你应该早点起床。

Tomorrow is School Day. You should _____ _____ _____.

12. 或者汤姆或者杰克将和你一起去骑共享单车。

_____Tom _____ Jack will ride shared bikes with you.

13. 这个男孩没有多少时间进行体育运动。

The boy doesn't have _____ _____ _____sports.

14. 喝牛奶对健康有好处。

Drinking milk _____ _____ _____ health.

15. 我和我弟弟每天晚饭后做家庭作业。

My brother and I _____ _____ _____ after dinner every day.

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Number these sentences in order to make a story about a daily routine.

给下列句子编号以便编成一个日常生活故事。

_____ I usually exercise from six fifteen to seven. 我通常从 6 点 15 到 7 点锻炼。

_____ I always get up at six. 我总是 6 点起床。

_____ After that,I always brush my teeth and go to school at eight. 在那之后，我总是刷牙，然后 8 点去上学。

_____ Then I quickly have a shower and eat breakfast. 然后，我匆忙洗淋浴和吃早餐。

_____ I have lunch at a quarter to twelve. 我在 11 点 45 吃午餐。

_____ I get home from school at half past four and do my homework. 我 4 点半从学校到家，然后做作业。

__1__ I have a very healthy② life/laɪf/③.① 我过着非常健康的生活。

_____ I have dinner at seven thirty. 我 7 点半吃晚餐。

_____ I go to bed at ten. 我 10 点上床睡觉。

3b Write about your own daily routine. 写一写你自己的日常生活。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Match the verbs in column A with the words in column B.Then use the phrases to complete

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

the sentences. 将 A 栏的动词与 B 栏的词汇相匹配。然后用短语完成句子。

A	B
taste 尝起来	your teeth 你的牙齿
clean 打扫	my room 我的房间
have 有	a walk 散步
get（使）达到	good 好的
take 与名词连用，表示举动、动作等	dressed 穿着衣服
brush 刷	a good job 一份好工作

1. Ice-cream usually _____ so students like to eat it after school.
   冰淇淋通常_____，因此放学后学生们都喜欢吃。
2. My grandparents are very healthy. They always _____ after dinner.
   我的祖父母很健康。晚餐之后，他们总是_____。
3. You need to _____ after eating to have good teeth.
   为了拥有健康的牙齿，你需要吃完（东西）后_____。
4. He _____. He works at a radio station. 他_____。他在广播电台工作。
5. Here are your clothes. Go and _____ quickly! 这是你的衣服。快去_____！
6. I don't have time to _____ from Monday to Friday. So I clean it on weekends.
   从星期一到星期五，我没有时间_____。因此我在周末打扫它。

2 Complete the conversations with questions and answers. Use the words in brackets to help you. 完成对话问答。用括号内的词帮助你。

1. **A:**_____?(your mother/usually/get up) _____?（你的母亲 / 通常 / 起床）
   B:_____.(5:45) _____。(5:45)
   A:_____?(why/get up/so early) _____?（为什么 / 起床 / 如此早）
   B:_____.(always/make breakfast for me) _____。（总是 / 为我做早饭）
2. **A:**_____?(you/usually/get to school) _____?（你 / 通常 / 到达学校）
   B:_____.(7:30) _____。(7:30)
   A:_____?(your class teacher/usually/get to school)_____?（你的班主任 / 通常 / 到达学校）
   B: I don't know. But he/she is never late for the first class in the morning.
   我不知道。但是上午第一节课他 / 她从不迟到。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　•考点应用

★I have a very healthy life.

① 【句法分析】"Sb. have/has a very + 形容词 + life." 是一个总结句，意为"某人过着非常……的生活。"，也可表达为"Sb. live(s) a...life."。

e.g. Now, in China, we are having a happy life.
现在，在中国，我们过着幸福的生活。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

② **healthy** /helθi/ *adj.* 健康的

healthy 用作形容词，意为“健康的”，其反义词是 unhealthy。

考题在线 —What do you think of working as a doctor?

—It's a good job to help people keep _____. [淮安]

A. busy B. strict C. healthy D. popular

点拨：用常识法解题。由常识可知，医生的职责是帮助人们保持健康。表示“保持健康”应用 keep healthy。

速记小筏：

health(n. 健康)+-y

↓

healthy(adj. 健康的)

↓反义词

unhealthy(adj. 不健康的)

③ **life** /laɪf/ *n.* 生活；生命

life

- “（某种方式的）生活”，既可用作可数名词也可用作不可数名词。
  - He has a busy life every day. 他每天过着忙碌的生活。
- “性命；人命”，既可用作可数名词也可用作不可数名词。
  - He saved many lives in the earthquake. 他在地震中救了很多人的命。
- “一生，人生”，既可用作可数名词也可用作不可数名词。
  - The writer writes lots of books in her life. 这位作家在她的一生中写了许多书。

速记小筏：

巧记从f(e)结尾的名词复数变法

汤姆和他精灵(elf)般美丽的妻子(wife)，生活贫困。一天，正当他们把半个(half)面包和一捆喂小牛(calf)的叶子(leaf)往架子(shelf)上放的时候，突然一个贼(thief)手里拿刀(knife)像恶狼(wolf)一般冲了进来，汤姆保护妻子。

拓展：life 的复数形式为 lives，类似的名词变复数还有：

elf→elves, wife→wives, half→halves, calf→calves, leaf→leaves, shelf→shelves, thief→thieves, knife→knives, wolf→wolves

考题在线答案 C

Ⅲ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

单元话题

假设你的朋友叫 Joe，下面是他的作息时间表，你觉得他的生活健康吗？根据表格内容，写一篇不少于 60 词的短文介绍他的生活习惯，可以适当发挥。

	Activities（活动）	Time
In the morning	get up	6:40
	take a shower	7:00
	eat breakfast	7:30
	go to school	8:10
In the afternoon	eat rice and chicken	12:00
	play basketball	from 5:00 to 5:30
In the evening	do homework	7:00
	watch TV	from 8:00 to 9:00
	go to bed	9:30
我的观点：I think he...		

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 注意时间的先后顺序；

2. 正确运用人称。介绍他人的活动，用第三人称，在一般现在时句子中动词要用单三形式；

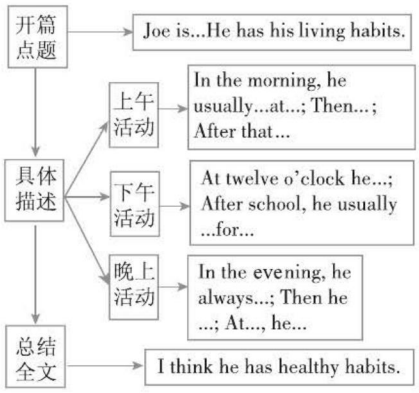
3. 要掌握好时间的各种表达方式，恰当运用介词和其他关联词。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“3W 法”写日常作息习惯［日常作息习惯话题可从人物 (Who)、在什么时间 (When)、做了什么 (What) 等要素详述。］

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	at, usually, often, always, never, sometimes, exercise
短语	get up, go to school, get dressed, brush teeth, eat breakfast, take a shower, take a walk, do one's homework, go to work, go to bed, do sports, from... to...
句子	① He usually gets up at... ② In the morning, he... ③ Then he... ④ After that, he...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Joe is my friend. He has his living habits. In the morning, he usually ① gets up at six forty. Then ② he takes a shower at seven and eats breakfast at seven thirty. After that ②, he goes to school at ten past eight. At twelve o'clock, he eats rice and chicken for lunch. After school ②, he usually plays basketball for half an hour. In the evening, he always ① does his homework at seven. Then he sometimes ① watches TV from eight to nine. At nine thirty, he goes to bed. I think ③ he has healthy habits.

名师点评：本文运用了"3W法"写日常作息习惯。结构严谨、语言流畅、信息全面、时间顺序性强、叙述有条理。

第一：点明了人物"who"，人称代词he使用正确。

第二：明确了时间"when"，正确使用了介词（in+上午/晚上；at+时间点）。

第三：介绍了具体的活动"what"，由get up，take a shower…到go to bed。

添彩点：①恰当运用了相应的副词，表明做某事的频率。

②巧妙地运用了then，after that，after school等叙述日常活动的顺序。

③结尾用I think…表明了自己对Joe日常生活习惯的看法。



Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞（答案见297页）

单元知识浓缩

I have a good friend.Her name is Michelle. She_____[1]（通常）_____[2]（起床）at h_____[3] past six.Then she _____[4]（刷牙），_____[5]（洗淋浴）and _____[6]（穿上衣服）._____[7]（什么时间）does she _____[8]（去上学）? At _____[9]（七点一刻）. She doesn't want to _____[10]（迟到）school, _____[11]（所以）she goes to school _____[12]（早早地）.

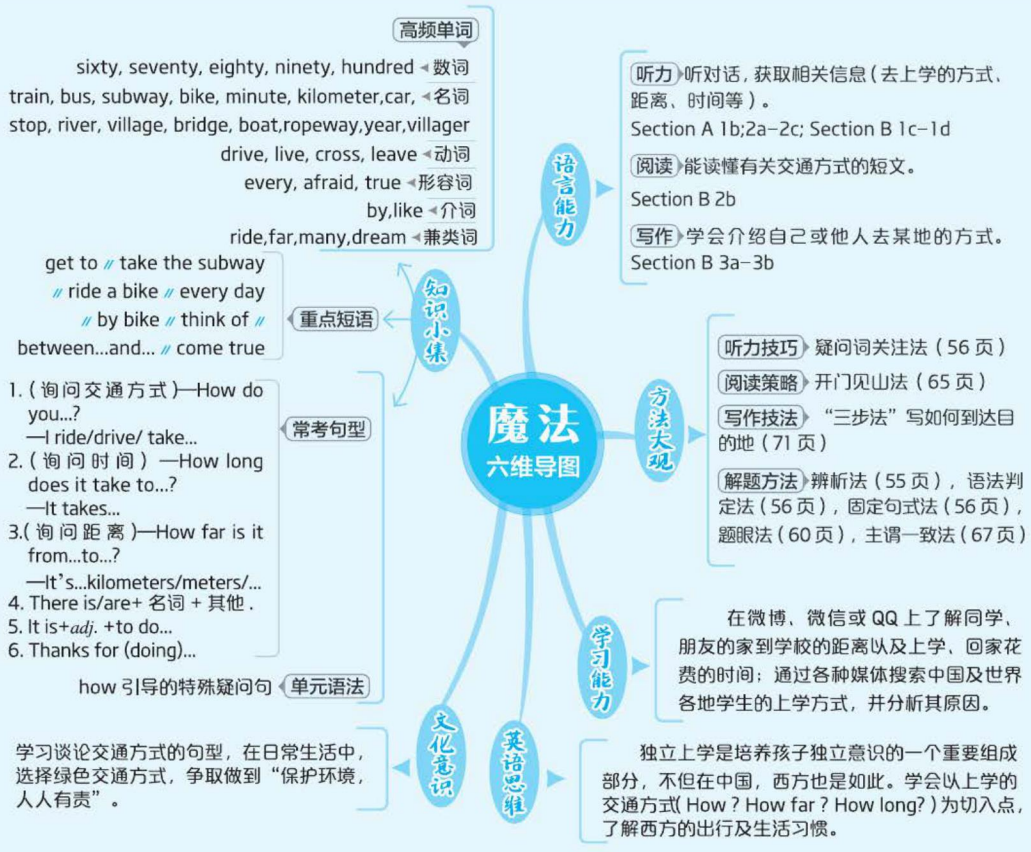
She has seven classes every day. After school, she always _____[13]（做家庭作业）first. She _____[14]（或是）takes a walk_____[15]（或是）exercises after dinner. She is the _____[16]（最好的）student in her class. Guess what she wants to be! She wants to be an actress（女演员）. She says this _____[17]（工作）is _____[18]（有趣的）. We hope she can do _____[19]（大量；许多）things now and have a happy _____[20]（生活）in the future（在未来）.

How do you get to school?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 How do you get to school?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2e)

必背单词

1.train *n.* 火车 →by train 乘坐火车

2.bus *n.* 公共汽车 → buses (复数)

3.subway *n.* 地铁

4.bike *n.* 自行车

5.ride *v.* 骑 *n.* 旅程 →ride a bike 骑自行车

6.sixty *num.* 六十

7.seventy *num.* 七十

8.eighty *num.* 八十

9.ninety *num.* 九十

10.hundred *num.* 一百

11.minute *n.* 分钟

12.far *adj.& adv.* 远；远的

13.kilometer *n.* 千米；公里

14.new *adj.* 新的；刚出现的 →old (反义词) 旧的

15.every *adj.* 每一；每个

16.by *prep.* (表示方式) 乘(交通工具)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

必背短语

17.get to 到达

18.take the subway 乘地铁

19.every day 每天

20. by bike 骑自行车

21.have a good day 过得愉快；玩得高兴

必背句子

22.—How do you get to school? 你是怎么到校的?

—I **walk**. 我步行。

23. How far is it from your home **to** school?

从你家到学校有多远?

24.How long does it take you to get to school?

到校需要花费你多长时间呢?

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

必背单词

1.drive *v.* 开车→ drive one's car 开某人的车

2.car *n.* 小汽车；轿车→ by car 乘小汽车

3.live *v.* 居住；生活 live in/on... 居住 / 生活在……

必背句子 & 语法

4.—How does she get to school? 她怎么到学校?

—**She usually** takes the bus.

她通常坐公共汽车。

5.—Does Jane **walk to** school? 简步行去上学吗?

—**No, she doesn't**. She goes by bike.

不，她不是。她骑自行车去。

Period 3 Section B (1a–1e)

必背单词

1.stop *n.* 车站；停止 → at the stop 在车站

必背短语

2.think of 认为；想起

Period 4 Section B (2a–2d)

必背单词

1.cross *v.* 横过；越过→ crosses（第三人称单数）→ crossing（现在分词）

2.many *adj.& pron.* 许多 → more（比较级）→ most（最高级）

3.village *n.* 村庄；村镇→ villager 村民

4.afraid *adj.* 害怕；畏惧→ be afraid of sth./sb. 害怕某物 / 人→ be afraid to do sth. 害怕做某事

5.leave *v.* 离开；留下→ leave for... 离开去……

6.true *adj.* 真的；符合事实的→ truth *n.* 事实

7.river *n.* 河；江→ in the river 在河里

8.bridge *n.* 桥 → on the bridge 在桥上

9.year *n.* 年；岁

10.like *prep.* 像；怎么样

11.dream *n.* 梦想；睡梦 *v.* 做梦

必背短语

12.between...and... 在……和……之间

13.come true 实现；成为现实

14.one 11-year-old boy 一个 11 岁的男孩

必背句子

15. For many students, **it is easy to get** to school.

对许多学生来说，到达学校是很容易的。

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

必背句子

Thanks for your last e-mail.

谢谢你的上一封电子邮件。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2e）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about how to get to places
语言目标：谈论怎样到达目的地

1a Match the words with the pictures. 把词汇与图片配对。

1.take the train/treɪn/ ____a____ 乘火车 ____a____

2.take the bus/bʌs/① _____ 乘公共汽车 _____

3.take the subway/ˈsʌbweɪ/_____ 乘地铁 _____

4.ride/raɪd/ a bike/baɪk/_____ 骑自行车 _____

5.walk _____ 步行 _____

—Hey, Dave/deɪv/. How do you get to③ school? 嘿，戴夫。你是怎么到校的?
—I walk.② How about you,Sally? 我步行。萨莉，你呢?
—I ride my bike. 我骑自行车。

1b Listen and write the numbers next to the correct students in the picture above. 听录音，并在上面的图画中相应的学生旁边写上数字。

课文听力1b

1.Bob 鲍勃　2.Mary 玛丽　3.John 约翰　4.Paul 保罗

5.Yang Lan 杨兰　6.Jim 吉姆

1c Look at the picture in 1a.How do the students get to school? Make conversations with your partner. 看 1a 的图。学生们是怎么到校的? 和你的同伴一起编对话。

A:How does Mary get to school? 玛丽是怎么到校的?

B:She takes the subway. 她乘地铁。

2a Listen and repeat.Then write the correct number next to the word. 听录音并重复。然后在词汇旁边写出正确的数字。

84　105　99　200　72　61

课文听力2a

sixty/ˈsɪksti/-one _____ 六十一 _____

ninety/ˈnaɪnti/-nine _____ 九十九 _____

seventy/ˈsevnti/-two _____ 七十二 _____

one hundred/ˈhʌndrəd/④ and five _____一百零五 _____

eighty/ˈeɪti/-four_____ 八十四_____ two hundred _____ 二百 _____

课文听力2b

2b Listen and complete the chart. 听录音并填表。

	How? 如何?	How long? 多长时间? (minutes/ˈmɪnɪts/)（分钟）	How far/fɑː(r)/? 多远？(kilometers/kɪˈlɒmiːtəz/)（千米）
Tom 汤姆			
Jane 简			

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2c Listen again.Check your answers in 2b. 再听一遍录音。检查 2b 中你的答案。

2d Student A is Jane and Student B is Tom.Use the information in 2b to make conversations.

学生 A 是简，学生 B 是汤姆。用 2b 中的信息编对话。

A:How do you get to school? 你是怎么到校的? B:I... 我……

A:How long does it take...? 要花费多长时间……? B:It takes... 要花费……

A:How far is it from...to...? 从……到……有多远？ B:It's about... 大约……

2e Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2e

Lisa: Hey,Jane.Is this your new/nju:/,/nu:/ bike? 嘿，简。这是你的新自行车吗?

Jane: Yes. I ride it to school every/'evri/ day⑤. How do you get to school?

是的。我每天都骑着它去上学。你是怎么到校的?

Lisa:I usually take the bus. 我通常乘坐公共汽车。

Jane: How far is it from your home to school? 从你家到学校有多远?

Lisa:I'm not sure...⑥ about 10 kilometers?The bus ride takes about 20 minutes. How long does it take⑦ you to get to school?

我不确定……大约 10 公里吧? 乘公共汽车大约花费 20 分钟。到校需要花费你多长时间呢?

Jane: About 15 minutes by/baɪ/ bike. It's good exercise. 骑自行车大约 15 分钟。它是很好的运动。

Lisa: Yeah.Well,have a good day at school. 是的。好吧，祝你在学校过得开心。

Jane: You, too. 你也是。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

"take + the/a + 交通工具"用来表示乘坐某种交通工具，意为"乘……；坐……"，相当于"go to...by + 交通工具"。常见的有：take the/a train 乘火车；take the/a car 乘小汽车；take the/a plane 乘飞机；take the/a subway 乘地铁；take the/a taxi 乘出租车。

★take the bus

不要无中生有，也不要画蛇添足，敲黑板谨记！

① **bus** /bʌs/ *n.* 公共汽车 → 复数形式

e.g. There are lots of buses in the city. 城市里有许多公共汽车。

I will take the train to Kunming. = I will go to Kunming by train.

我将乘火车去昆明。

注意： "by + 交通工具"短语中间不加任何冠词或物主代词，且交通工具也不用复数形式。

【难点 & 易错点】辨析：take the/a bus 与 on the /a bus

take the/a bus	乘坐公共汽车（动作）	He often takes the/a bus to work. 他经常乘坐公共汽车去上班。
on the/a bus	在公共汽车上	They are talking on the bus. 他们正在公共汽车上交谈。

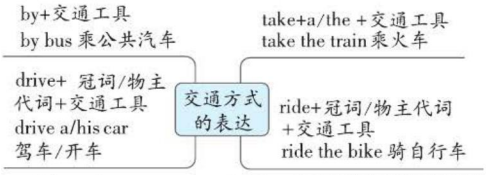
注意：与 train，bus 等用法相同的单词有 subway，car 等，但 car 之前的介词用 in。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**—How do you get to school ?**

—I walk.

② 【句法分析】这是用来询问交通方式的交际用语。How do/does sb. get to...? 意为“某人如何到达……？”其答语中交通方式的表达主要有以下几种：





e.g.—How do you come to the club? 你怎么来俱乐部的?

—By bus./I take the bus. 乘公共汽车。

考题在线 1 —Do you know _____ Ann goes to work every day?

—Usually by underground. 【安徽】

A. why B. how C. when D. whether

③ **get to** 到达

【易错点】辨析：get to，arrive 与 reach

get to	到达	get to Beijing 到达北京
arrive	arrive at 到达（小地方）	arrive at school 到达学校
	arrive in 到达（大地方）	arrive in Beijing 到达北京
reach	抵达（及物动词，后直接加宾语）	reach Beijing 到达北京

★get to, arrive at/in 后接副词 home, here, there 等时，要去掉介词 to 或 at/in。

考题在线 2 I will call you as soon as I <u>arrive in</u> Guilin.（同义替换）

【六盘水】

A. get to B. reach to C. get D. arrive

点拨：用辨析法解题。get to 后跟地点名词；reach 后不跟介词，而是直接加地点名词；arrive 后加介词，再跟地点名词。题干中 arrive in 意为“到达”，其后是地点名词，可用 get to 替换。

★**one hundred and five**

④ **hundred** /ˈhʌndrəd/ *num.* 一百

【难点 & 易错点】辨析：hundred 与 hundreds of

hundred	前面有具体数字时，用“基数词 + hundred”表示“几百”。
hundreds of	“数百”，表示概数，此时不能与数词连用，但可以与 many, several 等连用。

速记小筏：hundred, thousand, million, billion 的用法：前有具体数字无 s 无 of；表示模糊概念有 s 有 of。

e.g. There are eight hundred students in our school.

在我们学校有八百个学生。

Hundreds of people are eating in the restaurant. 数百人正在餐馆吃饭。

拓展：与 hundred 有类似用法的单词还有 thousand, million, billion 等。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 —How many books are there on the shelf?

—Well. I think there are_____books.【导学号：8811889】[湘西]

A. two hundred and forty-six　　B. two hundreds and forty

C. two hundred fourteen

点拨：用语法判定法解题。hundred 前有具体数字修饰时用单数；百位数和十位数之间要用 and 连接。

★I ride it to school every day.

⑤ **every day 每天**

敲黑板 分合有区别，不要弄混。

辨析：every day 与 everyday

every day	副词性短语，在句中作时间状语，常用于一般现在时中。
everyday	作形容词，意为“每天的；每日的”，可作定语修饰名词。

e.g.I study everyday English every day. 我每天学习日常英语。

★ sure 的用法

- be sure of sth. 对某事有把握；确信……
- be sure to do sth. 一定做某事；务必做某事
- be sure+that 从句 确信……

★I'm not sure...

⑥ **交际用语：** I'm not sure. 是表达自己对判断没有十足把握的固定用语。

e.g.—How about John? 约翰呢?

—I think he will go with us, but I'm not sure.

我认为他会跟我们一起去，但我不确定。

★How long does it take you to get to school?

⑦ **take** /teɪk/ *v.* 需要……时间；费时

敲黑板 重点内容，记熟！

e.g.It usually takes him a day to clean the room.

通常打扫房间要花费他一天的时间。

It takes (sb.) some time to do sth. 是固定句型，意为“做某事花费（某人）一些时间”。其中 it 为形式主语，真正的主语是后面的动词不定式“to do sth.”。

考题在线 4 Roy works in London. It _____ him about half an hour to get to work by bus every day. [临沂]

A. costs　　B. spends　　C. takes

点拨：用固定句式法解题。句意：罗伊在伦敦工作。他每天乘公共汽车去上班大约需要半个小时。It takes sb.+ 时间 +to do sth. 是固定句型，意为“做某事花费某人多长时间”。

考题在线答案 1. B　2. A　3. A　4. C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见 297 页）

听力技巧

疑问词关注法（在听听力的过程中会遇到一些特殊疑问词，如问交通方式的 how；问距离的 how far；问时间长度的 how long 等，这时需要我们对应着去听，关注疑问词及相应回答。）

听力过程

课文听力 1b

一、听 1b，完成句子

1. Bob _____ to get to school.
2. Paul and Yang Lan _____ to school.
3. Jim _____ to school.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、听 2a，选择正确答案



4. How can you read 105?

A. Ten to five.

B. Five hundred one.

C. One hundred and five.

三、听 2b，选择正确答案



5. How long does it take Tom to walk home?

A. About 20 minutes.

B. About 30 minutes.

C. About one hour and 30 minutes.

6. How far is it from Jane's home to school?

A. About 6 kilometers.

B. About 16 kilometers.

C. About 60 kilometers.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见297页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. I often ride my b_____ to school, but today I go to school by bus.

2. It takes me 45 m_____ to get to school by bike every morning. [杭州]

3. My grandpa is _____ (八十) years old. He keeps doing exercise every day. [百色]

4. Some of the students take the_____ (地铁) to go to school.

5. Dave lives_____ (远) from the center park.

二、单项选择

6.—Will you join in the discussion tomorrow?

—____ Maybe I'll have a meeting. [天津]

A. Well, I'm not sure. B. That'll be great!

C. Certainly. D. You're welcome.

7. In our school, most students get to school____ bus every day.

A. in B. on C. by D. at

8. —How do you usually_____work?

—I take the subway.

A. get B. get to C. get at D. get in

9. It_____Li Dan ten minutes_____home.

A. take; to walk B. takes; walking

C. takes; to walk D. take; walking

10. There are_____students in our school.[邵阳]

A. hundreds B. hundreds of C. hundred of

三、按要求完成句子

11. We take the bus to school. (改为同义句)

We _____ to school _____ _____.

12. 我爸爸每天骑自行车上班。

My father goes to work _____ _____ every day.

13. I take the bus to go to school.(对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ you go to school?

14. It's about 50 kilometers away from here. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____is it from here?

15. It takes about 30 minutes. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ _____it take?

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus-3c)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

How do you get to school? 你怎么到学校?	I ride my bike. 我骑自行车。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

How does she get to school? 她怎么到学校?	She usually takes the bus. 她通常坐公共汽车。
How long does it take to get to school? 到学校花费多长时间?	It takes about 15 minutes. 大约花费 15 分钟。
How far is it from your home to school? 从你家到学校有多远?	It's only about two kilometers. 大约只有两公里。
Does Jane walk to ② school? 简步行去上学吗?	No, she doesn't. 不，她不是。 She goes by bike. ① 她骑自行车去。
Do they take the bus to school? 他们乘公共汽车去上学吗?	No,they don't.They walk. 不，他们不是。他们步行。

3a Match the questions with the answers.Then practice them. 把问题和答案配对。然后练习它们。

1. How does Mike get to school? 迈克怎么到学校? a.Yes, they do. 是的，他们是。
2. How long does it take to get home? 到家花费多长时间? b.No, he doesn't. 不，他不是。
3. How far is it from here? 它离这儿有多远? c.He rides his bike. 他骑自行车。
4. Do your friends go to school by bus? 你的朋友们乘公共汽车去上学吗? d.It's five kilometers. 五公里。
5. Does your dad drive/draɪv/ his car/kɑ:(r)/ to work? 你的爸爸开他的小汽车去上班吗? e.About 15 minutes. 大约 15 分钟。

3b Use these words to make questions. Then ask and answer them with your partner.

用这些单词编问题。然后和你的同伴进行问答。

1. school / you / get to / do / how 学校 / 你 / 到达 /(助动词)do/ 怎么

_____?

2. to / school / get to / does / how long / take / it

(不定式符号)to/ 学校 / 到达 /(助动词)does/ 多长时间 / 花费 / 它

_____?

3. school/your / from/it / is / how far/home / to 学校 / 你的 / 从 / 它 / 是 / 多远 / 家 / 到

_____?

4. you / to / walk / do / school 你 / 到 / 步行 /(助动词)do/ 学校

_____?

5. ride / their bikes / do / school / your friends / to 骑 / 他们的自行车 /(助动词)do/ 学校 / 你的朋友们 / 到

_____?

3c Ask your classmates questions and write their names in the chart.The first student to fill in all the blanks wins!

询问你的同班同学们问题并把他们的名字写在表格里。第一个填完所有空格的学生获胜!

— How far is it from your home to school? 从你家到学校有多远?
— It's about five kilometers. 大约 5 公里。

Find someone who... 找出某人……	Name 名字
lives/lɪvz/ ③ about five kilometers from school. 住在距离学校大约 5 公里处。	

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

walks to school. 步行去上学。	
takes a bus to school. 坐公共汽车去上学。	
goes to school by bike. 骑自行车去上学。	
needs about an hour to get to school. 大约需要一个小时到校。	
needs about 10 minutes to get to school. 大约需要 10 分钟到校。	

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★**—Does Jane walk to school ?**

—No, she doesn't. She goes by bike.

① 【句法分析】【重点】这是关于交通方式的一般疑问句及其否定回答。

本句主语是第三人称单数，用助动词 does 来构成一般疑问句和否定回答。

当主语不是第三人称单数时，要用助动词 do 来构成一般疑问句和否定回答。

e.g.—Do they take the bus to school? 他们乘公共汽车去上学吗?

—No，they don't. They walk. 不，他们不是。他们步行。

考题在线 1 My aunt usually goes to the supermarket on foot.（改为一般疑问句）

_____ your aunt usually _____ to the supermarket on foot?

② **walk to... 步行去……**

e.g. All the students walk to school every day.

=All the students go to school on foot every day.

所有的学生每天步行去上学。

walk to... 相当于 go to...on foot。

当表示地点的词是名词时，用 walk to...；当表示地点的词是 here，there，home 等副词时，要省略介词 to。

★**...lives about five kilometers from school.**

③ **live** /lɪv/ *v.* **居住；生活**

e.g. Where do you live? 你住在哪里?

My uncle lives in Beijing. 我叔叔住在北京。

live 后加介词再加地点名词，敲黑板 牢记！

拓展：live 用作动词时的其他含义：

生存，活着	We can't live without water. 我们没有水就不能生存。
（以某种方式）生活，过日子	She lives a very peaceful life. 她过着十分宁静的生活。

live 用作不及物动词，后面不能直接跟地点名词，若跟地点名词需要加适当的介词。

e.g.I live ten kilometers from the supermarket. 我家离超市十公里远。

拓展：表示两地距离的不同表达

① It's + 路程 + from + 地点 A+ to+ 地点 B.

e.g. It's ten kilometers from my home to the park. 我家离公园十公里远。

②地点 A + is + 路程 + from + 地点 B.

e.g. My home is five kilometers from school. 我家离学校五公里远。

表示居住地与某地之间的距离：Sb. live(s) +路程+ from +地点.

考题在线答案 Does;go

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

how 引导的特殊疑问句

考点 1 how 引导的特殊疑问句，how“怎样，如何”，用来询问交通方式、身体状况、对某事的看法及天气等。

e.g. How do you go home every day?
你每天怎么回家?
—How is your favourite actor?
你最喜欢的演员怎么样?
—He is fine. 他很好。
I think the music is great. How do you like it? 我觉得这个音乐很棒。你觉得它怎么样?
It's rainy here. How's it in your city?
这儿是雨天。你所在的城市天气怎么样?

考题在线 1 —Hey, Jane. _____are you feeling now?
—Much better. Thanks. [黄石]
A. What B. Where
C. How D. When

点拨：用题眼法解题。由答语中的“Much better.”可知，问句用 how 提问。

考题在线 2 —_____do you usually go to school, Mary?
—By bike. [北京]
A. When B. How C. Where D. Why

点拨：用题眼法解题。由答语“By bike.”可知，问句问玛丽去上学的方式。

考点 2 与 how 有关的疑问短语

考向 1：how long 用来提问时间长短，意为“多长时间”，或询问物体的长度。

e.g. How long does it take you to finish your homework? 完成家庭作业花费你多长时间?
How long is the river? 这条河多长?

考题在线 3 —_____ has the girl waited for the bus over there?
—For half an hour. [渝北]
A. How often B. How many
C. How long D. How soon

点拨：how often 多久一次；how many 多少；how long 多长时间；how soon 多久。由答语“半个小时”可知，问句询问“多长时间”。

考向 2：how far 用来提问距离，意为“多远”。其答语分为两种情况：
（1）用长度单位表示

e.g.—How far is it from your home to the bus stop? 从你家到公共汽车停靠站有多远?
—It's two kilometers. 两公里远。
（2）用时间表示

e.g.—How far is the park from the supermarket?
从超市到公园有多远?
—It's 5 minutes' walk. 步行 5 分钟的路程。

考题在线 4 —_____is it from Lanzhou to Lhasa?
—It's about 2,160 kilometers. [兰州]
A. How often B. How far
C. How long D. How many

点拨：用词义辨析法解题。how often 多久一次（对频率提问）；how far 多远（对距离提问）；how long 多长时间（对一段时间提问）；how many 多少（对可数名词的复数提问）。由答语“它大概是 2 160 公里”可知，问句问的是距离。

考题在线 5 —_____is it from your home to your school, Anna?
—It's quite near, only five minutes' walk. [重庆]
A. How many B. How far
C. How long D. How soon

考向 3：how often 意为“多久一次”，询问做某事的频率。

e.g. How often does Lucy visit her aunt?
露西多久看望一次她姑妈?

考题在线 6 —_____do you eat out, Molly?
—Once a month. [吉林]
A. How often B. How far C. How long

考向 4：how soon 意为“多久”，常用于一般将来时。

e.g.—How soon will she be back? 她多久能回来?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—She will be back in 3 months.

3 个月以后她将会回来。

考题在线 7 —Daddy,_____ will you buy me a bendable phone (折叠手机)?

— Oh, perhaps in a few months. [铁岭]

A. how long B. how far

C. how soon D. how often

考向 5 ：how about... 意为“……怎么样”，相当于“what about...”。

e.g. How about going to the beaches for a vacation?

去海滩度假怎么样?

考题在线 8 —Li Lin, _____ playing football this Sunday?

—That sounds like a good idea.

A. why not B. how about

C. what D. where

考题在线答案 1. C 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. B 6. A 7. C 8. B

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见 297 页)

一、单项选择

1. —_____is it from Suqian to Jiuzhai Valley?

—About 1, 200 kilometers away.But I'm not sure. [宿迁]

A. How often B. How soon

C. How long D. How far

2. —How long does it _____ to get to the station by taxi?

—About an hour. [济南]

A. use B. have C. take D. spend

3. Mount Xiaolei is not far away from here, but it will still take us a few hours _____ there by bike. [黄石]

A. getting B. to get C. got D. get

4. More than two _____ trees are planted (种植) in our neighborhood every year. [淮安改编]

A. hundred B. hundreds

C. hundreds of D. hundred of

5. I live near the station. It's only about five _____walk. [临沂]

A. minute's B. minute

C. minutes' D. minutes

二、按要求完成句子

6. Mary usually goes to school by bike.(改为同义句)

Mary usually_____ _____ _____ to school.

7. My father goes to work by subway every day. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____your father _____ to work every day?

8. Jack goes to work by car. (改为一般疑问句并作出否定回答)

—_____ Jack _____ to work by car?

—_____, he _____.

9. It's about five kilometers from my home to school. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ _____ _____from your home to school?

10. It takes me about ten minutes to go to school by bike. (对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ does it take you to go to school by bike?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Match the words with the pictures. 把单词与图片搭配起来。

1.____b____ bus stop/stɒp/,/stɑːp/① ____b____公共汽车停靠站

2._____ train station _____火车站

3._____ bus station _____公共汽车站

4._____ subway station _____地铁站

1b Tell your partner how you get to school. Imagine you use two types of transportation.

告诉你的同伴你怎样到达学校。想象你使用两种交通工具。

A:How do you get to school? 你怎样到达学校?

B:Well, I ride my bike to the subway station.Then I take the subway.

哦，我骑自行车去地铁站。然后乘坐地铁。

1c Listen and check(√)the things that Mary wants to know. 听录音并在玛丽想知道的事情前画√。

Mary wants to know... 玛丽想知道……

课文听力1c

_____where Bob lives.② 鲍勃住在哪里。

_____how far he lives from his grandparents' home. 他住得离他的祖父母的家有多远。

_____how he gets to his grandparents' home. 他怎么到他祖父母家。

_____how long it takes to get to his grandparents' home. 到他祖父母家要花费多长时间。

_____what he thinks of③ the trip. 他认为这次旅行怎么样。

1d Listen again.How does Bob get to his grandparents' home?Check(√)1 or 2.

再听一遍录音。鲍勃是怎么到达他祖父母家的? 在 1 或 2 前画√。

1e Talk about how Bob gets to his grandparents' home. 谈论鲍勃是如何到他祖父母家的。

—How does Bob get to his grandparents' home? 鲍勃是怎么到他祖父母家的?

—He... 他……

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见298页）

听力过程

听 1c，选择正确答案

课文听力1c

1. Where does Bob live?

A. Near his grandparents' home.

B. Far from his grandparents' home.

C. In his grandparents' home.

2. How far does Bob live from his grandparents' home?

A. About 50 kilometers.

B. About 200 kilometers.

C. About 500 kilometers.

3. How does Bob get to his grandparents' home?

A. By bike. B. By ship.

C. By train and by bus.

4. How long does it take Bob to get to his grandparents' home?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. About six hours.
B. About seven hours.
C. About five hours.

5. What does Mary think of the trip?
A. It's boring. B. It's long.
C. It's happy.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

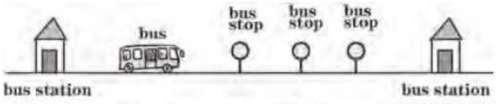
★bus stop

① **stop**/stɒp/ *n.* 车站；停止

辨析：stop 与 station

stop	"车站"，一般指公共汽车在路上停留、乘客上下车的小站点。
station	"车站"，规模较大的车站，一般指始发站和终点站。

图解助记：



e.g.The stop of the bus wastes his time. 停车浪费了他的时间。

The car comes to a stop. 汽车停了下来。 n. 停止

Let's stop to have a rest. 咱们停下来（原来干的事），（再去）休息一下吧。

Stop talking, please. 请停止（正在）说话（这个事）。 v. 停止

His mother stops him from watching TV. 他妈妈阻止他看电视。

考题在线 —I think you should stop _____ him in English.

—I see.He can't understand English at all. Let me try in French.[襄阳]

A. talking to B. to talk to
C. talk to D. to talking to

★stop 用作动词，常用短语：
- stop to do sth."停下来去做某事"
- stop doing sth."停止做某事"
- stop sb.（from）doing sth."阻止某人做某事"

★Mary wants to know where Bob lives.

②句中 **where Bob lives** 是宾语从句。在含有宾语从句的主从复合句中，宾语从句要用陈述语序。

e.g. He doesn't know what Wang Junkai's favourite music is.
他不知道王俊凯最喜欢的音乐是什么。

★...what he thinks of the trip.

③ **think of** 认为；想起

e.g.What do you think of geography? =How do you like geography?
你认为地理怎么样?

考题在线答案 A

What do you think of...？相当于"How do you like...？"，用来询问对某事、某物或某人的看法。

★think 的其他短语：
- think about 思考，考虑
- think over 仔细考虑

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见298页)

根据汉语意思，完成相应的英语句子

1. 我们正在公共汽车站等你。

We are waiting for you at the _____ _____.

2. 今天乘地铁怎么样?

How about _____ _____ _____today?

3. 我们怎么到鸟巢?

_____ do we _____ _____ Bird's Nest?

4. 你认为这部新电影怎么样?

What do you _____ _____ the new movie?

5. 我想知道他住得离公园多远。

I want to know _____ _____ _____ _____ from the park.

Period 4 Section B（2a–2d）

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

2a Look at the picture below.Guess what the story is about. 看下面的图片。猜猜这个故事是关于什么的。

2b Read the news story from some years ago and choose the best title for it.

课文朗读 2b

阅读几年前的新闻故事并为它选一个最好的标题。

A. How to Get to School 怎么去上学

B. Crossing ① the River to School 过河去上学

C. Going to School Is Fun 上学很有趣

STUDENT LIFE 2010-04-20

学生生活 2010年4月20日

How do you get to school? Do you walk or ride a bike?Do you go by bus or by train? For many/ˈmeni/ ③ students,it is easy to get to school. ② But for the students in one small village /ˈvɪlɪdʒ/ in China,it is difficult.There is a very big river between/bɪˈtwi:n/ ⑤ their school and the village. ④ There is no bridge/brɪdʒ/ and the river runs too quickly for boats /bəʊts/.So these students go on a ropeway/ˈrəʊpˌweɪ/ to cross the river to school.

你怎么到学校？你是步行还是骑自行车？你是乘公共汽车还是乘火车？对许多学生来说，到达学校是很容易的。但对于中国的一个小乡村的学生们来说却很难。在他们的学校和村子之间有条非常大的河。（河上）没有桥，而且河水湍急，不宜小船摆渡。因此这些学生乘索道过河去上学。

One 11-year/jɪə/,/jɪr/-old ⑥ boy, Liangliang,crosses the river every school day. But he is not afraid /əˈfreɪd/ ⑦ because he loves school."I love to play with my classmates.And I love my teacher.He's like/laɪk/ ⑧ a father to me."

一个11岁的男孩，亮亮，每个上学日过河（上学）。但是他并不害怕因为他爱学校。"我喜欢和我的同学们一起玩。并且我爱我的老师。对我来说，他就像一个父亲。"

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Many of the students and villagers/ˈvɪlɪdʒə(r)z/ never leave/li:v/ ⑨ the village. It is their dream /dri:m/ ⑩ to have a bridge.Can their dream come true/tru:/ ⑪?

许多学生和村民都从未离开过村子。拥有一座桥是他们的梦想。他们的梦想能实现吗?

2c Read the story again and complete the interview. 再次阅读这个故事并完成下面的采访。

Reporter: How do you_____to school, Liangliang? 你怎么_____学校，亮亮?

Liangliang: I go on a ropeway to_____the river to school. 我乘索道_____河去上学。

Reporter: Are you_____? 你_____吗?

Liangliang: No, I'm not. Because I _____my school and my teachers. I like to _____with my classmates at school. 不。因为我_____我的学校和老师。在学校我喜欢和同学们一起_____。

Reporter: Is it_____for you to go to school? 对你来说，去学校_____吗?

Liangliang: Yes, it is. 是的。

Reporter: Do you want to have a _____? 你想要拥有一座_____吗?

Liangliang: Yes. It's our dream. 是的。这是我们的梦想。

Reporter: I'm sure your dream can come_____. 我相信你们的梦想会_____。

2d Now there is a bridge across the river and the children do not have to go on the ropeway to get to school anymore. Imagine you are a reporter and want to interview a student in the school. Make up a conversation. 现在河上有一座桥，孩子们不用再乘索道去上学了。想象你是一名记者，想要采访学校的一名学生。编一段对话。

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

(答案见298页)

阅读策略

开门见山法(文章用疑问句 How do you get to school? 开头，非常醒目，开门见山地指出文章主题，它是全文中心句，与标题呼应，起到统领全篇的作用。)

阅读过程

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

⊙**1.** What's the passage mainly about? (主旨大意题)

A. Students live in different places.

B. Students get to school easily.

C. Students cross the river to school.

D. The villagers have a dream.

拓展阅读

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. For the students in one small village in China, it is _____ to get to school. (细节理解题)

A. easy　　B. difficult

C. interesting　　D. boring

3. How does Liangliang get to school every day? (细节理解题)

A. He takes the bus.

B. He rides his bike.

C. He walks there.

D. He goes on a ropeway.

4. Liangliang loves his teacher because_____. (推理判断题)

A. the teacher comes from a city

B. the teacher looks young

C. the teacher is kind to him

D. the teacher is his father

5. Why do many of the students and villagers never leave the village? (推理判断题)

A. Because they don't want to leave.

B. Because there isn't a bridge.

C. Because they are very lazy.

D. Because they don't need to leave.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

·考点批注 ·考点应用

★Crossing the River to School

① **cross** /krɔs/, /krɔːs / *v.* 横过；越过

辨析: cross，across 和 crossing

cross	动词，意为“横过；越过（横穿）”。	cross=go across
across	介词或副词，意为“横过”。	
crossing	名词，意为“十字路口”。	

cross 还可用作名词，意为“十字形；叉形记号”。

e.g. Please be careful when you cross the road. 当你过马路时请小心。

Go across/Cross the street and you can find it.

穿过这条街道你就能找到它。

Turn left at the second crossing. 在第二个十字路口向左拐。

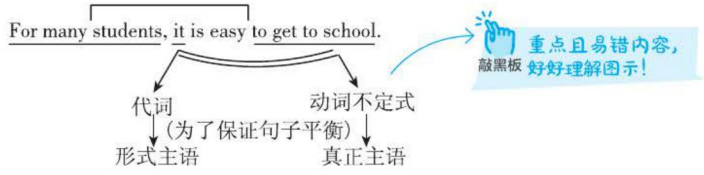
★For many students, it is easy to get to school.

②【句法分析】【重点】

本句是“It is + *adj.* + (of/for sb.) + to do sth.”结构，意为“(某人/对某人来说)做某事是……的”。其中 it 为形式主语，后面的动词不定式短语 to do sth. 是句子真正的主语。英语中，当动词不定式短语或动名词作主语时，谓语动词通常用单三形式。且动词不定式作主语时，常用 it 作形式主语，将动词不定式放在后面。本句为了强调，把 for many students 放到了句首。正常的语序应是“It is easy for many students to get to school.”。



爱学习的孩子，美呀！



e.g. It is difficult to get there. =To get there is difficult. 到达那儿是困难的。

考题在线 1 It isn't easy for us _____ English well.

[渝北]

A. learn　　B. learns

C. learning　　D. to learn

知识微课

拓展: 辨析: It is + *adj.* + for/of sb. + to do sth. 句型中的 for 和 of

① It is + *adj.* + for sb. + to do sth. 中的 for 后跟对象，意为“就……而言；对……来说”，句中的形容词是描述事物特征的。

- It's+形容词(描述事物特征，如easy, difficult, important等)+for sb.+ to do sth.“对某人来说，做某事是……的”

e.g. It is difficult for me to speak French. 对我来说，说法语是困难的。

② It is + *adj.* + of sb. + to do sth. 中的形容词是表示人的特点、性格或特征的。

- It's+形容词(表示人物性格、品质，如kind, nice, clever等)+of sb.+ to do sth.“做某事某人是……的”

e.g. It is nice of you to help me. 你真好可以帮助我。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 It is great _____ us to get so many favourite books on International Children's Book Day. [连云港]

A. to B. with C. of D. for

点拨：用语法判定法解题。在"It is + *adj.* + of / for sb. + to do sth."句型结构中，当表语形容词是说明不定式逻辑主语的品质特征时，介词用of；当表语形容词是说明不定式的性质、特点时，用for。句中great表明事情"很棒"，故介词用for。

③ **many**/'meni/ *adj.* & *pron.* 许多

敲黑板 认真记才能正确使用，加油！

辨析：many，much与lots of

many修饰可数名词复数	There are many flowers in the park. 公园里有许多花。
much修饰不可数名词	There is much pollution in Shijiazhuang. 石家庄污染很严重。
lots of=a lot of既可修饰可数名词复数，又可修饰不可数名词	You can see lots of trees/water over there. 在那边你能看到许多树 / 水。

速记小筏：many / lots of → trees 许多树；much → water 许多水

There is a very big river between their school and the village.

④ 【高频】【句法分析】

本句是there be句型，结构为"There be+某人 / 某物 + 某地 / 某时 ."，意为"某地或某时有某人或某物"。

敲黑板 重难点内容，要理解记忆！

e.g. There are four men and a woman using WeChat. 有四位男士和一位女士正在使用微信。

there be句型遵循"就近原则"，即be动词取决于离它最近的名词的单复数。

辨析：there be与have/has（见Unit 8 Period 1考点3）

e.g. There are five pencils in the pencilbox. 铅笔盒中有五支铅笔。

My grandfather has a pet dog. 我爷爷有只宠物狗。

考题在线 3 Look! There _____ a photo of our English teacher in today's newspaper! [南京]

A. is B. are C. have D. has

点拨：用语法判定法及主谓一致法解题。there be句型意为"有……"，不能和have/has同时出现在一个句子中；句中主语a photo是单数，所以be动词应用is。

方法真题练

⑤ 【高频】**between** /bɪ'twi:n/ *prep.* 介于……之间

e.g. He sits between Tom and Jack. 他坐在汤姆和杰克之间。

【易错点】辨析：between与among

between	一般用于两者之间，其宾语往往是表示两者的名词或代词，或是由and连接的两个人或事物。
among	表示三者或三者以上的人或物之间，宾语可以是复数名词或代词，也可以是集合名词。

between...and... 意为"在……和……之间"，连接两个并列的成分。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料


(between) (among)

e.g.The village lies between two mountains. 这个村庄位于两座山之间。

The village lies among the mountains. 这个村庄位于群山之中。

考题在线 4 The high-speed train _____Qingdao and Beijing travels faster now. The train ride takes only about three hours. 【青岛】

A. from B. among C. in D. between

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。句意：现在青岛与北京之间的高铁行驶速度更快了。火车行程仅花费大约三个小时。between …and... 意为“位于……和……之间”是固定搭配。

★**One 11 -year -old boy, Liangliang, crosses the river every school day.**

⑥ 【高频】**11-year-old** 11 岁大的，是由“基数词＋单数名词＋形容词”构成的复合形容词，常用来作定语。三个词之间用连字符连接，中间的名词必须用单数。

熟背结构，正确做题！敲黑板

e.g.It's a 300-meter-long bridge.

它是一座长 300 米的桥。

★此类复合形容词的结构中的形容词还可以是 long 长 / wide 宽 / high 高 / tall 高 / deep 深 / thick 厚……

【易错点】辨析：11-year-old 与 11 years old

11-year-old	三个词之间要用连字符连接，且中间的名词用单数，在句中作定语。
11 years old	三个词之间不用连字符连接，中间的名词用复数，在句中作表语。

e.g.He is an 11-year-old boy. 他是一个 11 岁大的男孩。

She is 11 years old. 她 11 岁。

a three-meter-long snake 一条 3 米长的蛇

考题在线 5 —Yan Jiashuo, a_____ girl, has won the prize of International Master of Memory.

—Wow, she's great, isn't she? [连云港]

A. ten-year-old B. ten-years-old

C. ten year old D.ten years old

★**But he is not afraid because he loves school.**

⑦ **afraid** /əˈfreɪd/ *adj.* 害怕；畏惧

作表语，放在 be 动词后。

e.g. Why are you so afraid? 你为什么这么害怕？

辨析：be afraid to do sth. 与 be afraid of (doing) sth.



be afraid to do sth.	表示“害怕做某事”，即主语对做某事感到恐惧。	He was afraid to go out alone at night. 他害怕晚上独自外出。
be afraid of (doing) sth.	表示主语内心不情愿做某事，即不希望发生某事，但自己不一定能避免。	She was afraid of waking her husband up. 她怕吵醒她丈夫。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★He's like a father to me.

⑧ **like** /laɪk/ *prep.* 像；怎么样

e.g. The girl is like her sister. They're both outgoing.
这个女孩像她姐姐。她们都很外向。

The cloud looks like a horse. 这朵云看上去像一匹马。

★相关句型
- What's sb. like? 某人怎么样？
- What does sb. look like? 某人长得怎么样？

★Many of the students and villagers never leave the village.

⑨ **leave** /liːv/ *v.* 离开；留下

e.g. He leaves home early every day. 每天他早早地离开家。

I left my schoolbag at home. 我把我的书包落在家了。

Hurry up! There's little time left. 快点！几乎没有时间了。

★ leave 的意思
- 离开
- 忘了带，丢下
- 剩下

辨析：leave、leave for与leave…for…

leave	后跟的地点为“出发地”	He left Beijing yesterday. 昨天他离开了北京。
leave for	后跟的地点为“目的地”	He will leave for Shanghai tomorrow. 明天他将动身去上海。
leave A for B	A为“出发地” B为“目的地”	He left Beijing for Shanghai. 他离开了北京去上海。

★It is their dream to have a bridge.

⑩ **dream** /driːm/ *n.* 梦想；睡梦 *v.* 做梦

用作可数名词，意为“梦想；睡梦”	He has dreams every night. 他每天晚上都做梦。 His dream is to be a singer. 他的梦想是成为一名歌手。
用作动词，意为“做梦”	She often dreams at night. 她晚上经常做梦。



v. 做梦 ← dream → n. 梦想

拓展：dream of “梦想，梦见”，后接动词时，要用动词的-ing形式，或者后面直接接名词。

e.g. Many people dream of becoming famous. 很多人梦想成名。

★Can their dream come true?

⑪ **come true 实现**

China Dream can come true! 中国梦能够实现！

不及物动词短语，主语是物。

考题在线6 他的梦想将会实现。（翻译句子） [内江]

考题在线答案 1. D 2. D 3. A 4. D 5. A 6. His dream will come true.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见298页)

一、根据句意及首字母提示完成句子

1. Everyone hopes that his or her d_____ will come true.
2. Be careful to look at both sides of the road before you c_____ the road.
3. There is a library b_____ the shop and the bank.
4. They will build a bridge over the r_____.
5. I'm a_____ of snakes because I think they are dangerous. [杭州]

二、用所给单词的适当形式填空

6. It's easy for him_____ (read) the story written in English.
7. You can see many bus _____ (stop) along the street.
8. My little brother is five _____ (year) old.
9. Let's go and ask the _____ (village) the way to the farm.
10. Look! There are two _____ (boat) and a car in the picture.

三、单项选择

11. — What's in the picture on the wall?
—There _____ a teacher and some students playing soccer on the playground. [2019四川凉山]
A. has B. are C. is D. have

12. It is important _____ people _____ learn team spirit (团队精神). [雅安]
A. of; of B. of; to
C. for; to D. to; to

13. —_____ the girl _____ her mother?
—Yes, they are both friendly to others.
A. Does; like B. Is; like
C. Does; look like D. Is; look like

14. When do you leave_____ school?
A. to B. in
C. for D. at

15. A _____ woman was saved from the ship on June 2nd, 2015. [黔西南]
A. 65 year old B. 65-year olds
C. 65-year-old D. 65-years-old

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

3a Read the e-mail from your pen pal Tom in the US.Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 读来自美国的你的笔友汤姆的电子邮件。用方框中的词填空。

kilometers 千米	get to 到达	takes 花费	walk 步行	boring 无聊的	leave 离开

Hi there, 嗨，你好：

How are you? Thanks for your last e-mail. You want to know how I _____ school, right? Well, I usually _____ my home at about 8:00 and _____ to the bus stop. The school bus usually comes at about 8:15.My school is about 20_____ from my home.It _____ about 40 minutes to get there by bus. The bus ride is never _____ because I always talk to my classmates.

你好吗？谢谢你的上一封电子邮件。你想知道我是怎么_____学校的，是吗？嗯，我通常在大约八点_____家，_____公共汽车停靠站。校车通常在大约 8:15 到达。我的学校离我家约有 20_____远。坐公共

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

汽车到那里大约要_____40 分钟。公共汽车之旅从不_____因为我总是和我的同班同学们聊天。

What about you?How do you get to school? 你呢? 你怎么到学校?

Tom 汤姆

3b Write an e-mail to Tom and tell him how you get to school.These questions may help you.

给汤姆写一封邮件并告诉他你怎么到校的。这些问题可能会帮到你。

1.When do you leave home? 你什么时候离开家?

2.How do you get to school? 你怎么到学校?

3.How far is it from your home to school? 你家离学校有多远?

4.How long does it take you to get to school? 到学校要花费你多长时间?

5.Do you like your trip to school? 你喜欢你的到学校之旅吗?

Self Check 自我检测

1 Use the words in the boxes to form as many expressions as possible.

用方框中的单词构成尽可能多的短语。

take 乘坐 , walk 步行 , ride 骑 , drive 驾驶　　by 乘坐

bus 公共汽车 , train 火车 , car 小汽车 , bike 自行车 , plane 飞机 , subway 地铁 , boat 小船

take a bus, by bus,

乘公共汽车，乘公共汽车，

2 Look at the chart below. Write at least five questions.Then answer the questions with the information in the chart. 看下面的表格。至少写五个问题。然后用表中的信息回答问题。

Who 谁	Where 哪里	How 如何	How far 多远	How long 多长时间
Tony 托尼	from home to school 从家到学校	by bike 骑自行车	5 km 5 公里	20 minutes 20 分钟
Mary 玛丽	from home to the library 从家到图书馆	by bus 乘公共汽车	15 km 15 公里	40 minutes 40 分钟

How does Tony get to school? He gets to school by bike. 托尼怎么到学校? 他骑自行车到学校。

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

单元话题

韩诚是你的朋友，他在一所中学上学。他家离学校约 2 公里，他通常骑自行车上学，大约用时 15 分钟。下雨的时候他爸爸开车送他。他的父母在离家 10 公里的一家工厂上班，他们每天开小汽车上班，大约需要 20 分钟。他觉得骑自行车……

请根据提示写一篇不少于 80 词的短文。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1.注意写作时应用一般现在时，且要包括所有信息。

2.表达交通方式、距离、花费时间的句型要应用得恰当、合理。如:"by+ 交通工具名词单数"或"It takes+sb.+ 时间 +to do sth."。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"三步法"写如何到达目的地

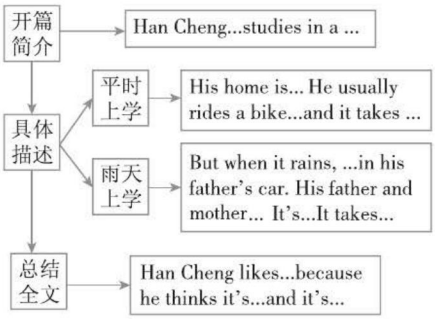
第一步：点明目的地；

第二步：详细介绍交通方式；

第三步：谈感受。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	home, kilometer, factory, car, minute
短语	ride a bike, in one's car, take the bus, by taxi/car...
句子	① It takes sb. +时间+ to do sth. ② It's +距离+ from ...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Han Cheng is my friend. He studies in a middle school. His home is about two kilometers from his school. He usually rides a bike to school and it takes him about fifteen minutes to get to school. ① But when it rains, he goes to school in his father's car. ② His father and mother both work in a factory. It's ten kilometers from their home. They drive a car to work every day. It takes them about twenty minutes to get there.

Han Cheng likes going to school by bike because he thinks it's good exercise and it's good for the environment. ③

名师点评：本文运用"三步法"写如何到达目的地。

1. 点明目的地–school, factory;

2. 交通方式–rides a bike, in his father's car, drive a car;

3. 表明韩诚对于自己到校方式的看法–good exercise, good for the environment。

添彩点：①灵活运用句型"It takes sb. + 时间 +to do sth."来介绍到目的地所花费的时间；②when 引导的时间状语从句的使用丰富了表达方式；③用 because 引导的原因状语从句表明自己喜欢骑自行车去上学的原因，增强了短文的感染力。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞（答案见298页）

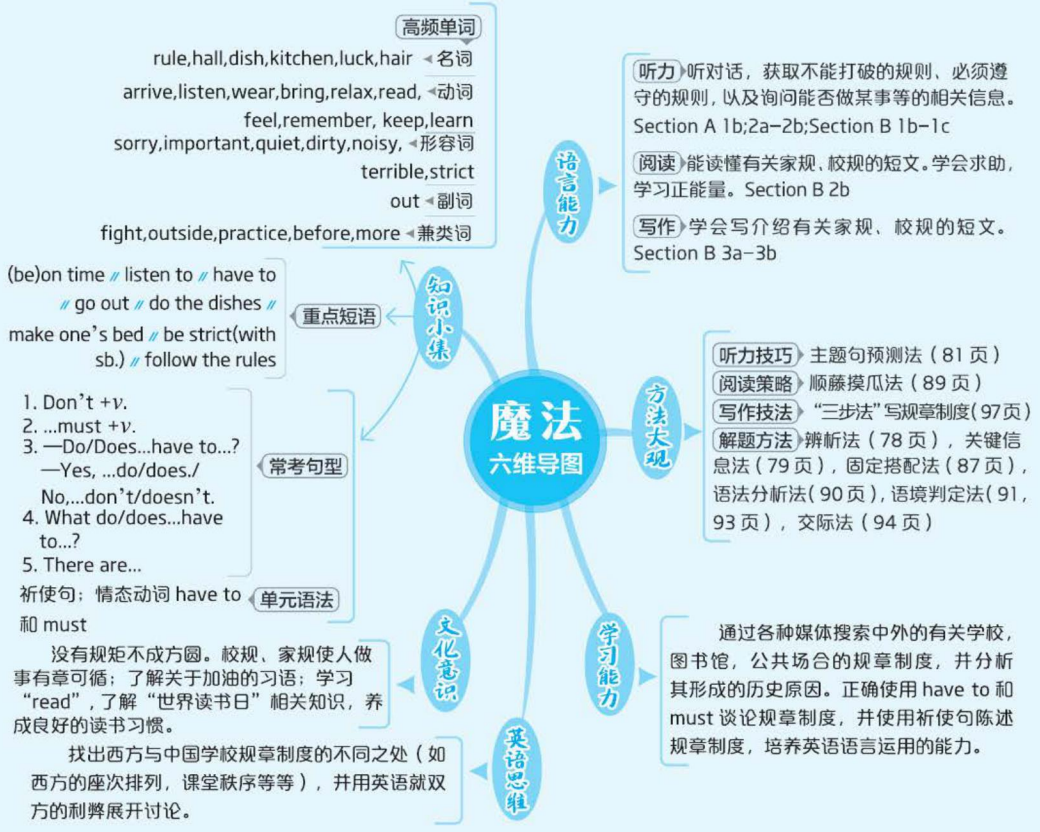
单元知识浓缩

How do students around the world get to school? In North America, most students go to school on _____[1]（校车）, and some also _____[2]（步行）or _____[3]（骑自行车）to school. In Japan, most students _____[4]（乘地铁）to school. In China, it depends on where you are. For example, Lin Fei is my friend, and his home is about 10 _____[5]（公里）from the school. He _____[6]（离开去）school at 6:00 a.m. First, he rides a bike to the No. 30 _____[7]（公共汽车停靠站）. It _____[8]（花费）him about 20 minutes to get there. Then the early bus _____[9]（带）him to school. Wang Fang _____[10]（住）in a village. It's far from her school and there are no buses. So her father _____[11]（开车）her to school in the morning _____[12]（每天）. In some places where there are _____[13]（河流）, students often take the _____[14]（小船）and some students even_____[15]（乘坐索道）to school. How amazing it is!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 Don't eat in class.

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1.rule *n.* 规则；规章→ follow the rules 遵守规则

2.arrive *v.* 到达→ arrive in/at... 到达……

3.fight *v.& n.* 打架；战斗→ fight against sb. 和某人打斗→ fight with sb. 和某人一起战斗 → fight for... 为……而战

4.important *adj.* 重要的→ importance *n.* 重要性 → an important job 一个重要的工作

5.quiet *adj.* 安静的→ noisy（反义词）吵闹的→ quietly *adv.* 安静地

6.wear *v.* 穿；戴 → wear glasses 戴眼镜

7.sorry *adj.* 抱歉的；难过的；惋惜的

8.outside *adv.* 在外面 *adj.* 外面的 → inside(反义词) 在里面；里面的

9. bring *v.* 带来；取来→ take（反义词）带走

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

10. hall *n.* 大厅；礼堂→ dining hall 餐厅

11. listen *v.* 听；倾听→ listen to... 听……

必背短语

12.（be） on time 准时

13.have to 必须；不得不

必背句子

14.Don't arrive late for class. 上课不要迟到。

15. You **must be on time.** 你一定要准时。

16. And we always **have to** wear the school uniform. 并且我们必须总是穿校服。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

必背句子 & 语法

1.—Does he have to wear a uniform at school?

他在学校必须穿校服吗?

—Yes, he **does./No, he doesn't.**

是的，他必须穿。/ 不，他不必穿。

2.—Can we wear a hat in class ?

我们可以在课堂上戴帽子吗?

—Yes, we can./No, we can't.

是的，我们可以。/ 不，我们不可以。

3.Don't run in the hallways.

不要在走廊里跑。

Period 3 Section B (1a–1d)

必背单词

1.practice *v.& n.* 练习→ practise *v.* 练习

→ practice doing sth. 练习做某事

2.dish *n.* 碟；盘→ dishes（复数）→ plate（近义词）

3. before *prep.& conj.* 在……以前 *adv.* 以前

→ after（反义词）在……后；以后

4.out *adv.* 外出

必背短语

5.go out 外出（娱乐）

6. do the dishes 清洗餐具

7. before dinner 晚饭前

必背句子

8. Can Dave **go** out on school nights?

戴夫在上学日的晚上能外出吗?

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

必背单词

1.more *adj.& pron.* 更多（的）→ many, much（原级）

2.noisy *adj.* 吵闹的→ noise *n.* 噪音

3.relax *v.* 放松；休息 → rest（同义词）→ relaxing *adj.* 令人放松的→ relaxed *adj.* 感到放松的

4.read *v.* 读；阅读 → read books 读书；看书

5.remember *v.* 记住；记起 → forget（反义词）忘记 → remember to do sth. 记得去做某事 → remember doing sth. 记得做过某事

6.luck *n.* 幸运；运气→ lucky *adj.* 幸运的→ luckily *adv.* 幸运地

7.terrible *adj.* 非常讨厌的；可怕的

8.feel *v.* 感受；觉得→ feel like 有……的感觉；想要……

9.strict *adj.* 严格的；严厉的

10.dirty *adj.* 脏的→ clean（反义词）干净的

11.kitchen *n.* 厨房

12.follow *v.* 遵循；跟随

必背短语

13.make one's bed 铺床

14.be strict（with sb.）（对某人）要求严格

15.follow the rules 遵守规则

必背句子

16.Don't leave the dirty dishes in the kitchen!

不要把脏餐具留在厨房里!

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

必背单词

1. keep *v.* 保持；保留

→ keep one's hair short 留短发

2.hair *n.* 头发；毛发

3.learn *v.* 学习；学会→ learn to do sth. 学习做某事→ learn from sb. 向某人学习→ study（近义词）

必背句子

4.I can't relax on weekends **either because** I have to learn to play the piano.

周末我也不能放松因为我不得不去学习弹钢琴。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about rules/ruːlz/

语言目标：谈论规章制度

1a Which rules are these students breaking?Write the number of the rule next to the student.

这些学生违反了哪些规章制度？将规章制度的编号写在（图中相应的违规）学生旁边。

SCHOOL RULES ①学校规章

1.Don't arrive/əˈraɪv/ ③ late for class. ② You must ④ be on time ⑤. 上课不要迟到。你一定要准时。

2.Don't run in the hallways/ˈhɔːlweɪz/. 不要在走廊里跑。

3.Don't eat in the classroom.You must eat in the dining/ˈdaɪnɪŋ/ hall/hɔːl/.

不要在教室里吃东西。你必须在餐厅里吃。

4.Don't listen/ˈlɪsn/ to ⑥ music in class ⑦. 不要在课堂上听音乐。

5.Don't fight/faɪt/ ⑧. 不要打架。

—Don't run in the hallways. 不要在走廊里跑。

—Sorry/ˈsɒri/,/ˈsɑːri/ ⑩, Ms. Clark/klɑː(r)k/. ⑨对不起，克拉克老师。

1b Listen.What rules are these students breaking? Write the numbers after the names.

听录音。这些学生违反了什么规章制度？将编号写在名字后面。

课文听力 1b

Peter 彼得 _____	Amy/ˈeɪmi/ 埃米_____	Mike 迈克_____

1c Student A is a new student.Student B tells Student A about the rules above.

学生 A 是一名新生。学生 B 把上面的规章制度告诉学生 A。

A:What are the rules? 规章制度是什么？

B:Well, we can't arrive late for class.We must be on time.

噢，我们上课不能迟到。我们必须准时。

2a Listen. Check (√) the activities Alan and Cindy talk about.

听录音。在艾伦和辛迪谈论的活动前画√。

课文听力 2a

Activity 活动		
1. __√__listen to music in the classroom or hallways __√__在教室里或走廊里听音乐	can 能	can't 不能
2. _____listen to music in the music room _____在音乐室里听音乐	can 能	can't 不能
3. _____listen to music outside/ˌaʊtˈsaɪd/ ⑪ _____在外面听音乐	can 能	can't 不能
4. _____eat in the classroom _____在教室里吃东西	can 能	can't 不能
5. _____eat in the dining hall _____在餐厅里吃东西	can 能	can't 不能
6._____eat outside_____在外面吃东西	can 能	can't 不能
7._____wear/weə/,/wer/ ⑫ a hat_____戴帽子	can 能	can't 不能
8._____fight _____打架	can 能	can't 不能

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2b **Listen again. Can Alan and Cindy do these activities? Circle *can* or *can't* above.**

再听一遍录音。艾伦和辛迪可以做这些活动吗？在上面的表格中圈出 can 或 can't。

2c **Student A is Alan and Student B is Cindy.Talk about the rules in 2a.**

学生 A 是艾伦且学生 B 是辛迪。谈论一下 2a 中的规则。

—Can we listen to music, Cindy? 辛迪，我们能听音乐吗？

—We can't listen to music in the hallways, but we can listen to it outside.
我们不能在走廊里听音乐，但我们可以在外面听。

2d **Role-play the conversation.** 分角色表演对话。

John: Hi, my name's John. It's my first day at school. 你好，我叫约翰。这是我在学校的第一天。

Alice: Hi, John. I'm Alice.This is a great school, but there are a lot of rules.

你好，约翰。我是艾丽斯。这是一所很好的学校，但是有很多规则。

课文朗读 2d

John: Really?What are some of the rules? 真的吗？有些什么规则呢？

Alice: Well, don't be late for class. This is very important /ɪmˈpɔ:(r)tnt/ [15].

嗯，上课不要迟到。这是非常重要的。

John:OK, so we must be on time. Can we bring/brɪŋ/ [16] music players to school? [17]

好的，那么我们必须准时。我们可以把音乐播放器带到学校吗？

Alice: No, we can't. And we always have to wear the school uniform/ju:nɪfɔ:(r)m/.

不，我们不可以。并且我们必须总是穿校服。

John:I see. 我明白了。

Alice: Oh, and we also have to be quiet/ˈkwaɪət/ in the library.

噢，并且我们还必须在图书馆里保持安静。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注



follow/obey the rules 遵守规则



break a rule 违反规则



•考点应用

★SCHOOL RULES

① **rule** /ru:l/ *n.* 规则；规章 ——复数形式

e.g. We must follow the rules. 我们必须遵守这些规则。

拓展：school rules 校纪 = the rules of the school

class rules 班规 = the rules of the class

考题在线 1 —Mom, I'm thirteen now. Can I ride a bike to school?

—Yes, you can. But you must follow the traffic_____on the way.[**襄阳**]

A. rules　　B. plans

C. safety　　D. accident

★Don't arrive late for class.

② **【句法分析】【重点】**"Don't + 动词原形." 是祈使句的否定形式，意为"不要……；禁止……"，表示请求、命令、劝说、号召、禁止等语气，相当于"You

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

mustn't ＋动词原形.”。

e.g.Don't take photos here.=You mustn't take photos here. 不要在这里拍照。

考题在线 2 请根据句意或句子的语法要求，用括号中所给单词的适当形式填空。

—_____(not make) a mess on the balcony, Betty.

—Sorry, I won't. [宿迁]

③ **arrive** /əˈraɪv/ *v.* 到达

e.g.My favourite writer will arrive in Beijing soon.

我最喜欢的作家很快就到北京了。 arrive+in/at+宾语

You can arrive at the bus stop at 8:00 a.m. 你可以在上午 8 点到达公共汽车停靠站。

arrive home 到家；arrive here 到这儿



arrive 后如果是地点副词 here, there, home 等，则不需要跟介词。

考题在线 3 根据句子中所给的单词首字母提示，填写正确的单词。

Mark can a_____ at the office on time every day. He is never late. [贵港]

点拨:用语境判定法解题。结合字母 a 及后句“他从不迟到”可知，马克每天按时到办公室。arrive at... 意为“到达……”；can 是情态动词，后跟动词原形。

e.g. Jack is never late for school, but today he will arrive late for it because of busy traffic. 杰克从不上学迟到，但是今天因为拥挤的交通他将要迟到了。

arrive late for 与 be late for 是同义短语，都是“迟到”，前者侧重动作，后者侧重状态。

★You must be on time.

④ **must** /mʌst/ modal *v.* 必须

讲解见本书 Unit 4 Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3c）“单元语法沙龙”部分

⑤ **on time** 准时；按时

【易错点】辨析: on time 与 in time

on time	准时（在规定的时间之内）	表示动作在规定时间内或比规定时间提前发生。
in time	及时（恰在时间点上）	强调与某个时刻一致。



考题在线 4 When you're invited to have dinner at home by an American friend, you should be_____or a little later. It's different from our Chinese custom. [山西]

A. on time　　B. on business　　C. on show

一语辨异：

She didn't catch the bus in time, so she couldn't arrive there on time. 她没有及时赶上公共汽车，因此她不能准时到那里。

★Don't listen to music in class.

⑥ **listen to** 听， **listen to music** 听音乐

e.g. Listen to the teacher carefully, please. 请认真听老师讲课。

Listen! The boys are singing TFBOYS' new song.

听！男孩们正在唱 TFBOYS 的新歌。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

【易错点】辨析：listen 与 hear

listen	不及物动词	后接宾语时，要加介词to，侧重于“听”的动作	This girl likes to listen to the radio. 这个女孩喜欢听收音机。
hear	可作及物动词	强调“听”的结果	Can you hear anything? 你能听到什么吗?

考题在线 5 We all _____ the man carefully（仔细地）， but we can't _____what he says.

A. listen to; listen to　　B. listen to; hear

C. hear; listen to　　D.hear; hear

点拨:用辨析法及语境判定法解题。listen to“听”，强调动作；hear“听到”，强调结果。句意：我们都在仔细听那个人说，但是没听见他说什么。



⑦ **in class 在课上；上课时** 反义短语after class 在课下；下课后

【易错点】辨析：in class 与 in the class

in class	在课上；上课时	Do you listen to your teacher carefully in class？ 你在课上认真听老师讲课吗?
in the class	在这个班	There are forty students in the class. 这个班有40名学生。

★有类似用法的还有
at table 吃饭
at the table 在桌子旁
in hospital 生病住院
in the hospital 在医院里

★**Don't fight.**

⑧ **fight** /fart/ *v.* **打架；战斗**

辨析：fight for 与 fight against/with

fight for	“为……而战斗”，后接名词或代词，表示战斗的目的。	They fight for their country. 他们为他们的祖国而战斗。
fight against/with	“对抗……”，后接名词或代词，表示在困难中抵抗。	I'll fight against/with you. 我会反抗你。

fight 还可用作名词，意为“打架，战斗(力)，斗志”，常用于短语have a fight，意为“打架”。

核心素养之文化意识

Fighting，fighting！加油，加油！

fighting 是一个被韩国人用红的英语单词，本身有“打架、战斗”的意思。延伸出来 *fighter* 是“斗士”，*fighting* 则意为“好战的、用于战斗的”。韩国人在互相鼓励的时候会说“*Fighting*！”，这其实和我们中文的“加油！”，英文的“*Come on*！”差不多，只是这并不是一个本土的 *English speaker* 会说的话。而在韩国社区里我们经常还会听到他们说：“*Aza Aza fighting*！”更有意思的是，韩语中并没有 /f/ 这个音。受制于这个发音缺陷，他们不能发出“*fighting*”，而是发成了“*hwaiting*”或者“*pighting*”的音。

素养行动：在自我激励、互相鼓励的时候说句“Fighting！”。

素养行动结果：了解中外文化，多多鼓励加油，一句“Fighting！”，一种能量(energy)。

★**Sorry, Ms. Clark.**

⑨【高频】交际用语：表示抱歉或对不起常说“Sorry.”或“I'm sorry.”。

考题在线 6 —Excuse me, sir. Is the swimming pool open all day?

—_____. Only from 6:30 p.m. to 9:30 p.m.　　[宜宾]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. That's right　　B. Yes, of course　　C. Sorry, I'm afraid not

点拨:用关键信息法解题。由答语"Only from 6:30 p.m. to 9:30 p.m."可知,游泳池不是全天开,故向对方表示礼貌性道歉。

考题在线 7 — Sorry, I took the wrong seat.

—_____ I will take yours instead. 【导学号:8811889】[安徽]

A. No way.　　B. Better not.

C. Excuse me.　　D. That's all right.

点拨:用关键信息法解题。No way. 没门。; Better not. 最好不要。; Excuse me. 打扰了。; That's all right. 没关系。由答语后句"我去坐你的座位"可知,第二个人对第一个人的道歉表示了安慰。

A single conversation with a wise man is better than ten years of study. 与君一席话,胜读十年书。

⑩ **sorry** /ˈsɒri/ *adj.* **抱歉的;难过的;惋惜的**

【易错点】辨析: sorry 与 excuse me,都可以表达"对不起"。

sorry	sorry 一般用于事后,是礼节性的道歉用语,意思是"对不起"或"抱歉",常用在做错了事或不能效劳以及因某种失误向对方表示歉意时。
	sorry 还可表示听到对方说出不愉快的消息时,而表示同情或遗憾。
excuse me	excuse me 常用于事前,意为"劳驾"、"请原谅",常用在你所要说的话或要做的事可能引起对方不愉快时或需要打扰或求助别人时,或要引起别人注意时。

e.g. I'm sorry to hear that you are ill. 听到你生病了我很难过。

Excuse me, could I have a look at that smartphone?

劳驾,我能看看那部智能手机吗?

★listen to music outside

⑪ **outside** / ˌaʊtˈsaɪd/ *adv.* **在外面**　反义词 inside 在里面

e.g. He is waiting for his second child outside.

他正在外面等着他的第二个孩子。

The outside wall is painted white. 外面的墙被刷成白色。

Don't judge a man from his outside. 不要以貌取人。

They took a trip outside the country. 他们到国外旅行。

outside 的其他用法

outside
- adj. 外面的
- n. 外表;外部
- prep. 在……外面

★wear a hat

⑫ **wear** /weə/ *v.* **穿;戴**　及物动词,表状态。

e.g. My sister doesn't like to wear dresses. 我姐姐不喜欢穿裙子。

【易错点】辨析: wear, put on, dress, have... on 与 in

wear	强调"穿;戴"的状态,其宾语可以是衣服、鞋帽、首饰或眼镜等。	He is wearing a new shirt today. 他今天穿着一件新衬衫。
put on	侧重"穿;戴"的动作,可用于穿衣服、穿鞋、戴帽等。	Please put on your coat. 请穿上你的外套。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

dress	意为“穿衣服；给（某人）穿衣服”，表“穿”的动作时，宾语是人，不是衣服。	She dresses her little brother every morning. 她每天早上给她弟弟穿衣服。
have... on	表示状态，和 wear 相似。	The emperor had nothing on. 皇帝什么也没穿。
in	表示“穿；戴”的状态，后可接表示衣服颜色的词。	The boy in blue is my brother. 穿蓝色衣服的那个男孩是我弟弟。

important 可用作表语或定语。常用于句型“It is important for sb. to do sth.”，意为“对某人来说做某事很重要”。

unimportant
adj. 不重要的
important
adj. 重要的
importance
n. 重要性

★This is very important.

⑬ **important** *adj.* 重要的

e.g.Is following rules important? 遵守规则重要吗？

WeChat is an important way of communication.
微信是一种重要的交流方式。

important 前的不定冠词用 an，谨记！敲黑板

It is important for me to learn to pay for things by ZHI FU BAO. 对我来说学习用支付宝付费很重要。

考题在线 8 单词拼写。

It's very _____ (重要的)to make a plan before we do everything.

[河池]

★Can we bring music players to school?

⑭ **交际用语。本句是含有情态动词 can 的一般疑问句，肯定回答用“Yes，...can.”，否定回答用“No，...can't.”，can 在此处表示许可，意为“可以”。**

e.g.— Can I play *League of Legends* at this time?
我现在可以玩《英雄联盟》吗？
—Yes, you can. /No, you can't. 是的，你可以。/ 不，你不可以。

⑮ **bring** /brɪŋ/ *v.* **带来；取来**

bring sth./sb.to sp. 意为“把某物/某人带来某地”。

e.g.Please remember to bring the book to school. 记得把书带到学校来。

【易错点】辨析：bring，take 与 get

bring	意为“带来；拿来”，指从别处带到说话者所在的地方来。	Please bring your family photo here. 请把你的全家福带到这儿来。
take	意为“带走；拿走”，指从说话者所在的地方带到远处去。常与介词 to 连用。方向上与 bring 正好相反。	His father often takes him to the zoo on weekends. 他爸爸经常在周末带他去动物园。
get	意为“去拿来”，指从说话者所在的地方去别处取到某物后再返回到说话者处，需要一个来回。	The book written by Mo Yan is on the table. Can you get it for me? 莫言写的那本书在桌子上。你能为我去拿来吗？

考题在线 9 —I'm sorry, Mr Hu. I _____ my English exercise book at home.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—It doesn't matter. Please remember _____it here this afternoon. [黄冈]

A. forgot; to bring　　B. left; to take

C. forgot; to take　　D. left; to bring



点拨:用语境判定法解题。"leave sth. + 地点"意为"将某物遗忘在某处",故排除A、C两项;由于把英语练习册忘在了家里,所以要记得把它"带到这儿来"。bring指带到说话的地方来;take指带到别的地方去。

考题在线答案　1. A　2. Don't make　3. arrive　4. A　5. B　6. C　7. D　8. important　9. D

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力20分

☞(答案见298页)

听力技巧

主题句预测法(在听听力时,往往听到的第一句话是整个对话或语篇的主题句,它包含着该对话的主题或语篇的中心思想。因此,根据主题句往往就可以预测整段的内容。而且把每一段落的首句连接起来,便可得到整篇话语的梗概。)

听力过程

课文听力1b

一、听1b,补全句子

1. The conversation is about _____.
2. Peter can't _____ in the hallways.
3. Amy can't eat _____.
4. Mike can't _____ in class.
5. Mike _____ Mr. Smith.

课文听力2a

二、听2a,选择正确答案

6. Where can they listen to music?

A. In the classroom.　B. In the hallways.

C. In the music room.

7. Where can they eat?

A. In the classroom.　B. In the dining hall.

C. In the hallways.

8. What can't they wear in class?

A. Shoes.　B. Hats.

C. Watches.

9. What makes the teachers unhappy?

A. Studying hard.　B. Helping others.

C. Fighting with classmates.

10. What are the boy and the girl talking about?

A. School rules.　B. Family rules.

C. Class rules.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞(答案见298页)

一、根据句意用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空,使句子完整、通顺

rule, fight, arrive, outside, quiet

1. Zhang Jie _____ in your city and gives a concert(音乐会).
2. You'd better not break the school _____.
3. You should eat _____. You can't make noises here.
4. Don't _____ with each other in the classroom.
5. It's cold _____. You'd better put on your coat.

二、单项选择

6. —Don't throw paper on the floor.

—_____ [白银]

A. Good idea.　B. Sorry, I won't.

C. Cheers!　D. No way!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

7. —Must I wait here all the morning? I have a lot of work to do.
—No, you_____.You may be back in the afternoon. [威海]
A. mustn't B. can't
C. don't have to

8. I am in a jacket today. But he says we have to _____ uniforms at school.
A. wear B. put on
C. dress D. have in

9. —Please _____ the photos taken in Canada here when you come to school tomorrow. I'd like to have a look.
—OK!
A. take B. get
C. bring D. buy

10. This is an _____ talk. Please arrive _____ time.
A. important; on B. good; on
C. important; in D. good; in

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 上班不要迟到。
_____ _____ _____ _____work.

12. 她经常在课堂上和她的朋友打起来。
She often_____ _____ her friends _____ _____.

13. 我们都喜欢听 TFBOYS 的歌。
We all like _____ _____ TFBOYS' songs.

14. 遵守餐厅规则很必要。
It's necessary to _____ the _____ _____ rules.

15. 我可以看电影《流浪地球》吗?
_____ _____ _____the film *The Wandering Earth*?

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Don't run in the hallways. 不要在走廊里跑。	Don't fight. 不要打架。
What are the rules? 这些规则是什么呢?	We must be on time for class. 我们必须按时上课。
Can we eat in the classroom? 我们能在教室里吃东西吗?	No, we can't,but we can eat in the dining hall. 不，我们不能，但我们能在餐厅里吃东西。
Can we wear a hat in class? 我们在课堂上能戴帽子吗?	Yes, we can. / No,we can't. 是的，我们能戴。/不，我们不能戴。
Does he have to wear a uniform at school? 他在学校必须穿校服吗?	Yes, he does. /No, he doesn't. 是的，他必须穿。/不，他不必穿。
What do you have to do? 你们必须做什么?	We have to be quiet in the library. 我们在图书馆里必须安静。

3a Write the rules for the school library. 写出学校图书馆的规则。

Library Rules 图书馆规则	
1. Don't talk. 不要说话。	2. _____
3. _____	4. _____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3b **Use the words to make questions about the rules. Then write answers according to your school.** 用这些词写关于规则的问题。然后根据你们学校（的规则）写出回答。

Be quiet? 安静?

Q:Does she have to be quiet in the library?(she/have to/in the library)?

她在图书馆必须安静吗?（她／必须／在图书馆）?

A: Yes,she does. 是的，她必须。

Eat? 吃?

Q: _____(he/have to/in the dining hall)? **A:** _____

_____（他／必须／在餐厅）? _____

Listen to music? 听音乐?

Q: _____(we/can/in the hallways)?**A:** _____

_____（我们／能／在走廊）? _____

Wear a hat? 戴帽子?

Q: _____(we/can/in the classroom)?**A:** _____

_____（我们 / 能 / 在教室）? _____

3c **Make up five cool rules for your dream school.Share your rules with the class.Your classmates vote for the Coolest School!** 为你梦想中的学校制定五条酷酷的规则。与全班同学分享你的规则。你的同班同学们投票选出最酷的学校！

1. We can eat in class. 我们可以在课堂上吃东西。
2. We don't have to come to school every day. 我们不必每天来学校。
3. ... ……

At my dream school,we don't have to come to school every day. We...

在我梦想中的学校，我们不必每天来学校。我们……

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

祈使句

用于表达命令、请求、劝告、警告、禁止等的句子称为祈使句。祈使句最常用于表达命令。祈使句因对象（即主语）都是第二人称，所以通常省略主语。祈使句以动词原形开头，句末使用句号或感叹号。

知识微课

重点也是易错点，认真理解！ 敲黑板

e.g. Go and wash your hands. 去洗你的手。（命令）

Be quiet, please. 请安静。（请求）

Be kind to your sister. 对你妹妹要和善。（劝告）

Look out! Danger！ 小心！危险！（警告）

Keep off the grass. 请勿践踏草坪。（禁止）

考点 **祈使句的形式**

考向 1：肯定祈使句的形式：

Do 型	动词原形 (+ 宾语)+ 其他成分.	Please have a seat here. 请这边坐。
Be 型	Be+ 表语（名词或形容词)+ 其他成分.	Be a good boy. 要做一个好孩子。
Let 型	Let+ 宾语 + 动词原形 + 其他成分.	Let me help you. 让我来帮你。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 1 — _____dressed now! We have to go in ten minutes.

—OK, Mom. [济南]

A. Getting B. Get C. To get D. Gets

考向 2：否定祈使句的形式：

Do 型	在句首加 Don't	Don't forget me！ 不要忘记我！
Be 型		Don't be late！ 不要迟到！
Let 型	Don't + let + 宾语 + 动词原形 + 其他成分.	Don't let him go. =Let him not go. 不要让他走。
	Let + 宾语 + not + 动词原形 + 其他成分.	
No 型	No+ 动词的 -ing 形式！	No fishing！ 禁止垂钓！

考题在线 2 Daniel, _____ play with the mobile phone while you're walking in the street. [盐城]

A. don't B. doesn't

C. won't D.can't

考题在线 3 Which sign of the following means "No smoking"? [宿迁]



A.



B.



C.



D.

速记小筏：

祈使句用法歌诀

祈使句，祈使句，请求、命令或建议。

主语是 you 常省去，动词原形开头记。

否定形式要注意，句首要把 Don't 立。

要讲客气用 please，句首、句末没关系。

No doing! 需提起，表示"禁止"不小觑。

情态动词 have to 和 must

考点 1 have to 的用法

have to 表示客观需要做的事情，意思是"必须；不得不"。

考向 1：have to 后跟动词原形，意为"必须做……；不得不做……"。

e.g. It's raining, and you have to take an umbrella. 下雨了，你必须带把伞。

考向 2：have to 有人称和数的变化，其第三人称单数形式为 has to。

e.g. She has to look after her younger brother.

她不得不照看她的弟弟。

考向 3：含有 have/has to 的句子要借助于助动词 do/does 构成一般疑问句或否定句。

e.g. Do they have to do the work?

他们必须做这项工作吗？

He doesn't have to go home now.

他不必现在就回家。

考题在线 4 You _____take me to the station. My brother's taking me. [江西]

A. can't B. mustn't

C. shouldn't D. don't have to

考点 2 must 的用法

考向 1：must 为情态动词，意为"必须，一定"。情态动词不能单独作谓语动词，必须和动词原形一起构成谓语部分。

e.g. You must read a book before you watch TV.

在看电视前你必须读书。

考题在线 5 I _____ go now, or I'll miss my train. [北京]

A. can B. might

C. must D. could

考向 2：must 用于否定句时，mustn't 意为"不允许，禁止"，而不表示"不必"。

e.g. You mustn't be late for school.

你千万不要上学迟到。

考题在线 6 We should keep quiet in the library. We _____ speak loudly. [凉山]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A. must　　B. mustn't
C. can　　D. needn't

考向 3：以 must 开头的一般疑问句，若作否定回答，可以用 needn't 或 don't have to，不用 mustn't。

e.g.—Must I clean all the rooms?
我必须打扫所有的房间吗?
—No, you needn't/don't have to. 不，你不必。

考题在线 7 —Must I hand in（上交）my homework now, Mr. Smith?
—No, you _____. [北京]
A. can't　　B. shouldn't
C. wouldn't　　D. needn't

考向 4：辨析：have to 与 must

have to 强调客观存在的必要性，含有不情愿的色彩，不能用来表示推测。must 表示说话人的主观意志和看法，含有自觉、自愿的色彩。



考题在线答案 1. B　2. A　3. B　4. D　5. C　6. B　7. D

Ⅲ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

☞（答案见 298 页）

单项选择

1.—_____on the TV, Jim. I'd like to watch the evening news.
—OK, Dad. [济南]
A. Turn　　B. Turns
C. Turning　　D. To turn

2.Please _____ your exam papers once again before handing them in. [上海]
A. going over　　B. went over
C. go over　　D. to go over

3.—Let's _____ chess.
—Good idea!
A. play　　B. to play
C. playing　　D. played

4.Let's _____a noise. Someone is sleeping. [齐齐哈尔]
A. not make　　B. no making
C. not to make

5. _____on the grass, or it will"cry". [陕西]
A. To walk　　B. Not to walk
C. Walk　　D. Don't walk

6. All the students_____ know cheating in the exam is not allowed. [十堰]
A. need　　B. may　　C. must　　D. can

7. —May I take the magazine out of the reading room?
—No, you_____. Please read it here.
【导学号：8811889】[郴州]
A. mustn't　　B. wouldn't
C. needn't

8.—Must I do the dishes now?
—No, you _____. [新疆]
A. mustn't　　B. needn't
C. may not　　D. can't

9.She doesn't have to _____ the dishes.
A. washing　　B. washes
C. to wash　　D.wash

10. Bob can't go hiking with us because he _____ help with the housework at home.
A. have to　　B. has to
C. must not　　D. shouldn't

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section B（1a–1d）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Read the rules in the chart in 1b.Then match the pictures [a–h] with the rules.

读 1b 表格中的规则。然后将图片［a–h］与这些规则相匹配。



1b Listen and put an × for things Dave can't do and a √ for things he has to do.

听录音并且在戴夫不能做的事后面画 ×，在他必须做的事后面画√。

	Rules 规则	Can't（×） 不能（×）	Have to/ Must（√） 不得不 / 必须（√）	When 什么时候
a	go out 外出	×		on school nights 在上学日的晚上
	see friends 看望朋友			
	do his homework 做他的家庭作业			
	practice /ˈpræktɪs/① the guitar 练习吉他			
	do the dishes /ˈdɪʃɪz/ 清洗餐具			
	watch TV 看电视			
	help his mom make breakfast② 帮他的妈妈做早饭			
	clean his room 打扫他的房间			

1c Listen again.Write when Dave has to follow the rules in the chart in 1b.Choose from the phrases in the box. 再听一遍。在 1b 表格中写出戴夫什么时候必须遵守这些规则。从方框中选出这些短语。

on school nights 在上学日的晚上　　every Saturday 每周六
before/bɪˈfɔː(r)/③ dinner 晚饭前　　in the evening 在晚上
on school days 在上学的日子里　　after dinner 晚饭后
after school 放学后　　every morning 每天早上

1d Talk about the rules in Dave's house. 谈论一下戴夫家里的规则。

—Can Dave go out on school nights? 戴夫在上学日的晚上能出去吗?
—No, he can't. 不，他不能出去。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞（答案见 298 页）

听力过程

听 1b，选择正确答案



1. Why can't Dave watch the basketball game?
   A. Because he doesn't like sports.
   B. Because he must see his friends.
   C. Because he can't go out on school nights.
2. What does Dave have to do on school days?
   A. Do his homework.
   B. See his friends.
   C. Watch TV.
3. What does Dave do before dinner?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. He practices the guitar.
B. He does the dishes.
C. He watches TV.

4. Who has to help make dinner sometimes?
A. Jack.
B. Dave and Emily.
C. We don't know.

5. What must Dave do every Saturday?
A. Practice the piano.
B. Wash his clothes.
C. Clean his room.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用

•考点批注

★practice the guitar 及物动词，后跟名词、代词或动词的-ing形式。

① **practice** /'præktɪs/ *v.*& *n.* 练习

e.g. He practices playing the piano every day. 他每天练习弹钢琴。

速记小筏：

中考常考接动词的 -ing 形式作宾语的动词（短语）：

完成练习值得忙 (finish，practise/practice，be worth，be busy)

继续习惯要放弃 (keep on，be used to，give up)

考虑建议不禁想 (consider，suggest/advise，can't help，feel like)

喜欢思念要介意 (enjoy，miss，mind)

允许盼望要冒险 (allow，look forward to，risk)

避免推迟不容忍 (avoid，put off，can't stand)

考题在线1 These foreigners are practicing _____ Chinese. [遂宁]

A. to speak　　B. speaking　　C. speak　　D. speaks

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。practice doing sth. 是固定用法，意为"练习做某事"。句意：这些外国人在练习说汉语。不可数名词，意为"练习，实践"。

e.g. Practice makes perfect. 熟能生巧。（谚语）

- practice doing sth. 练习做某事
- 用作动词，表示"练习"时，美式英语写作practice，英式英语写作practise。

★help his mom make breakfast

② **make breakfast** 做早饭

辨析：make 与 do

make	"生产，制造"，指用原材料制作成某种东西，或经过努力而做成某物。一般强调做东西时用 make。
do	指进行一项经常性的或指定的活动，一般强调做事情时用 do。

拓展：含有 make 的短语：

make one's bed 铺床　make a noise 发出噪音

make faces 做鬼脸　make dumplings 包饺子

make friends with 和……交朋友　make up 组成；化妆

make a difference 起作用　make rules 制定规则

make mistakes 犯错误　make progress 取得进步

一语辨异：

I'm making a model car, while my brother is doing his homework. 我在做汽车模型，我哥哥在做他的家庭作业。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

make up one's mind 下定决心　make fun of 取笑

make room for 为……让出地方

make sb. feel at home 舒适自在，无拘无束

用作介词，意为“在……以前”，表示时间，反义词是after。
用作介词，意为“在……的前面”，表示位置，其反义词为behind。
用作副词，意为“以前”。

★**before dinner**

③【高频】**before** /bɪˈfɔː (r)/*prep.* 在……以前

e.g.He usually does his homework before dinner, and watches TV after dinner. 他通常晚饭前做作业，晚饭后看电视。

He sits before me，and I sit behind him. 他坐在我前面，我坐在他后面。

I think we've met before. 我觉得我们以前见过面。

考题在线 2 Look out! Look at the traffic lights_____crossing the road. [永州]

A. before　　B. after　　C. since

考题在线答案 1. B　2. A

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

2a When you are unhappy about something,who do you like to talk to?

当你因某事不高兴时，你喜欢和谁说?

2b Read the letters. Underline the rules for Molly/ˈmɒli/,/ˈmɑːli/. 读这些信。画出针对莫莉的规则。

Dear Dr.Know, 亲爱的万事通博士：

There are too many① rules!At 6:00 a.m.,my mom says,“Get up now and make your bed!”After breakfast,my mom always says,“Don't leave② the dirty/ˈdɜː(r)ti/ dishes in the kitchen /ˈkɪtʃɪn/!”After that,I run to school because I can't be late.At school,we have more/mɔː(r)/③ rules—don't be noisy /ˈnɔɪzi/,don't eat in class,...

课文朗读 2b

有太多的规则！早上六点，我妈妈说：“现在起床并整理床铺！”早饭后，我妈妈总是说：“不要把脏餐具留在厨房里！”之后，我跑着去学校因为我不能迟到。在学校，我们有更多的规则——不许喧哗，不许在课堂上吃东西，……

My dad says I can't play basketball after school because I must do my homework.I can play only on weekends.After dinner,I can't relax/rɪˈlæks/④ either⑤ .I must read/riːd/⑥ a book before I can watch TV.But I have to go to bed before 10:00.Rules,rules,rules!It's terrible/ˈterəbl/!What can I do,Dr.Know?

我爸爸说放学后我不能打篮球因为我必须做家庭作业。我只能在周末打篮球。晚饭后，我也不能放松。在可以看电视之前我必须先读书。但是十点前我必须睡觉。规则，规则，规则！那太可怕了！我能做什么呢，万事通博士?

Molly Brown, New York/ˌnjuːˈjɔː(r)k/ 莫莉·布朗，纽约

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Dear Molly, 亲爱的莫莉：

I know how you feel/fi:l/ ⑦.People always tell us,"Don't do this!"or"You can't do that!"But think about it,Molly.There are a lot of things you can do.You can play basketball on weekends.You can watch TV after you read a book.Parents and schools are sometimes strict/strɪkt/ ⑧,but remember /rɪˈmembə(r)/ ⑨, they make rules to help us.We have to follow/ˈfɒləʊ/,/ˈfɑːləʊ/ them.

我知道你的感受。人们总是告诉我们："别做这个！"或"你不能做那个！"但是考虑一下，莫莉。有很多你可以做的事情。在周末你可以打篮球。读书后你可以看电视。父母和学校有时是严格的，但是要记住，他们制定规则是为了帮助我们。我们必须遵守它们。

Good luck/lʌk/ ⑩！⑩祝你好运！

Dr.Know 万事通博士

2c Read the letters again and complete the sentences with *have to/must, can* or *can't*.

再读一遍信件，用 have to/must, can 或 can't 完成这些句子。

1.Molly _____ play basketball on school days,but she _____ play it on weekends.

莫莉_____在上学的日子里打篮球，但是她_____在周末打。

2.Molly _____ do her homework first when she gets home.

当莫莉到家时，她_____首先做她的家庭作业。

3.Molly _____ read a book after dinner before she _____ watch TV.

晚饭后，莫莉_____看书，在她_____看电视之前。

4.At school, Molly _____ be noisy or eat in class. 在学校，莫莉_____喧哗或在课堂上吃东西。

5.Parents and schools make rules to help students.So students _____ follow the rules.

父母和学校制定规则是为了帮助学生。因此学生们_____遵守这些规则。

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 60分

（答案见299页）

阅读策略

顺藤摸瓜法（文章往往是有一条线贯穿始终的，这条线可以是时间、空间、事件等。这条线就是"藤"，是文章的主干。在本文中这根藤就是"rules"。抓住了它，那么，在家、在学校的各种具体规则就如同藤上的瓜一样被牵扯而出，整个文章体系就呈现在我们面前了。）

阅读过程

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

⊙**1.** What's the passage mainly about?（主旨大意题）

A. How to follow rules.

B. Molly Brown's school.

C. Molly's different rules.

D. The way to study well.

拓展阅读

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

⊙**2.** After breakfast, Molly has to _____.（推理判断题）

A. wash her hands　　B. do the dishes

C. do her homework　　D. meet her friends

⊙**3.** Molly runs to school because _____.（细节理解题）

A. she wants to exercise

B. she gets up late

C. she must be on time

D. she doesn't have a bike

⊙**4.** What must Molly do after dinner?（细节理解题）

A. Read a book.　　B. Play basketball.

C. Watch TV.　　D. Do her homework.

5. Dr. Know thinks that Molly has to_____ .（细节理解题）

A. make some rules　　B. break the rules

C. do nothing　　D. follow the rules

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点批注 •考点应用

速记 小筏：

too many/much，much too，不看前词重后头。much“非常”“太”是 too。many，much 接名词，前者复数后者不可数。

敲黑板 重点且易错，理解着记忆！

There are too many rules!

① too many 太多

【难点 & 易错点】辨析：too many，too much 与 much too

too many	“太多的……”，其后要接可数名词的复数形式。	There are too many flowers in the garden. 花园里有太多的花。
too much	“太多（的……）”，后接不可数名词，还可修饰动词作状语。	I have too much homework this evening. 今天晚上我有太多的家庭作业。 He talks too much. 他说得太多了。
much too	“太……”，much 用来增强语气，much too 后面常接形容词或副词。	This little boy is much too fat. 这个小男孩太胖了。

考题在线 1 —Why are you so tired these days?

—Well, I have_____ homework to do. [孝感]

A. too much B. too many

C. much too D. many too

Don't leave the dirty dishes in the kitchen!

leave 常与表示地点的介词短语连用，表示“把某物忘在某地”，其过去式为 left。

leave sb. by oneself 意为“把某人独自留下”。

leave sth./sb.+地点；forget sth./sb.，注意区分！ 敲黑板

② leave /liːv/ *vt.* 留下，忘了带，丢下

e.g. I left my pen in the bedroom. 我把我的钢笔落在卧室了。

Don't leave your daughter by herself at home.

不要把你女儿独自留在家中。

【难点 & 易错点】辨析 :leave 与 forget

辨析

- leave “忘了带，丢下；留在”，常与地点状语连用，表示把某物落在/留在某地。 — I left my homework at home. 我把家庭作业落在家里了。
- forget “遗忘；记不起”，指忘记某事/某物，不与地点状语连用。 — I forget his phone number. 我忘记了他的电话号码。

考题在线 2 —Alex, why didn't you answer my call at nine last night?

—Sorry, I _____ my mobile phone at home. I _____basketball in the park with my friends. [达州]

A. forgot; played B. forgot; was playing

C. left; played D. left; was playing

点拨：用语法分析法解题。forget 不能与地点状语连用，英语中表示把某物落在某地用 leave；由问句“为什么昨天晚上 9 点不接我电话”可知，答语表

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

示那时正在打篮球，用过去进行时。

注意：leave 的其他用法（见本书 Unit 3 Period 4 考点 9）

★At school, we have more rules—don't be noisy, don't eat in class, ...

③ **more** /mɔ:(r)/ *adj.& pron.* 更多（的）

【难点】more 的用法

- more
  - many的比较级，作形容词，修饰可数名词复数。 → She has more books than I. 她的书比我多。
  - much的比较级，作形容词，修饰不可数名词。 → There is more water in the river now.现在河里水更多了。
  - 作代词，意为“更多”。 → The soup is delicious, and I want some more. 汤很美味，我想再来一些。



考题在线 3 Compared（比较）with newspapers or TV, the Internet offers （提供）people _____information. [成都]

A. much　　B. more　　C. most

点拨：用语境判定法解题。由前半句“比起报纸或电视”可知，本句指的是“互联网”提供给人们更多的信息。

★After dinner, I can't relax either.

④ **relax** /rɪˈlæks/ *v.* 放松，休息

e.g.Just relax and enjoy the movie *Youth*. 休息休息，看看电影《芳华》吧。

Playing games always relaxes me. 玩游戏总是使我放松。

This film is very relaxing. 这部电影很令人放松。

He is relaxed after taking a vacation. 度假后，他感到轻松。

拓展：英语中类似的词还有：

interesting 有趣的　interested 感兴趣的

boring 无聊的　bored（对某人 / 某事）厌倦的，烦闷的

exciting 令人兴奋 / 激动的　excited 兴奋 / 激动的

surprising 令人惊讶的　surprised 感到惊讶的

考题在线 4 根据句意及首字母提示写单词。

The peaceful music will make you feel r_____. [泰安]

⑤ **either** /ˈaɪðə(r)/ *adv.* 也

辨析 either, too 与 also（见本书 Unit 1 Period 4 考点 1）

★I must read a book before I can watch TV.

⑥ 【高频】**read** /ri:d/ *v.* 阅读；读

辨析：read，watch，see 与 look

read	意为“阅读”，侧重指看文字性的东西，后面常接书、报纸、杂志等。可用于 read sth. to sb. 或 read sb. sth. 结构。	He is reading a book. 他正在看书。

★辨析：relax, relaxing 与 relaxed

- relax v. 放松；使放松。
- relaxing adj. 主要用来修饰物，表示“令人放松的”。
- relaxed adj. 主要用来修饰人，表示某人“感到轻松”。

★不同的“看”



look at the dog 看这只狗

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



see a film 看电影



read a newspaper 看报纸



watch TV 看电视

素养行动：轻轻地捧起一本书，静静地品味书中的味道，贵在坚持。

素养行动结果：阅读是一种习惯，一种愉悦（pleasure），一种享受（enjoyment），一种境界（state）。

watch	意为“观看；注视”，指非常仔细地、有目的地、全神贯注地“看”，多指观看运动着的事物，如：看电视、比赛、表演等。	We sat and watched the sunset. 我们坐着看日落。
see	意为“看见；看到”，强调看的结果，指有意或无意地看到，无进行时态。	I saw him leave a few minutes ago. 几分钟前我看见他离开了。
look	意为“看”，强调看的动作，表示有意识地集中精力去看。后跟宾语时用 look at。	I looked but saw nothing. 我看了但什么也没看到。

考题在线 5 —What does your father do after dinner?

—He usually _____ newspapers. [贵港]

A. reads B. watches C. looks D. sees

核心素养之文化意识

养成读书习惯，享受读书时间

世界读书日 (World Reading Day) 全称为“世界图书与版权日”，又称“世界图书日”。最初的创意来自于国际出版商协会。1995 年 11 月 15 日正式确定每年 4 月 23 日为“世界图书与版权日”。设立目的是推动更多的人去阅读和写作，希望所有人都能尊重和感谢为人类文明做出过巨大贡献的文学、文化、科学、思想大师们，保护知识产权。每年的这一天，世界一百多个国家都会举办各种各样的庆祝和图书宣传活动。

I know how you feel.

⑦ **feel** /fi:l/ *v.* 感受，觉得

连系动词，后跟形容词作表语。

e.g.I feel happy today. 我今天觉得很快乐。

This skirt feels soft. 这条裙子摸起来很柔软。

We all feel the house shake. 我们都感觉这房子在颤动。

feel 的其他用法：连系动词，“摸起来”。实义动词，“感觉”。

考题在线 6 This bed _____ soft and comfortable. [南宁]

A. sounds B. tastes C. feels D. smells

Parents and schools are sometimes strict, but remember, they make rules to help us.

⑧ **strict** /strɪkt/ *adj.* 严格的；严厉的

e.g.She is a strict teacher. 她是一位严格的老师。

strict 常在句中作表语、定语。

辨析：be strict with sb. 与 be strict in sth.

be strict with sb. 对某人要求严格	My parents are always strict with me. 我父母总是对我要求严格。
be strict in sth. 对某事要求严格	Our teacher is strict in his work. 我们的老师对他的工作要求很严格。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 7 Our teachers _____ us and they _____ their work very much. [巴中]

A. be strict with; are strict in　　B. are strict in; be strict with

C. are strict with; are strict in

⑨ **remember** /rɪˈmembə(r)/ *v.* **记住；记起**　反义词 forget 忘记

e.g.I can't remember his telephone number. 我记不住他的电话号码。

辨析：remember to do sth. 与 remember doing sth.

remember to do sth.	记得要去做某事，说明事情还没有做，相当于 don't forget to do sth.	Remember to telephone me when you arrive there. 当你到那里的时候，记着打电话给我。
remember doing sth.	记得做过某事，说明事情已经做过	I remember seeing her in the city. 我记得在这个城市见过她。

remember 后可接名词、代词、动词的 -ing 形式和动词不定式作宾语。

+doing 做过的事（过去）
↑
remember 记着（现在）
↓
+ to do 要做的事（未来）

考题在线 8 —John, remember_____off the lights when you leave the classroom.

—No problem! [湘西]

A. turn　　B. turned　　C. to turn　　D. turning

点拨：用语法分析法及语境判定法解题。remember to do sth. 意为"记得去做某事"，表示事情还没做；remember doing sth. 意为"记得做过某事"，表示事情做过了。由答语"没问题"可知，"关灯"这件事还没做。

★Good luck!

⑩ **交际用语**

Good luck! 是一句常用的祝福语，意为"祝你好运！"，有时也说"Good luck to you!"或"I wish you good luck."。回答时用"Thanks./Thank you."表示感谢。

e.g.—I want to find a job next month. 下个月我想要找份工作。

—Good luck to you! 祝你好运！

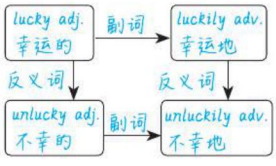
⑪ **luck** /lʌk/ *n.* **幸运；运气**　have luck (in) doing sth. 做某事时有运气（走运）

e.g. She had luck enjoying Zhang Jie's concert. 她有幸欣赏了张杰的音乐会。

He is a lucky dog and he gets a good job luckily. 他是个幸运的家伙，他幸运地得到一份好工作。

Unluckily, there is no one to help the unlucky child. 不幸的是，没有人去帮助这个不幸的孩子。

- good luck (to sb.) 祝（某人）好运
- bad luck 倒霉



考题在线 9 —I'm going to enter an English speaking competition tomorrow.

—_____! [广安]

A. Good luck　　B. Have a nice trip

C. No problem　　D. Congratulations

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

点拨:用交际法解题。good luck 好运；have a nice trip 旅途愉快；no problem 没问题；congratulations 祝贺。对方明天要去参加英语演讲比赛，应祝对方好运。

考题在线答案 1. A 2.D 3.B 4.relaxed 5.A 6.C 7.C 8.C 9.A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见299页)

一、根据句意及提示完成句子

1. You look tired. Why not r_____ for a while?

2. R_____ to bring your guitar here.

3. Look at your d_____ hands, my son ! Go and wash them.

4. It's very _____ (noise) here. We should find a quiet place.

5. He has two apples and he wants _____(many).

二、单项选择

6. —Do you often _____ newspapers in your free time?

—Yes, I do.

A. read B. watch

C. see D. look

7. —Anny. My mother never gets up late for my breakfast. What about your mother?

—My mother, _____. Mothers in China do more for us children. [达州改编]

A. too B. also C. either D. as well

8. Ken _____ his jacket in the classroom. He has to get it back.

A. forgets B.left

C. forgot D. leave

9. There are_____ people in the hall and there is _____ noise in it.

A. too much; too many

B. much too; too much

C. too many; too much

D. too many; much too

10. —There will be a math exam this afternoon.

—_____

A. Have a good day. B. See you then.

C. Thank you. D. Good luck!

三、根据句意和提示完成句子

11. Whatever you do in the future, you must _____ _____ _____ (遵守规则).

12. You should _____ _____ _____ (铺床) by yourself.

13. Can you tell us _____ _____ _____ (你感觉如何)?

14. He wants to wash some apples _____ _____ _____ (在厨房里).

15. Our teachers _____ _____ _____ (要求严格) us.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Complete Zhao Pei's letter to Dr.Know using *have to/must, can* or *can't*.

用 have to/must,can 或 can't 完成赵佩给万事通博士的信。

Dear Dr.Know, 亲爱的万事通博士：

_____ you help me?I'm not happy because there are too many rules at home.Every morning, I _____ get up at six o'clock.At school, I _____ wear a school uniform, and I _____ keep/kiːp/ my hair/heə/, /her/ short. ① After school,I _____ play with my friends or watch TV because I _____ do my homework. I _____ relax on weekends either because I _____ learn/lɜː(r)n/ ② to play the piano. I never have fun. What _____ I do?

你_____帮助我吗？我不快乐因为在家里有太多规则。每天早上，我_____在六点起床。在学校，我_____穿校服，并且我_____留短头发。放学后，我_____与我的朋友们玩或看电视因为我_____做我的家庭作业。我在周末也_____休息因为我_____学习弹钢琴。我从未过得快乐。我_____做什么呢？

Zhao Pei 赵佩

3b Complete the chart with the rules in your home and school.Put an × for the rules that you think are unfair. 用你家里和学校里的规则完成这个表格。你认为不公平的规则画 ×。

Things I have to do 我必须做的事情	Things I can't do 我不能做的事情

3c Write a letter to Dr.Know.Tell him about all the rules and how you feel about them.

给万事通博士写一封信。告诉他所有的规则以及你对所有规则的感受。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 用方框内的短语填空。

arrive late 迟到　listen to 听　be noisy 喧哗 follow the rules 遵守规则　be strict 要求严格

My name is Timmy the Mouse.I must get up early at 6:30 a.m.every morning.Then I have to go to the kitchen to get food for Grandpa. I never _____ at the kitchen because I have to get there before the cat gets up.My grandpa always tells me I can't _____. I _____ him because I don't want the cat to get me!My grandpa _____ with me,but I think it's best to_____ !

我叫蒂米，一只老鼠。我每天早上必须在六点半早早地起床。然后我不得不到厨房为爷爷觅食。我从来不_____到厨房，因为我不得不在猫起床前到达那儿。我爷爷总是告诉我，我不能_____。我_____他的话，因为我不想让猫抓住我！我爷爷对我_____，但是我认为最好_____！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2 **Use *can*, *can't*,*have to/must* and *don't* to write about the rules at school.Write two sentences for each rule.** 用 can,can't,have to/must 和 don't 写出在学校的规则。每条规则写两个句子。

1.arrive late/class　Don't arrive late for class.We can't arrive late for class.

迟到 / 上课　上课不要迟到。我们不能上课迟到。

2. listen/teacher _____ 听 / 老师 _____

3. be noisy/library _____ 喧哗 / 图书馆 _____

4. speak English/English class _____ 说英语 / 英语课 _____

5. eat/dining hall _____ 吃 / 餐厅 _____

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　•考点应用

★...I have to /must keep my hair short.

① keep my hair short 留短发

keep 意为“保持；保留”，用于“keep + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”结构，表示“使……保持某种状态”，其中宾语补足语通常由形容词、副词、介词短语等充当。

e.g. We must keep the classroom clean. 我们必须保持教室干净。

Keep the children away from the fire, please. 请让孩子们远离火。

拓展:



考题在线 1 How long can a person _____ a shared bike（共享单车）for free in Nanjing?

—For an hour. [淮安]

A. keep　B. get　C. borrow　D. lend

★...because I have to/must learn to play the piano.

- learn to do sth. 意为“学会（学习）做某事”
- learn how to do sth. 意为“学习如何做某事”

② learn /lɜ:(r)n/ *v.* **学习**

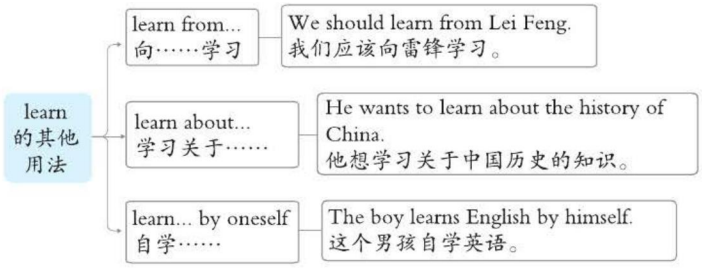
e.g. He is learning to dance. 他在学跳舞。

My 80-year-old grandma is learning how to chat on WeChat.

我 80 岁的奶奶正在学习如何用微信聊天。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

拓展：learn 的其他用法：



考题在线 2 Cindy's grandmother is learning _____ the new mobile phone. [临沂]

A. use　　B. uses　　C. used　　D. to use

考题在线答案 1. A　2. D

Ⅲ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20 分

单元话题

假如你是 Zhang Ping，你的父母给你制定了一些“家规”，包括 6 点半起床、不能在外面吃饭、上学日的晚上不能看电视、放学后必须 6 点前回到家、晚上要做作业、周末要去学吉他等。

请你给 Lucy 写一封电子邮件，告诉她你的这些家规并谈谈你的感受。要求语句通顺，不少于 70 词。

Dear Lucy,

How are you now? _____

_____

_____

_____

Yours,

Zhang Ping

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 开头总述家规，统领全文；
2. 用一般现在时，用第一人称；
3. 正确使用祈使句；用 can，can't，have to，must 等谈论具体家规。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

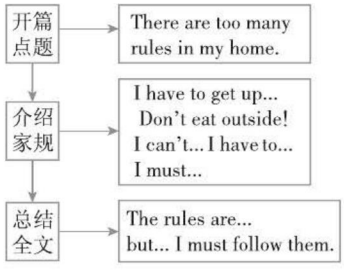
“三步法”写规章制度

第一步：开门见山，交代要写的规章制度；

第二步：介绍规章制度具体内容（可做什么不可做什么）；

第三步：总结全文，谈论看法。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	rule, outside, before, terrible, follow
短语	too many, have to, eat outside, watch TV, get home, learn the guitar, make rules
句子	① There are... ② ...because I have to... ③ Don't... ④ I can't... ⑤ ... but... ⑥ I must...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear Lucy,

How are you now? There are too many rules in my home. ① I have to ② get up at 6:30 every morning because I have to go to school at 7:20. I eat at home because my mom always says, "Don't eat outside!" I can't watch TV on school nights. After school, I have

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

to get home before 6:00. I have to do my homework in the evening. Then on weekends, I must go to learn the guitar. The rules are terrible but ③ my parents want to make rules to help me. I must follow them.

Yours,

Zhang Ping

名师点评：本文运用了"三步法"写规章制度，结构严谨，层次清晰，语言流畅。1. 点明要写的规章制度—my family rules；2. 介绍具体的家规—I have to get up at...I can't...I have to...；3. 发表自己的看法—The rules are...but... I must...

添彩点：①用 there be 句型表明在"我"家里有很多的规则。

②用 have to 表明在规则的制约下自己"不得不"去做的事。

③用转折连词 but 表明作者对家规的看法—虽然有些苛刻，但对自己是有帮助的。

及测听试力卷

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见299页)

单元知识浓缩

Dear Dr. Know,

There are too many rules! At 6：00 a.m., my mom says, "Get up now and _____[1] your bed!"After breakfast, my mom always says, "Don't _____[2] the dirty dishes in the kitchen !" After that, I run to school because I _____[3] be late. At school, we have _____[4] rules—don't be _____[5], don't eat in class, ... My dad says I can't play basketball after school because I _____[6] do my homework. I can play only on weekends. After dinner, I can't _____[7] either. I must _____[8] a book before I can watch TV. But I have to go to bed _____[9] 10:00. Rules, rules, rules ! It's _____[10]! What can I do, Dr. Know?

Molly Brown, New York

Dear Molly,

I know how you _____[11]. People always tell us, "Don't do this!" or "You can't do that!" But think about it, Molly. There are a lot of things you can do. You can play basketball on weekends. You can watch TV after you read a book. Parents and schools are sometimes _____[12], but _____[13], they make rules to help us. We have to _____[14] them.

Good _____[15]!

Dr. Know

Success does not consist in never making mistakes but in never making the same one a second time.

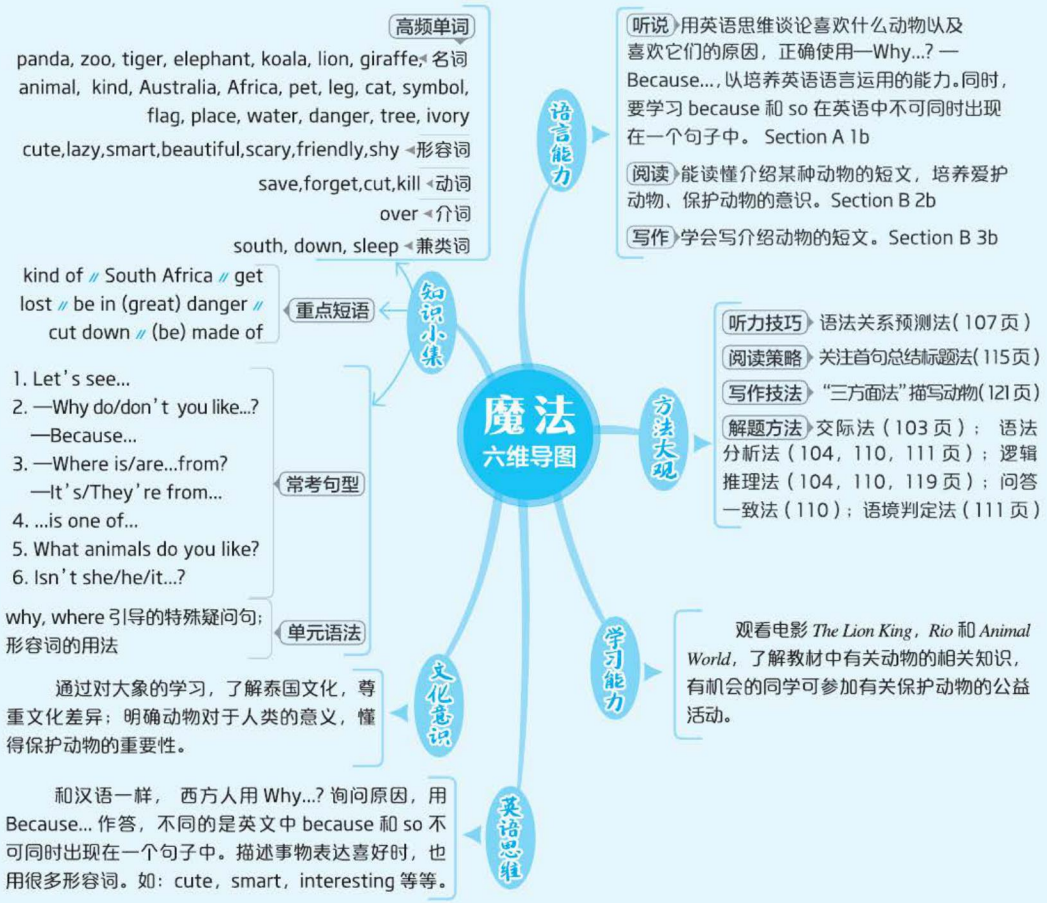
成功并不在于从不犯错，而在于不重蹈覆辙。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 Why do you like pandas?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1.zoo *n.* 动物园 →in the zoo 在动物园
2.kind *n.* 种类 →all kinds of 各种各样的
3.Australia *n.* 澳大利亚
→ Australian *adj.* 澳大利亚的；*n.* 澳大利亚人
4.south *adj.* 南方的 *n.* 南；南方
→southern *adj.* 南方的 →in the south 在南方
5.elephant *n.* 大象 →an elephant 一头大象
6.animal *n.* 动物 →an animal 一只动物
7.beautiful *adj.* 美丽的；美好的 →pretty（近义词）
8.panda *n.* 熊猫
9.tiger *n.* 老虎
10.lion *n.* 狮子
11.giraffe *n.* 长颈鹿
12.cute *adj.* 可爱的；机灵的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

13.smart *adj.* 聪明的
14.lazy *adj.* 懒散的；懒惰的
15.Africa *n.* 非洲 →African *adj.* 非洲的 *n.* 非洲人
16.pet *n.* 宠物 →a pet dog 一只宠物狗
17.leg *n.* 腿 →arm（对应词）
18.cat *n.* 猫
19.sleep *v.& n.* 睡觉 →sleepy *adj.* 瞌睡的 →go to sleep 入睡

‖必背短语

20.kind of 稍微；有点儿
21.South Africa 南非
22.be from/come from 来自
23.all day=the whole day 整天

‖必背句子

24.—Why do you want to see them?
你为什么想要去看它们?
—Because they are interesting.
因为它们有趣。
25.—Why don't you like the cat?
你为什么不喜欢那只猫?
—Well, **because** she's kind of boring.
哦，因为她有点儿令人厌烦。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus-3c)

‖必背句子 & 语法

1.But **I like** tigers a **lot**.
但是我非常喜欢老虎。
2.Is it black and white?
它是黑白相间的吗？
3.—Why do you like pandas?
你为什么喜欢熊猫?
—Because they're kind of interesting.
因为它们有点儿有趣。

Period 3 Section B (1a-1d)

‖必背单词

1.friendly *adj.* 友好的 →friend *n.* 朋友
2.shy *adj.* 羞怯的；腼腆的 →shyness *n.* 害羞

‖必背句子

3. —What animals do you like?
你喜欢什么动物?
—I like dogs **because** they're friendly and smart.
我喜欢狗，因为它们既友好又聪明。

Period 4 Section B (2a-2c)

‖必背单词

1. danger *n.* 危险 →dangerous *adj.* 危险的
2. cut *v.* 砍；切 →cutting（现在分词）
3. over *prep.* 超过；多于；在……上方 →more than（同义词）
4. save *v.* 救；救助 →save one's life 救某人的命
5. flag *n.* 旗帜 →a red flag 一面红旗
6. forget *v.* 忘记；遗忘 →forget to do sth. 忘记去做某事 →forget doing sth. 忘记做过某事
7. place *n.* 地点；位置 →in one place 在一个地方
8. water *n.* 水 →drink water 喝水
9. down *adv.*（坐、躺、倒）下
prep. 向下；沿着 →up（反义词）→sit down 坐下
10. tree *n.* 树 →in/on the tree 在树上
11. kill *v.* 杀死；弄死

‖必背短语

12. get lost 迷路
13. be in（great）danger 处于（极大）危险之中
14. cut down 砍倒
15.（be）made of 由……制成的

‖必背句子

16. The elephant is **one of** Thailand's symbols.
大象是泰国的象征之一。

Period 5 Section B (3a-Self Check)

‖必背句子

Isn't she **beautiful**?
难道她不美丽吗?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）



I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goals: Describe animals; Express preferences
语言目标：描述动物；表达喜好

1a Match the words with the animals in the picture. 将单词与图片中的动物相匹配。

1.tiger/ˈtaɪgə(r)/ ____a____ 老虎____a____

2.elephant/ˈelɪfənt/① _____ 大象_____

3.koala /kəʊˈɑːlə/_____ 树袋熊_____

4.panda/ˈpændə/_____ 熊猫_____

5.lion/ˈlaɪən/_____ 狮子_____

6.giraffe/dʒəˈrɑːf/,/dʒəˈræf/_____ 长颈鹿_____

WELCOME TO THE ZOO/zuː/ 欢迎光临动物园

—Let's② see the pandas first④. ②They're my favorite animals /ˈænɪmlz/. 咱们先看大熊猫吧。它们是我最喜欢的动物。

—Why? 为什么?

—Because⑤ they're very cute/kjuːt/. 因为它们非常可爱。

MAP 地图

1b Listen and check(√)the animals you hear in 1a. 听录音，用“√”在 1a 中勾出你听到的动物。

1c Practice the conversation with your partner. Then make conversations about the other animals in 1a. Use the words in the box. 与你的伙伴练习对话。然后就 1a 中的其他动物编对话。使用方框中的单词。



cute 可爱的　interesting 有趣的　fun 有趣的　smart/smɑː(r)t/ 聪明的
lazy/ˈleɪzi/ 懒惰的　beautiful/ˈbjuːtɪfl/ 美丽的

A:Let's see the lions. A: 咱们去看狮子吧。

B:Why do you want to see them? B: 你为什么想要去看它们?

A:Because they're interesting. A: 因为它们有趣。

2a Listen and write the animals you hear. Draw a line from the animals to the description words and the countries they are from. 听录音，写出你听到的动物。把动物与描述性词汇以及它们来自哪个国家连线。



Animals 动物	Description words 描述性词汇	Countries 国家
1._____	really scary/ˈskeəri/,/ˈskeri/ 真的很吓人	Australia/ɒˈstreɪliə/ 澳大利亚
2._____	kind/kaɪnd/ of⑥ interesting 有点趣味	South/saʊθ/⑦ Africa/ˈæfrɪkə/⑧南非
3._____	very cute 非常可爱	China 中国

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2b Listen again. Complete the conversation with the words in 2a.

再听一遍录音。用 2a 中的词汇完成对话。

Julie/ˈdʒuːli/**:**Let's see the _____. 咱们去看_____吧。

John: Why do you like them? 你为什么喜欢它们?

Julie: Because they're _____interesting. 因为它们_____趣味。

John: Where are they from⑩? ⑨它们来自哪里?

Julie: They're from _____. 它们来自_____。

2c Talk about the other two animals in 2a with a partner. Do John and Julie like them? Do you like them? Why or why not? 与一个伙伴讨论 2a 中的其他两个动物。约翰和朱莉喜欢它们吗? 你喜欢它们吗? 为什么喜欢或为什么不喜欢?

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

Jenny: Your dog is really cute, Peter! 你的狗的确可爱，彼得!

Peter: He's my new pet/pet/, Dingding. He's very smart. 他是我的新宠物，叮叮。他非常聪明。

课文朗读 2d

Jenny: Really? What can he do? 真的吗? 他会做什么?

Peter: He can walk on two legs/legz/. He can dance, too. 他（指"狗"）会用两条腿走路。他也会跳舞。

Jenny: Wow! 哇!

Peter: Does your family have a pet? 你家里有宠物吗?

Jenny: My mom has a big cat/kæt/, but I don't like her. 我妈妈有一只大猫，但是我不喜欢她。

Peter: Why don't you like the cat? ⑪你为什么不喜欢那只猫?

Jenny: Well, because she's kind of boring. She sleeps/sliːps/⑫ all day, and her name is Lazy. 哦，因为她有点儿令人厌烦。她整天睡觉，并且她的名字叫"懒妞"。

Peter: Haha, then that's a good name for her! 哈哈，那么对她来说那是一个好名字!

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

可数名词，且以元音音素/e/开头，故用 an elephant 表示"一头大象"。

★elephant

① **elephant** /ˈelɪfənt/ *n.* 大象

e.g.Is this an elephant?
这是一头大象吗?

敲黑板 易错点，牢记!

It's not kind to let the elephants draw pictures with their noses.
让大象用鼻子作画是不友善的。

素养行动：大象是泰国文化的核心元素，它们是力量(strength)和优雅(elegance)的象征，

核心素养之文化意识

了解大象，尊重中外文化

大象是泰国(Thailand)的象征(symbol)，它在泰国人的心目中占有极为重要的地位——泰国的历史、文化、宗教、经济等都与大象有密切的联系。在古代，泰国人作战时，大象就如同战马一样。战士们以大象为坐

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

骑冲锋陷阵，君主则以白象作为御骑以增神威。在宗教方面，泰国以佛教(Buddhism)为国教，相传佛祖释迦牟尼是在其母亲梦见白象后诞生，因而白象成为泰国的镇国瑞兽，象征着昌盛、权力和福气。这便是白象在泰国地位特殊，被视为珍贵之物的缘由。

此时你对大象的了解是不是又多了一些呢？

素养 行动结果：了解中外文化，学会尊重文化。

★Let's see the pandas first.

②交际用语

"Let's +动词短语. "意为"咱们……吧"。它是以 Let's 开头的祈使句，是提建议的句型。Let's 是 Let us 的缩写，其后接动词原形作宾语补足语。

e.g.—What a sunny day! Let's go out for a picnic.

多么阳光明媚的日子啊！咱们出去野餐吧。

—Good idea. 好主意。/Sorry, I have to finish my homework first. 对不起，我必须先完成我的家庭作业。

常用的肯定答语有"OK./All right./Good idea."；否定答语可用"Sorry, I..."。

考题在线 1 Let's _____ home. It's late now. [柳州]

A. go　　B. going　　C. to go

考题在线 2 —Let's go to the movies after the test.

—_____ [南充]

A. Not at all.　　B. Never mind.

C. It doesn't matter.　　D. Good idea.

点拨:用交际法解题。Not at all. 意为"别客气。"；Never mind. 意为"没关系。"；It doesn't matter. 意为"没关系。"；Good idea. 意为"好主意。"。上句"测试后让我们去看电影吧。"表示建议，四个选项中只有 D 项可作为对其的回答，表示同意、支持对方的建议。

③let's 让我们

辨析: let's 与 let us

let's 是 let us 的缩写，一般情况下，let's 与 let us 都意为"让我们"，但二者也有区别：

let's	包括说话者和对方在内，用来提出建议，其反意疑问句用 shall we。	Let's go to school, shall we？ 让我们去上学吧，好吗？
let us	不包括对方在内，用来请求允许，其反意疑问句用 will you。	Let us go, will you？ 让我们走吧，可以吗？（请求对方让我们走，而不是我们和对方一起走）

敲黑板 易错点，牢记！

图解助记：let's 与 let us

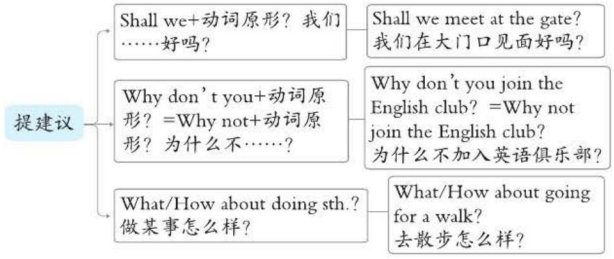


包括此人



不包括此人

拓展：提建议的句型



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 3 —_____fresh air it is now!

—Yes._____go out for a walk. [安顺]

A. How ; Let　　B. What a; Let's

C. What ; Let's　　D. How; Let us

点拨:第一句感叹部分是 fresh air，适合“What+*adj.* + 不可数名词”句式；第二空所在句是一种建议，由于空气清新，所以建议出去散步，故用 let's。

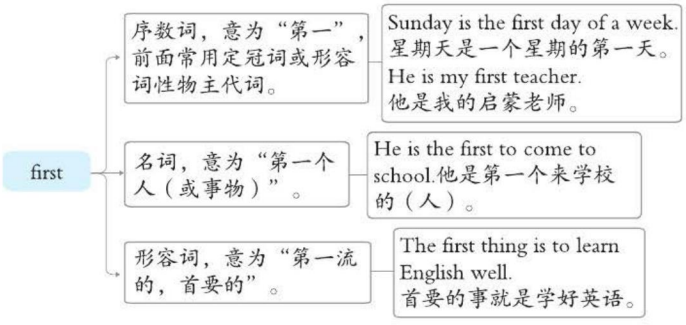
first 此处用作副词，在句中作状语，可置于句尾或句首。

④ **first** /fɜːst/ *adv.* 首先；最初

e.g. Let's buy a watch phone first. 咱们先买一个电话手表吧。

First, you must finish your homework. 首先，你必须完成你的家庭作业。

拓展：first 的其他用法：



★one 与 first 的区别
- one 一；一个
- first 首先；最初；第一

考题在线 4 David Beckham has _____children. Brooklyn Beckham is his_____son.

A. fourth; first　　B. four; one　　C. four; first　　D. fourth; one

点拨:用语法分析法解题。第一空填基数词，指“四个孩子”；第二空填序数词，指“他的第一个孩子”。

★Because they're very cute.

⑤ **because** /bɪˈkɒz/ *conj.* 因为

★because 用作连词，常用于引导原因状语从句，或回答 why 引导的特殊疑问句。

e.g. They believe Huawei because it is one of the biggest smartphone makers in the world.

他们相信华为，是因为它是世界上最大的智能手机制造商之一。

—Why do you like dogs？你为什么喜欢狗?

—Because they are friendly and clever. 因为它们既友好又聪明。

考题在线 5 —I like rain _____ it makes me feel cool and relaxed.

—So do I. [济南]

A. or　　B. so　　C. but　　D. because

点拨:用逻辑推理法解题。“它让我感觉凉爽和放松”和“我喜欢雨”是因果关系，故用 because 表示原因。

★汉语中常用“因为……所以……”表示因果关系，而英语中 because 和 so 不能同时在一个句子中使用，只能用其一。

e.g. Because he is ill, he can't go to school today.=He is ill，so he can't go to school today.

因为他生病了，所以今天不能去上学。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 _____his right hand was hurt, _____he wrote slowly. [凉山]

A. Because; so B. Because; / C. Although; but D. Although; /

e.g.They didn't go to the museum because of the rain.=They didn't go to the museum because it rained. 因为下雨他们没去博物馆。

考题在线 7 Many people like pandas_____they are cute. [济南改编]

A.because of B. if C. while D. because

★辨析：because 与 because of 两者都意为"因为"，区别在于前者跟从句，后者跟名词（短语）或代词。

★kind of interesting

⑥ **kind of 有点儿；稍微**

★kind of=a little=a bit=a little bit，均意为"有点儿"。

e.g.The thriller is kind of scary. 这部惊险小说有几分恐怖。

I kind of love this TV show. 我有几分喜欢这个电视节目。

She is kind of shy.=She is a little/a bit/a little bit shy. 她有点儿害羞。

English is a kind of language. 英语是一种语言。

That shop sells different kinds of pens. 那家商店出售不同种类的钢笔。

You can find all kinds of books in that library. 在那个图书馆你能找到各种各样的书。

My teacher is kind to me. 我的老师对我是友好的。

It's very kind of you to help me. 你能帮我真是太好了。

知识微课

★kind 的不同用法

- n. 种类
  - a kind of 一种
  - different kinds of 不同种类的
  - all kinds of 各种各样的
- adj. 慈祥的；友好的；宽容的
  - be kind to sb. 对某人是友好的

★South Africa

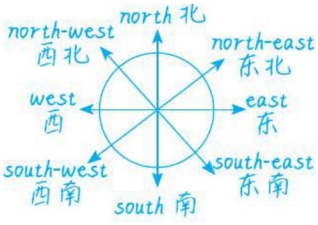
⑦ **south** /saʊθ/ *adj.* **南方的；南部的**

e.g.South China 华南 South America 南美洲 the South Pole 南极

作形容词，后接名词

拓展：south 还可作方位名词，意为"南；南方；南部"。

in the south 在南部 / 南方	He lives in the south. 他居住在南方。
in the south of... 在……的南部	Hainan is in the south of China. 海南在中国的南部。



⑧ **Africa** /ˈæfrɪkə/ *n.* **非洲**

专有名词，首字母大写，且其前不加 the

e.g.The lion is from Africa, and it is an African lion. 这只狮子来自非洲，它是一只非洲狮子。

拓展：【重点】类似的词还有：

America 美国	American 美国人	American 美国的
Russia 俄罗斯	Russian 俄罗斯人	Russian 俄罗斯的
Canada 加拿大	Canadian 加拿大人	Canadian 加拿大的
Australia 澳大利亚	Australian 澳大利亚人	Australian 澳大利亚的

★七大洲的英文表达

- Asia 亚洲
- Europe 欧洲
- North America 北美洲
- South America 南美洲
- Oceania 大洋洲
- Antarctica 南极洲
- Africa 非洲

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Where are they from?

⑨交际用语【重点】

本句是where引导的特殊疑问句，其构成为“Where+be+主语+from?”，用来询问主语来自何处，回答时用“主语+be+from+表示国家、城市等的地点名词或直接回答地点.”。

e.g.—Where is Jack from? 杰克来自哪里?

—He's from Australia. /Australia. 他来自澳大利亚。/ 澳大利亚。

⑩ **be from** 意为“从……来；来自……”，其同义短语为come from。

e.g. Mo Yan is from Shandong and one of his friends comes from Shandong, too. 莫言来自山东，他的一个朋友也来自山东。

考题在线8 根据所给汉语提示完成句子。

知识源于质疑。 [武威、白银]

Knowledge _____ _____ questioning.

考题在线9 —Can you guess _____?

—The south. She prefers (更喜欢)rice to noodles.

A. how old she is　　B. what she does

C. where she's from　　D. who she is

He is truly wise who gains wisdom from another's mishap.
善于从别人的挫折中得到教益的人，才是真正的聪明人。

★Why don't you like the cat?

⑪交际用语

Why don't you...? 意为“你为什么不……呢?”用于询问原因，答语用“Because...”。

e.g.—Why don't you like playing outside?

你为什么不喜欢到外边玩呢?

—Because I want to be quiet. 因为我想安静。

拓展: Why don't you...? 还可以表示向对方提出建议，意为“为什么不……?”相当于“Why not...?”后接动词原形。回答这种建议不用because，而是用Sounds good./Good idea./Great. 等。

e.g.—Why don't you /Why not buy a new bag?

为什么不买一个新包呢?

—Good idea. 好主意。

Why don't you...?
- 询问原因，用Because...回答。
- 表示建议，用Good idea!等回答。

★She sleeps all day, and her name is Lazy.

⑫ **sleep**/sli:p/ *v.& n.* 睡觉

e.g. He is sleeping. 他正在睡觉。

Let's go to sleep now. 现在让我们去睡觉吧。

- 用作不及物动词，强调睡眠的持续状态。
- 用作不可数名词，常用于短语go to sleep。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

辨析：sleep, go to sleep 与 go to bed

睡觉
- sleep意为“睡觉”，指睡觉、睡着的全过程，强调睡眠的持续状态。 — We sleep for nine hours every day. 我们每天睡9小时的觉。
- go to sleep指“入睡”，强调“入睡”这个动作，特指进入睡眠状态。 — I can't go to sleep soon. 我不能很快入睡。
- go to bed意为“上床睡觉”，强调上床睡觉这一动作，但不一定睡着，与get up相对。 — He usually goes to bed at ten o'clock.他通常在10点钟上床睡觉。

拓展：① asleep *adj.* 睡着的（只作表语） ② sleepy *adj.* 困倦的

e.g. The boy is asleep. 男孩睡着了。

I feel sleepy now because I watched *Wolf Warrior Ⅱ* last night. 我现在觉得困倦是因为昨天晚上我看《战狼2》了。

速记小筏：

① sleep（v. 睡觉）
↓对应词
wake（v. 唤醒）
asleep（adj. 睡着的）
↓反义词
awake（adj. 醒着的）

② feel sleepy 感到困倦
→go to bed 上床睡觉
→fall asleep/ go to sleep 入睡
→be asleep 睡着（的状态）
→wake up 醒来
→be awake 醒着的

考题在线答案 1. A 2. D 3. C 4. C 5. D 6. B 7. D 8. is from/comes from 9. C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力20分

（答案见299页）

听力技巧

语法关系预测法（我们可以通过语法关系预测说话的内容。人们说话时所用的句型各异，所表明的关系不一，有表示比较的、条件的，有表示因果的，等等。当我们听到 Why...？时，可预测到是询问原因；听到 ...from some place 时，可预测到所描述的是地点；听到诸如 They're interesting/ smart/lazy/scary... 时，可预测到所说的是人或物的特征；……）

课文听力1b

听力过程

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

听第一段对话，选择正确答案。

1.What are the girl's favorite animals?

A. Tigers. B. Pandas. C. Lions.

听第二段对话，选择正确答案。

2.Why does the boy want to see the giraffes?

A. They're beautiful.

B. They're cute.

C. They're interesting.

听第三段对话，选择正确答案。

3.What does the girl think of the koalas?

A. Beautiful. B. Interesting.

C. Exciting.

课文听力2a

二、听 2a，完成表格。

Name	Likes/Dislikes	Reason
Julie	likes pandas	They're **4.**_____, and they're from China.
	doesn't like lions	They're **5.**_____, and they're from South Africa.
John	likes koalas	They're very cute and they're from **6.**_____.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见299页)

一、根据句意及首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. Dolphins are very s_____. They can learn something from people.
2. —Where is Hainan?
   —It's in the s_____ of China.
3. Do you know where _____(非洲) is?
4. My brother s_____ for eight hours every night. It's good for his health.
5. The big _____(大象) come from South Africa.

二、单项选择

6. Mr. Li is kind _____ us. But sometimes he is kind _____ serious(严肃的).
   A. to; of B. to; to C. of; to D. of; of
7. _____ these tigers _____ from?
   A. Where; are B. Where; come
   C. Where are; / D. Where does; come
8. — _____see the giraffes in the zoo.
   —Great.
   A. Let B. Let we C. Let's D. Let I
9. I always get up early on weekdays, _____I'm afraid I will be late for school. [黄石]
   A. because B. so C. though D. then
10. You look so _____. Did you see anything _____?
    A. scary; scared B. scared; scary
    C. scare; scary D. scare; scared

三、按要求完成句子

11. How about seeing the elephants?(改为同义句)
    _____ see the elephants.
12. The dolphin is a little clever.(改为同义句)
    The dolphin is _____ _____ clever.
13. Where are these elephants from?(同义句转换)
    Where _____ these elephants _____ _____?
14. I like pandas <u>because they are interesting</u>.(对画线部分提问)
    _____ _____ _____ like pandas?
15. I don't ride a shared bike <u>because there's no one here</u>.(对画线部分提问)
    _____ _____ _____ _____ a shared bike?

Period 2 Section A(Grammar Focus-3c)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Why do you like pandas? 你为什么喜欢熊猫?	Because they're kind of interesting. 因为它们有点儿有趣。
Why does John like koalas? 约翰为什么喜欢树袋熊?	Because they're very cute. 因为它们非常可爱。
Why don't you like tigers? 你为什么不喜欢老虎?	Because they're really scary. 因为它们真的很吓人。
Where are lions from? 狮子来自哪里?	They're from South Africa. 它们来自南非。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3a Fill in the blanks with the words from the box. Then practice the conversation. 用方框内的词汇填空。然后练习对话。

because 因为	they're 它们是	do(助动词)	don't(助动词)
cool 酷的	like 喜欢	why 为什么	where 哪里

A:_____ are lions from? 狮子来自_____?

B:_____ from South Africa. Do you _____ lions?_____来自南非。你_____狮子吗?

A:No, I don't. 不，我不喜欢。

B:Why _____ you like lions? 为什么你_____喜欢狮子?

A:Because they're really scary. But I like giraffes. 因为它们真的很吓人。但是我喜欢长颈鹿。

B:Really?_____ do you like giraffes? 真的吗? 你_____喜欢长颈鹿?

A:Well, _____ they're kind of interesting. Do you like pandas?

哦，_____它们有点儿有趣。你喜欢熊猫吗?

B:Yes, I do. But I like tigers a lot. 是的，我喜欢。但是我非常喜欢老虎。

A:Tigers? Why _____ you like tigers? 老虎? 为什么你_____喜欢老虎?

B:They're really _____! 它们真的很_____!

3b Write names of animals in the blanks to make sentences that are true for you. 在空白处写出动物的名字，根据你的真实情况造句。

I like _____ because they're cute. 我喜欢_____因为它们可爱。

I like_____ because they're smart. 我喜欢_____因为它们聪明。

I don't like_____ because they're lazy. 我不喜欢_____因为它们懒惰。

I like_____ because they're interesting. 我喜欢_____因为它们有趣。

3c Think of an animal. Ask and answer questions with your partner to guess each other's animal. 想出一种动物。与你的伙伴提问并回答问题，猜一下彼此的动物。

A:Is the animal big? 这种动物是大的吗?

B:Yes, it is. 是的，它是。

A:Where's the animal from? 这种动物来自哪里?

B:It's from China. 它来自中国。

A:Is it black and white? 它是黑白相间的吗?

B:Yes, it is. 是的，它是。

A:It's a panda! 它是熊猫!

B:Yes, you're right! 是的，你说得没错!

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★But I like tigers a lot.

a lot 很；非常

e.g. It rains a lot in summer. 夏天雨水多。 修饰动词

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

- a lot
  - 修饰动词
  - 修饰形容词/副词比较级
  - 作动词宾语
- a lot of + 可数名词复数/不可数名词
- a lot of=lots of

He is feeling a lot better today. 他今天感觉好多了。

She knows a lot about America. 她知道很多有关美国的情况。

修饰形容词比较级

名词短语，意为“许多，大量”

When he chats with his friends, he likes to use a lot of/lots of emojis. 当他和朋友聊天时，他喜欢用很多表情符号。

考题在线 He always thinks_____.

A. a lot of　　B. lots of　　C. a lot　　D. a lots of

点拨：用语法分析法解题。a lot of和lots of同义，修饰名词；a lot修饰动词。

考题在线答案 C

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

why, where 引导的特殊疑问句

考点1 why 引导的特殊疑问句

句法分析：why 引导的特殊疑问句，意为“为什么……？”，用来询问某事的原因。

考向1：一般用法：常用于询问原因，回答时常用because。

e.g.—Why does he look worried?

他为什么看起来着急?

—Because he lost his key.

因为他把钥匙丢了。

考题在线1 —_____ do you put a lot of snakes into the forest?

—To protect the ecosystem(保护生态系统).[宜昌]

A. Why　　B. Which　　C. How　　D. When

点拨：用逻辑推理法解题。由答语“为了保护生态系统”可知，上句询问在森林里放蛇的原因，要用why引导疑问句。

考向2：特殊用法：Why don't you + 动词原形 + 其他? 常用来提出建议或劝告，表示“为什么不……？”，相当于“Why not + 动词原形 + 其他？”。

e.g.—Why don't you play basketball?

=Why not play basketball?

为什么不打篮球呢?

—That sounds good. 那听起来不错。

考题在线2 —I feel upset because I am too heavy.

— _____do more exercise to lose some weight? [郴州]

A. Why don't　　B. Why not　　C. Why not to

考题在线3 —Why not hold a Chinese Poetry Competition (诗歌比赛) to welcome our motherland's 70th birthday?

— _____. Let's make a plan together in our group. 【导学号: 8811889】[南通]

A. That's all right　　B. Yes, please

C. Good idea　　D. Never mind

点拨：用问答一致法解题。由问句“为什么不举办一个中国诗歌比赛来迎接我们祖国的七十华诞呢?”可知，表示赞同的“Good idea.”可作为答语。

考点2 where 引导的特殊疑问句

考向：where 是疑问副词，意为“哪儿”，引导的特殊疑问句，用来提问地点。回答时要根据具体情况回答。

e.g.—Where are the tigers from?

老虎来自哪里?

—They are from China. 它们来自中国。

—Where does your friend like to go?

你的朋友喜欢去哪里?

—He likes to go to the Disneyland in Shanghai.

他喜欢去上海的迪士尼乐园。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 4 — Could you please tell me _____ I can buy some stamps?

—Yes. There is a post office on the Center Street. [益阳]

A why B. where C. when

拓展：其他疑问词（组）

疑问词（组）	询问对象	含义
who	句子的主语或宾语	谁
how	方式、身体情况	怎样、如何
when/what time	时间	什么时候、何时
how old	年龄	多大年龄
how much	价格或数量	多少（钱）

形容词的用法

形容词修饰名词，用以说明事物或人的性质或特征，是英语中最常用的词性之一，通常在句中作定语、表语等。

考向 1：形容词作定语，用于修饰名词或代词 one，ones 等，位于名词或代词之前，但若修饰不定代词要放在不定代词之后。

e.g. These are interesting books. 这些是有趣的书。

adj.

I want some big ones. 我想要些大的。

adj.

There is something interesting in today's

adj.

newspaper. 今天的报纸上有有趣的内容。

考题在线 5 —There's _____ in the city. Why not have a picnic in the countryside?

—Great. Daweishan Mountains might be a good choice. [长沙]

A. interesting something

B. nothing interesting

C. anything interesting

方法真题练

点拨：用语法分析法及语境判定法解题。形容词修饰不定代词时要放在不定代词之后，故排除 A 项；由后句的建议去乡下以及答语“太棒了，大围山也许是个很好的选择。”可知空格所在句意为“在城市里没有有趣的事物。”。

考向 2：形容词作表语，放在连系动词 (be/look/feel/sound 等) 后，构成系表结构，即“连系动词＋表语”，说明主语怎么样。

e.g. You look great today.

你今天看起来很棒。

She is so friendly. 她是如此友善。

考题在线 6 —How about the fruit salad?

— Yummy! It tastes very _____. By the way, who made it? [泰州]

A. good B. bad

C. well D.badly

考向 3：【易错点】一些形容词和定冠词 the 连用，表示一类人或事物；另外，形容词前可用 too, very, a little 等表示程度的词修饰。

e.g. He often helps the old and spreads positive energy. 他经常帮助老人、传播正能量。

You are too lazy. 你太懒了。

考题在线 7 He thinks _____ are more interested in watching *The Reader* on CCTV.

A. young B. little

C. the young D. the little

点拨：“the+形容词”表示一类人，此处指“年轻人”。

考题在线答案 1.A 2.B 3.C 4.B 5.B 6.A 7.C

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

☞（答案见299页）

一、单项选择

1. —Why are you late for class?

—_____I didn't catch the bus.

A.Because B. And

C. So D. But

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. —_____do you like *Wolf Warrior Ⅱ*(《战狼2》)?
—Because it's exciting. [绥化]
A. Why B. What
C. How

3. —I feel really tired.
—_____ [广州]
A.Lucky you!
B.You'd better work harder.
C.Congratulations!
D.Why not go and have a rest?

4.Your brother is a_____boy. He never helps your mother with the housework(家务劳动).
A. good B. shy
C. cute D. lazy

5. —_____?
—South Africa.
A.Do you like koalas
B.Why do you like it
C.Is the animal from China
D.Where is the animal from

二、用适当的疑问词填空，完成对话

6. —_____are you today?
—I am very well.

7. —_____is that boy?
—The boy in blue? He is Li Lei.

8. —_____ don't you like eating French fries?
—Because they are not healthy.

9. —_____are my keys?
—They are on the desk.

10.—_____is in your bag?
—An English book.

Period 3 Section B(1a–1d)

I. 课文原文、译文

1a Match the description words with the animals. You can use some words more than once. 将描述性词汇和动物名称相匹配。有些词可用不止一次。

1.smart__d__ 聪明的__d__
2.friendly/ˈfrendli/① _____ 友好的_____
3.beautiful_____ 美丽的_____
4.cute_____ 可爱的_____
5.lazy_____ 懒惰的_____
6.scary_____ 吓人的_____
7.small② _____ 小的_____
8.shy/ʃaɪ/_____ 羞怯的_____

课文听力 1b

1b Listen and circle the description words you hear in 1a. 听录音，在1a中圈出你听到的描述性词汇。

1c Listen again. What words do they use to describe the animals? Fill in the chart. 再听一遍录音。他们用什么词汇来描述这些动物？填写在表格中。

Animals 动物	Mary's words 玛丽的词汇	Tony's words 托尼的词汇
elephants 大象		
pandas 熊猫		

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

1d **Talk about the animals you know with your partner.** 与你的伙伴谈论你所知道的动物。

A:What animals do you like? 你喜欢什么动物?

B:I like elephants. 我喜欢大象。

A:Why? 为什么?

B:Because they're cute. What animals do you like? 因为它们可爱。你喜欢什么动物?

A:I like dogs because they're friendly and smart. 我喜欢狗，因为它们既友好又聪明。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见299页)

听力过程

课文听力 1b

听 1b，选择正确答案

1. The girl likes the elephants because they're ____.
   A. cute　　B. smart　　C. beautiful
2. The boy thinks the elephants are_____.
   A. interesting　　B. smart
   C. lazy
3. Why does the boy want to see the pandas?
   A. They're kind of cute.
   B. They're interesting.
   C. They're really beautiful.
4. What does the girl think of the pandas?
   A. Interesting and kind of shy.
   B. Beautiful and kind of lazy.
   C. Beautiful and kind of shy.
5. Where are the pandas?
   A. Far from the koalas.
   B. Near the koalas.
   C. Behind the elephants.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点应用　　·考点批注

★friendly

① **friendly** /ˈfrendli/ *adj.* 友好的

e.g. There is a friendly smile on her face.

她脸上露出亲切的微笑。

She is friendly to everybody.=She is kind to everybody.

她对所有的人都友好。

He is friendly with every student in his class.

他和他班上的每一名学生关系都很好。

拓展：friendly 是由名词 friend+-ly 构成的形容词，而不是副词，类似的形容词还有：

love+-ly ——lovely 美丽的

brother+-ly ——brotherly 兄弟般的

week+-ly ——weekly 每周的

考题在线 根据所给汉语意思，完成下列英文句子。

正如习近平所说，人类应当友好对待世界不同的文化。 [陕西]

As Xi Jinping said, humans should _____ to different cultures of the world.

★friendly 用作形容词，在句中可作表语或定语。be friendly to sb. 意为"对某人友好"，相当于 be kind to sb.；be friendly with sb. 意为"和某人关系好"。

★助记：

friend *n.* 朋友

friendly *adj.* 友好的

unfriendly *adj.* 不友好的

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

small

② **small** /smɔːl/ *adj.* 小的

e.g. The koala is very small. 那只树袋熊非常小。

He lives in a small house. 他住在一所小房子里。

辨析：small，little 与 young



“小”

- small可指物体形状小。 → It is a small house. 那是一所小房子。
- little带有一定的感情色彩，有“可爱”之意。 → My cousin is a little boy. 我的表弟是个小男孩。
- young指年龄上的小，意为“年轻的”。 → As a young man, he is very polite to the old people. 作为一位年轻人，他对老人很有礼貌。

考题在线答案 be friendly/nice/kind

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

2a **Check(√)the animals that you think are in great danger.** 在你认为处于极大危险中的动物前打“√”。

_____lions	_____狮子	_____giraffes	_____长颈鹿
_____elephants	_____大象	_____koalas	_____树袋熊
_____pandas	_____熊猫	_____tigers	_____老虎

2b **Read this website article and check(√)the best title for it.** 读这篇网站文章，并在最适合这篇文章的标题前打“√”。

_____What Is an Elephant?	_____大象是什么?
_____Come to Thailand	_____来到泰国
_____Let's Save/seɪv/ the Elephants	_____让我们拯救大象
_____Elephants Are Good Pets	_____大象是很好的宠物

课文朗读2b

Hello. We are students from Thailand/ˈtaɪlænd/①, and we want to save② the elephants.The elephant is one of③ Thailand's symbols /ˈsɪmblz/.Our first flag/flæg/ had a white elephant on it. This is a symbol of good luck.

大家好。我们是来自泰国的学生，我们想要拯救大象。大象是泰国的象征之一。我们的第一面国旗上就有一头白象。这是好运的象征。

Elephants are smart animals. They can play soccer or music. They can also draw very well. People say that “an elephant never forgets/fə(r)ˈgets/④”.Elephants can walk for a long time⑤ and

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

never get lost ⑥.They can also remember places /ˈpleɪsɪz/ with food and water/ˈwɔːtə/, /ˈwɑːtər/ ⑦. This helps them to live.

大象是聪明的动物。它们能踢足球或演奏音乐，它们也能画得很好。人们说“大象从来不会忘记”。大象能够长时间行走而且从不迷路。它们也能记住有食物和水的地方。这帮助它们生存。

But elephants are in great danger/ˈdeɪndʒə(r)/ ⑧.People cut/kʌt/ ⑨ down/daʊn/ many trees/triːz/ so elephants are losing their homes. People also kill/kɪl/ elephants for their ivory/ˈaɪvəri/. Today there are only about 3,000 elephants (over/ˈəʊvə(r)/ ⑩ 100,000 before).We must save the trees and not buy things made of ⑪ ivory. Remember that March 13th is Thai/taɪ/ Elephant Day.

但是大象面临巨大的危险。人们砍伐许多树，因此大象正在失去它们的家园。为了象牙人们还去猎杀大象。现在大约只有三千头大象（以前超过十万头）。我们必须拯救树木，拒买象牙制品。记住三月十三号是“泰国大象节”。

2c Read the article again and complete the mind map. 再次阅读这篇文章并且完成这幅思维导图。

ELEPHANTS 大象

Importance in Thailand 在泰国的重要性

·first flag had_____ 第一面国旗有_____　　·symbol of_____ _____的象征

Facts and figures 实际情况和数字

·people _____ many trees 人们_____许多树

·people kill them for_____人们杀它们为了_____

·today there are _____(over _____ before) 现在有_____（以前超过_____）

Abilities 技能

·can play_____ 能玩_____　　·can also _____ well 也能_____好

·can _____ places with food and water 能_____有食物和水的地方

How to save them 怎样拯救它们

·don't cut down so many_____不砍掉如此多的_____

·don't _____ things made of ivory 不_____象牙做的东西

·_____is Thai Elephant Day_____是“泰国大象节”

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 20分

☞（答案见299页）

阅读策略

关注首句总结标题法（阅读时我们会遇到这样的文章，每个自然段都在讲述一个小主题，并且首句往往是对该段的概括。这些首句所概括的小主题都和某一事物或观点相关，把它们总结到一起就可以提炼出全文的主题，即主旨大意，也就是文章的标题。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What's the best title for the passage? （主旨大意题）

A. What Is an Elephant?

B. Come to Thailand

C. Elephants Are Good Pets

D. Let's Save the Elephants

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. What's the first paragraph mainly about? （综合归纳题）

A. The importance of elephants in Thailand.

B. Where elephants are from.

C. The symbol of good luck.

D. Thailand's flag.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. What's the title of the second paragraph?

（综合归纳题）

A. Let's help elephants.

B. Elephants are smart animals.

C. Elephants can play soccer or music.

D. They want to live.

4. The third paragraph tells us _____.

（综合归纳题）

A. elephants are in great danger

B. elephants have new homes

C. people kill elephants for meat

D. people don't like elephants

5. What can people do to save elephants?

（细节理解题）

A. They can cut down trees.

B. They can sell things made of ivory.

C. They can save trees and they can't kill them for ivory.

D. They can plant trees and buy things made of ivory.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★ save one's life 意为"救某人的命"。



save a child from drowning 救溺水的小孩



save money 存钱



save water 节约用水

★We are students from Thailand, and we want to save the elephants.

作后置定语

① **students from Thailand 来自泰国的学生**

e.g. He has a letter from his uncle. 他有一封来自他叔叔的信。

② **save** /seɪv/ *v.* **救；救助**

e.g. The doctor saved the patient's life.

医生救了那个病人的命。

作及物动词，后接名词或代词

拓展：save 的其他含义

save
- 储蓄：I'm saving for a new car. 我正攒钱想买一辆新车。
- 节省；节约：We should save water. 我们应该节约用水。
- 保存：Did you save the file? 你保存那个文件了吗？

考题在线 1 We shouldn't waste water. Instead, we should _____（节约）it. [海南]

★The elephant is one of Thailand's symbols.

③ **one of...……之一**

e.g. Playing football is one of Lu Han's interests.

踢足球是鹿晗的爱好之一。

敲黑板 one of+ 复数名词/代词，易错点，牢记。

One of them is good at English.

他们当中的一个人擅长英语。

敲黑板 one of... 作主语，谓语动词用单数！

Kung Fu Panda is one of the most interesting films.《功夫熊猫》是最有趣的电影之一。

"one of+ the+ 形容词最高级+名词复数"表示"最……之一"。

考题在线 2 根据所给单词提示完成句子。

Stephen Curry is one of the best basketball____in the world. (star)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

[云南]

点拨:one of... 意为“……之一”，其后跟可数名词复数。

★People say that “an elephant never forgets”.

④ **forget** /fə(r)ˈget/ *v.* **遗忘；忘记**

e.g. Don’t forget me. 不要忘记我。

反义词 remember（v. 记住）
forget
形容词 forgetful（adj. 健忘的）

考题在线 3 根据所给句子，填入一个适当的单词，使句意完整。

—Don’t_____to turn off the lights when you leave the classroom, Tom.

—All right, Ms. Lee. [吉林]

【重点 & 易错点】辨析：forget to do sth. 与 forget doing sth.

forget to do sth.	忘记要做某事（事情还没有做）	Don’t forget to close the window. 不要忘记关窗户。
forget doing sth.	忘记做过某事（事情已经做过了）	I forgot closing the door. 我忘记已经关上门了。



辨析 forget 与 leave（见本书 Unit 4 Period 4 考点 2）

考题在线 4 Don’t forget _____ it for me when you finish reading the book. [郴州]

A. to bring　　B. bringing　　C. bring

★Elephants can walk for a long time and never get lost.

⑤ **for a long time 长时间**

e.g.—How long can I keep the robot? 这个机器人我能借多长时间?

—You can keep it for two days. 你可以借两天。

“for +时间段”表示某动作或状态持续一段时间，对其提问要用 how long“多长时间”。

拓展：for 的其他常见用法：



考题在线 5 Our reading club share ideas with each other _____ one hour every Tuesday. [重庆 C]

A. to　　B. on　　C. at　　D. for

⑥ **get lost 迷路**

e.g. It’s easy to get lost /be lost/ lose our way on such a dark night.
在这么黑的夜晚很容易迷路。

get lost（表动作）=be lost（表状态）=lose one’s way 迷路

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★They can also remember places with food and water.

★with 的其他用法：
①with 和……在一起
②with 可作状语，表示动作伴随等。
③with 意为“用”，表示使用工具、手段等。

⑦ **with food and water 有食物和水**

with food and water 在句中作定语，表示伴随的情况，其中 with 是介词，意为“具有；带有”。with 后接名词，构成介词短语。

e.g. He looked at her with a hurt expression.
他带着受伤害的神情看着她。

He is a boy with glasses. 他是一个戴眼镜的男孩。

I'm in Class Six with Bill. 我和比尔在六班。

Miss Li walks into the classroom with a smile on her face.
李老师面带笑容地走进教室。

You can only write with a pen. 你只能用钢笔写。

考题在线 6 —I'm thirsty. I'd like a glass of orange juice. What about you, Dad?
—I prefer a cup of coffee _____ nothing in it. [连云港]
A. with B. without C. for D. to

点拨：答语意为“我更想喝一杯什么也不加的咖啡”。with 具有“有；伴随”之意。

★But elephants are in great danger.

danger 用作不可数名词，常用 big 或 great 修饰，表示“巨大的危险”。

“in + 抽象名词”表示“处于……状态中”。
in peace 平静
in trouble 处于麻烦中
in order 井然有序
in good health 身体健康

⑧ **be in (great) danger 处于（极大）危险之中**

e.g. His life is in danger. 他有生命危险。

Firefighters are often in great danger. 消防队员常常处于很危险的境地。

The doctors say he's now out of danger. 脱离危险 大夫们说现在他脱离了危险。

It's dangerous for people to swim in that river.
adj. 危险的
人们在那条河里游泳是很危险的。

Yang Zhenning is old, but he is in good health.
杨振宁年岁很大，但是他身体健康。

★People cut down many trees so elephants are losing their homes.

常用短语：cut down 砍倒，其后的宾语如果是名词，可以放在 cut 和 down 中间，也可放在 down 后面，但如果是代词，必须放在 cut 与 down 中间。

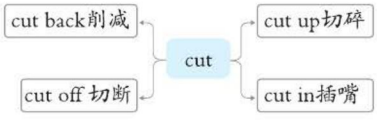
⑨ **cut** /kʌt/ *v.* 砍

e.g. People here usually cut down the trees (cut the trees down) to make their houses. 这儿的人们通常砍伐树木造房子。

Trees are good for our environment, so we shouldn't cut them down.
树木有益于环境，所以我们不应砍伐它们。

敲黑板 代词作宾语放在 cut 和 down 中间，易错点，牢记！

拓展：cut 的相关短语：



考题在线 7 We should not _____ trees in order to make our

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

environment more beautiful. [贵阳]

A. write down B. cut down C. turn down

点拨:write down“写下;记录”;cut down“砍伐;砍倒”;turn down“调低;关小”;拒绝。由句意可知我们不应该“砍树”。

★Today there are only about 3,000 elephants (over 100,000 before).

⑩ **over** /'əʊvə(r)/ *prep.* **超过;多于** over = more than

e.g. My father is over 40.=My father is more than 40.我爸爸四十多岁了。

考题在线 8 There are _____ (多于) 40 students in this class.

拓展: over 的其他用法:



over 相关短语

- go over 仔细检查
- over there 在那边
- all over 到处;处处
- over and over 反复地

★We must save the trees and not buy things made of ivory.

⑪ **made of... 由……制成的**

句中 made of ivory 是过去分词短语作后置定语,修饰名词 things。

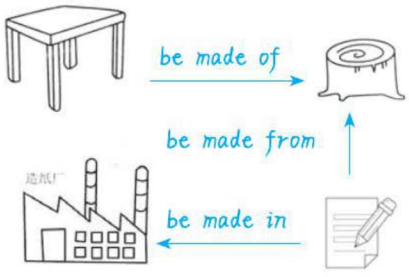
e.g.I love the sweater made of wool.

我喜欢这件由羊毛制成的毛衣。

made of... 意为“由……制成的”,表示被动的含义,这里的 made 是 make 的过去分词。

辨析: be made of, be made from 与 be made in





考题在线 9 —Do you believe that paper is made _____ wood?

—Yes, I do. And you can see that books are made _____ paper. [黄冈]

A. from; from B. from; of

C. of; from D. of; of

点拨:用逻辑推理法解题。纸看不出原材料是木头,故使用 be made from;书能看出原材料是纸,所以用 be made of。

考题在线答案 1.save 2.stars 3.forget 4.A 5.D 6.A 7.B 8.over/more than 9.B

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20 分

(答案见299页)

一、根据首字母或汉语提示完成句子

1. People there need much clean w___ to drink.
2. I'd like to go to those interesting _____(地方).
3. Don't _____(杀死) the elephants. They are our friends.
4. —Why weren't you at the meeting?
   —Sorry, I f_____ it.
5. There are _____(超过) 100 birds in the tree.

二、单项选择

6. The tigers are in danger. We must _____ them.
   A. kill B. save
   C. catch D. buy
7. One of the boys _____ a pet. The pet is really cute.
   A. have B. has
   C. is D. are
8. Don't _____ the trees. They are good for us.
   A. look for B. cut in
   C. think about D. cut down
9. —Sam, don't forget _____ the book to the library tomorrow.
   —OK, I won't. [贵港]
   A. return B. returning
   C. returned D. to return
10. He has a coat _____ cotton. It _____China.
    A. made of; is made in
    B. made of; made in
    C. is made of; is made in
    D. is made of; made in

三、根据句意和汉语提示写短语补全句子

11. The panda is _____ _____ _____ (……的象征) China.
12. We all know that tigers _____ _____ _____ _____(处于极大危险中).
13. Can a cat run _____ _____ _____ _____(很长时间)?
14. Don't let the animals in the forest (森林) _____ _____ _____(失去家园).
15. It's easy to _____ _____(迷路) in a new city.

四、按要求完成句子

16. I like the shirt. It is made of silk.(合并为一句)
    I like the shirt _____ _____ _____.
17. There are more than 60 students in my class.(改为同义句)
    There are _____ 60 students in my class.
18. I like *Erquan Yingyue*. *Erquan Yingyue* is from Abing.(合并为一句)
    I like *Erquan Yingyue*_____ _____.
19. 中国是一个历史悠久的伟大国家。(完成相应英文句子)
    China is a great country _____ _____ _____ _____.
20. Don't forget to do your homework.(改为同义句)
    _____ _____ do your homework.

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

3a Becky/beki/ is Jill's favorite animal. Fill in the blanks with the words in the box.

贝姬是吉尔最喜爱的动物。用方框中的词填空。

like 喜欢 beautiful 美丽的 Africa 非洲 years 年岁 lives 居住 because 因为

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

This is Becky. Isn't she _____? 这是贝姬。难道她不_____吗？

She is from _____. She is twelve _____ old. I _____

她来自_____。她 12_____。我_____

Becky _____ she is smart and friendly. She _____ in Blackwood Zoo.

贝姬_____她既聪明又友好。她_____在黑木动物园。

3b Write a description of a panda using the words in the box, or write about your favorite animal using your own ideas. 用方框中的词写一下对熊猫的描述，或者用你自己的观点写你最喜爱的动物。

Beibei 贝贝	five years old 五岁	China 中国
cute 可爱的	shy 羞怯的	Beijing Zoo 北京动物园

Self Check 自我检测

1 Add more words in the chart. Then write at least five sentences using the words.

在表格中添加更多的词。然后用这些词至少写五个句子。

Animals 动物	Description words 描述性词汇	
tiger 老虎	really, kind of 的确，有点儿	scary 恐怖的

I don't like tigers because they're really scary.

我不喜欢老虎，因为它们真的很吓人。

2 Match the questions and answers to make a conversation. Then write your own conversations.

将问题与答案相匹配并编对话。然后写出你自己的对话。

Questions 问题	Answers 答案
What animals do you like? 你喜欢什么动物?	They're from Africa. 它们来自非洲。
Why do you like lions? 你为什么喜欢狮子?	I like lions. 我喜欢狮子。
Where are they from? 它们来自哪里?	Because they're big and beautiful. 因为它们既大又美丽。

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

单元话题

请以“My favorite animal”为题写一篇短文，120 词左右。

内容包括：① What's your favorite animal ?

② Why do you like it ?

③ What are its characters(特征)?

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 要正确使用表示外貌及性格的形容词；
2. 要恰当地使用连词 because 来阐述喜欢或不喜欢某种动物的原因；
3. 此类短文常使用一般现在时，注意第一人称和第三人称的转换。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三方面法”描写动物

选定描述对象，引出主题后可以从以下 3 个方面加以描述：



写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）

开篇设疑	What's my favorite animal, do you know?	
具体描述	外貌特征	She is from... She is ... She has... And she also has...
	性格特征	She looks a little ...but... She likes eating... She is so ...
总结全文	I like her because... Yes, my favorite animal is...	

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	favorite, lovely, from, cute, lazy, animal, friendly, friendship, symbol...
短语	a symbol of, like doing...
句子	① My favorite animal is ... ② He/ She is... ③ He/ She has... ④ He/ She likes... I like him/her because ...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

My favorite animal

There are many animals in the world. What's my favorite animal, do you know? ① Many people like her very much. She is from China. She is black and ② white. She has two black ears and eyes. And she also has black legs and arms. She looks a little lazy but ② very cute. She likes eating bamboo. She likes climbing trees. She is so lovely and friendly. I like her because she is a symbol of friendship. ③ Yes, my favorite animal is the beautiful panda. ①

名师点评：本文用"三方面法"描写动物。引出描述对象后，从外貌（black and white, black ears and eyes, black legs and arms）、性格（a little lazy but very cute, like eating bamboo, like climbing trees, lovely and friendly）、喜爱原因（a symbol of friendship）三方面展开描写。

添彩点：①设问句的使用，设置了悬念，给读者留下思考的空间并与文末的答案相呼应；

②并列连词 and 及转折连词 but 的使用使得表述富于变化，增强了可读性；

③用 because 引导原因状语从句表明自己喜欢熊猫的原因，丰富了表达。

及测听试力卷

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见300页）

单元知识浓缩

T = Tom D = David

T: David, _____[1]（咱们）go to the zoo!

D: Good idea! Let's go.

（In the zoo）

T: What _____[2] do you want to see first?

D: I want to see _____[3]（大象）.

T: Why?

D: _____[4] they are _____[5]（友善的）to people.

T: Where are they _____[6]?

D: South Africa. Aren't they lovely?

T: _____[7]（不，它们可爱）. I know they are in _____[8]（危险）. Some persons _____[9]（杀死）them for ivory.

D: So people must do something _____[10]（救）them.

T: You're right. But are there any animals you don't want to see?

D: Yes, _____[11]（老虎）.

T: _____[12]?

D: Because they are _____[13]（有点）_____[14]（吓人的）, and they _____[15]（睡觉）_____[16]（一整天）.

T: Do you think zoos are good _____[17] for them to live?

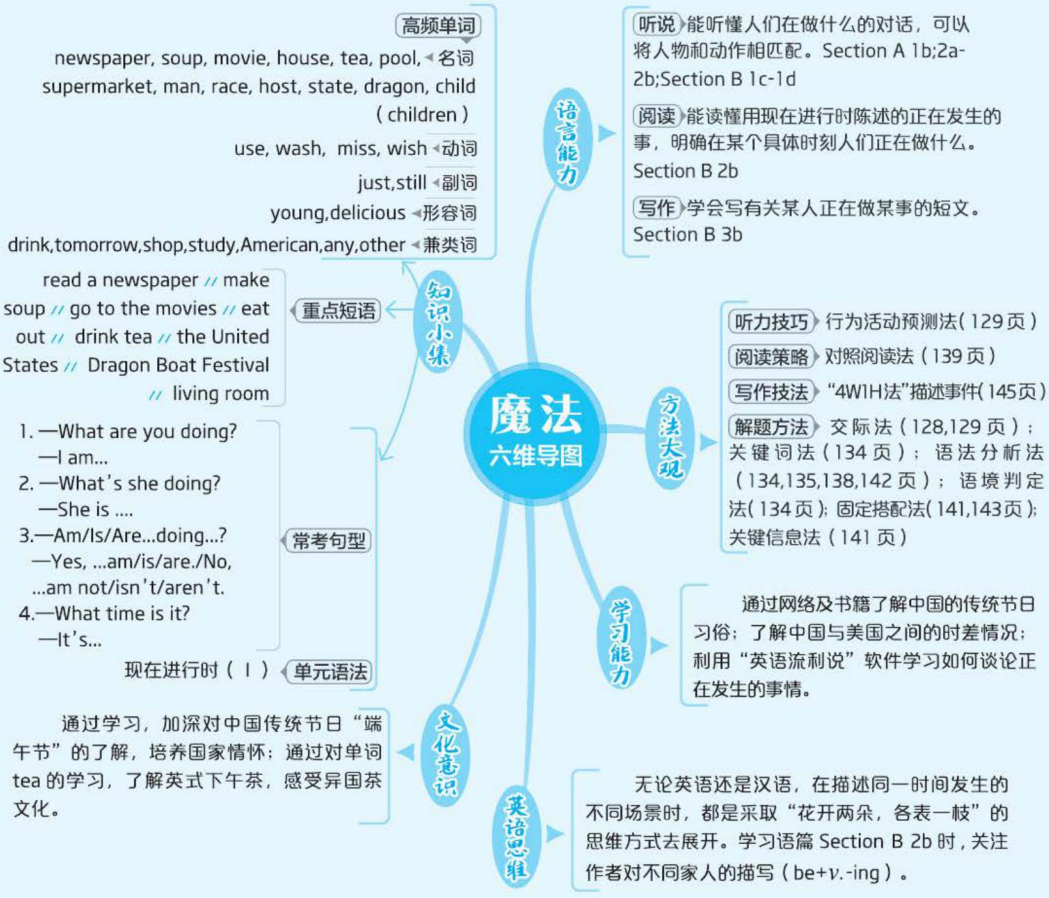
D: No. But don't _____[18]（忘记）that people _____[19]（砍倒）_____[20]（树）and that they lose their homes.

T: That's really a problem.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 I'm watching TV.

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1.use *v.* 使用；运用→ useful *adj.* 有用的

2.soup *n.* 汤→ make soup 做汤

3.wash *v.* 洗→ washes (第三人称单数)

4.newspaper *n.* 报纸→ newspapers (复数)

5.movie *n.* 电影→ watch a movie 看电影

6.just *adv.* 只是；恰好

必背短语

7.read a newspaper 看报纸

8.go to the movies 去电影院

9.eat out 出去吃饭

必背句子

10. —What are you doing?

你正在干什么?

—I'm watching TV.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

我正在看电视。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

必背单词

1.house *n.* 房子→ in the house 在房子里

2.drink *v.* 喝 *n.* 饮料→ drink drinks 喝饮料

3.tea *n.* 茶；茶叶→ drink tea 喝茶

4.tomorrow *adv.* 在明天 *n.* 明天；未来

必背句子 & 语法

5.—Is he reading a newspaper?

他正在看报纸吗?

—**Yes**, he **is. / No**, he **isn't.**

是的，他在看。/ 不，他没看。

6. —Are they using the computer?

他们正在使用电脑吗?

—Yes, they are./No, they aren't.

是的，他们在用。/ 不，他们没用。

7. —What are you doing ?

你正在做什么?

—I'm watching TV.

我正在看电视。

Period 3 Section B (1a–1e)

必背单词

1. man *n.* 男人；人→ men 复数→ woman（对应词）

2. shop *v.* 购物 *n.* 商店→ shopping（现在分词）→ go shopping 去购物

3. pool *n.* 游泳池；水池→ swimming pool 游泳池

4. supermarket *n.* 超市

必背句子

5.—Is the man **swimming** in a river?

那个男人正在河里游泳吗?

—No, he isn't. He's swimming in a pool.

不，他没有。他正在游泳池里游泳。

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

必背单词

1. American *adj.* 美国的；美洲的 *n.* 美国人；美洲人 → America *n.* 美国→ an American 一个美国人

2. study *v.& n.* 学习；研究→ studies（第三人称单数）→ studying（现在分词）→ learn（近义词）

3. young *adj.* 幼小的；年轻的→ old（反义词）→ the young 年轻人

4. child *n.* 儿童→ children（复数）→ Children's Day 儿童节

5.miss *v.* 怀念；思念；错过→ misses（第三人称单数）→ missing（现在分词）

6.wish *v.* 希望→ wishes（第三人称单数）→ hope（同义词）

7.delicious *adj.* 可口的；美味的

8.race *n.* 竞赛→ in a race 在比赛中

9.still *adv.* 还；仍然

10.any *adj.* 任何的；任一的→ any one 任何一个

11.other *adj.* 另外的；其他的 *pron.* 另外的人（或物）→ one ... the other 一个……另一个

12.state *n.* 州→ the United States 美国；美利坚合众国

必背短语

13. Dragon Boat Festival 端午节

14. the United States 美国

必背句子

15.—What time is it in Beijing?

北京是什么时间?

—It's eight o'clock in the morning.

是早上八点钟。

16. Zhu Hui **misses his family** and **wishes to have** his mom's delicious *zongzi*.

朱辉想念他的家人并希望吃到他妈妈包的美味的粽子。

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

必背短语

1. living room **客厅**

必背句子

2. Here is a photo of my family.

这是我家的一张全家福。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about what people are doing
语言目标：谈论人们正在做什么

1a Match the activities with the pictures. 将活动与图片相匹配。

1.watching TV ___i___ 看电视 ___i___
2.cleaning _____ 打扫_____
3.reading a newspaper/ˈnjuːzˌpeɪpə/, /ˈnuːzˌpeɪpər/① _____ 看报纸_____
4.talking on the phone② _____ 通过电话交谈_____
5.listening to a CD _____ 听 CD_____
6.using/juːzɪŋ/③ the computer_____ 使用电脑_____
7.making soup/suːp/ _____ 做汤_____
8.washing /ˈwɒʃɪŋ/, /ˈwɔːʃɪŋ/ the dishes④ _____ 洗餐具_____
9.exercising_____ 锻炼_____

—What are you doing? 你正在干什么?
—I'm watching TV. 我正在看电视。

1b Listen. What are these people doing? Write the numbers from 1a.

课文听力 1b

听录音。这些人正在干什么？写出 1a 中的数字编号。

a.Jenny_____ 珍妮_____ b.John _____约翰_____
c.Dave and Mary _____戴夫和玛丽_____

1c Ask and answer questions about what people are doing in 1a. 对 1a 中人们正在做什么提问并回答。

A:What's he doing? 他正在干什么? **B:**He's using the computer. 他正在使用电脑。
A:What are they doing? 他们正在干什么? **B:**They're listening to a CD. 他们正在听 CD。

2a Listen and match the answers with the questions. 听录音并将问题与答案相匹配。

课文听力 2a

1.What is Steve/stiːv/ doing? 史蒂夫正在干什么?
2.What is Jack doing? 杰克正在干什么?
a.He is watching TV. 他正在看电视。
b.He is listening to a CD. 他正在听 CD。

2b Listen again. Fill in the blanks. 再听一遍录音。填空。

Jack: Hello, Steve. 你好，史蒂夫。
Steve: Hi, Jack. 嗨，杰克。
Jack: What _____ you _____, Steve? 你_____什么，史蒂夫?
Steve:I'm_____. What about you? 我在_____。你呢?
Jack:I'm_____, but it's kind of _____. 我在_____，但是它有点_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Steve: Yeah, my TV show is also not very _____. Do you want to _____ the movies /ˈmuːviz/ ⑤? 是的，我的电视节目也不是非常_____。你想_____电影吗?

Jack: That sounds good. 那听起来很好。

2c Role-play the conversation in 2b. 分角色表演 2b 中的对话。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2d

Jenny: Hello? This is Jenny. ⑥你好? 我是珍妮。

Laura: /ˈlɔːrə/: Hi, Jenny. It's Laura here. 嗨，珍妮。我是劳拉。

Jenny: Oh, hi, Laura. What are you doing? 哦，嗨，劳拉。你正在干什么?

Laura: Not much. ⑦ I'm just/dʒʌst/ washing my clothes. What about you? 没干什么。我只是在洗我的衣服。你呢?

Jenny: I'm watching TV. Do you want to join me for dinner? My parents aren't at home. We can eat out. 我正在看电视。你想跟我一起吃晚饭吗? 我父母没在家。我们可以出去吃。

Laura: Yeah. I'd love to. ⑧好啊。我很乐意。

Jenny: Let's meet at my home first. Come at half past six. 咱们先在我家相见。六点半过来吧。

Laura: OK. See you then. 好的。到时见。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注　·考点应用

常用短语
- read a newspaper/ read newspapers 看报纸
- in the newspaper 在报纸上

news+paper=newspaper
新闻　纸　报纸



read a newspaper

★reading a newspaper

融黑板 两个不可数名词组成了一个可数名词，可数，牢记!

① **newspaper** /ˈnjuːzˌpeɪpə/ *n.* 报纸

e.g. His grandfather reads newspapers every morning.
他爷爷每天早晨看报纸。
There is something important in the newspaper.
报纸上有些重要内容。

拓展：① news 用作不可数名词，意为“新闻；消息”，作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。
this/that news 这 / 那则消息 (新闻)
a piece of news 一条消息 (新闻)
two pieces of news 两条消息 (新闻)
e.g. The news(This piece of news)is very important. 这条消息很重要。

② paper 用作不可数名词时，意为“纸；纸张”，一张纸要表示为 a piece of paper；paper 也可用作可数名词，意为“试卷；答卷”。

e.g. Please hand in your papers.
请上交你们的试卷。

★talking on the phone

② **on the phone 通过电话**

on the phone=over the phone=by phone 意为“通过电话”，其中 on 为介词，

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

意为“通过；使用；借助于”。

e.g.Jenny is talking with her friend on the phone.

珍妮正和她的朋友通过电话交谈。

考题在线 1 Many people like watching *Chinese Poetry Conference*（《中国诗词大会》）_____ TV. [云南]

A. in　　B. of　　C. at　　D. on

e.g.There is a book on the desk. 书桌上有一本书。

What do you often do on Sunday? 星期天你经常干什么?

I'm reading a book on South Africa. 我正在看一本关于南非的书。

★“on（the）+ 名词”的短语



on the radio 通过收音机



on TV 通过电视



on the computer 通过电脑



on the Internet 通过互联网

★ on 的其他用法：

on — 在……上；在（某一天）；关于

★using the computer

③ **use** /ju:z/ *v.* 使用

e.g.I use the knife to cut the apple. 我用刀子切苹果。

拓展：① use 的各种词形、词性及词义变化见下表：

use	*v.*	使用	You can use the QR Code（二维码）on the cover of the book. 你可以使用这本书封面上的二维码。
use/ju:s/	*n.*	用途	I'm sure you'll think of a use for it. 我相信你会给这东西找到用途的。
useful	*adj.*	有用的	Thanks for giving me such a useful book. 谢谢你给我一本这么有用的书。
useless	*adj.*	无用的	What you did was useless. 你所做的是无用的。

② 辨析：use 与 with

use 与 with 都可意为“使用；用”，二者区别如下：

use	动词，在句中作谓语。
with	介词，在句中作状语。

e.g.I use a pen to write.=I write with a pen. 我用钢笔写字。

- use+ 名词 / 代词 使用……；
- use... to do... 用……去做……

★washing the dishes

④ **wash the dishes** 洗餐具

wash the dishes 相当于 do the dishes，wash 此处用作及物动词，意为“洗”。

e.g.I often help my mother wash the dishes.

我经常帮助我母亲洗餐具。

考题在线 2 根据句意及所给的首字母提示，补全单词。

It's a good habit to w_____ hands before meals. [海南]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★“去看电影”表达：

- go to the movies（美式）
- go to the cinema（英式）
- go to watch a movie（美式）
- go to see a film（英式）

★Do you want to go to the movies?

⑤ go to the movies 去看电影

- go
  - go to+表活动的名词“去做某事”
    - go to the party去参加聚会
    - go to the concert去听音乐会
  - go+动词的-ing形式“去进行某一项（休闲或娱乐性的）活动”
    - go fishing去钓鱼
    - go shopping去购物
    - go swimming去游泳
    - go walking去散步
    - go boating去划船
    - go dancing去跳舞

e.g. They made an amazing movie with the 5-D technology.

他们用 5-D 技术制作了一部精彩的电影。

可数名词，与film（英式英语）同义

★This is Jenny.

★电话用语中，一般用this表示“我”，用that表示“对方”，而不用“I”或“you”。

⑥交际用语。这是典型的电话用语，相当于“This is Jenny speaking.”。

e.g.—Hello! May I speak to Mr. Green, please?

你好！请问我可以和格林先生通话吗？

—Mr. Green speaking./This is Mr. Green speaking./Speaking.

我是格林先生。

考题在线 3 —Hello! May I speak to Mary, please?

—_____. [十堰]

A. I don't think so　　B. I am Mary

C. Hurry up, please　　D. This is Mary speaking

点拨：用交际法解题。I don't think so“我不这样认为”；I am Mary“我叫玛丽”；Hurry up, please“请快点”；This is Mary speaking“我是玛丽”。在英语中，打电话时用This is... 表示“我是……”。



拓展：“打电话”专用语小结：

- 打电话用法
  - 给对方打电话时的常用语
    - Hello, is that...（speaking）?
      喂，你是……吗？
    - Hello, this is...（speaking）.
      喂，我是……
    - Hello, is... in? 喂，……在（家）吗？
    - May/Could I speak to...（,please）?
      （请问）我能和……通话吗？
  - 接电话时的常用语
    - Who's that（speaking）？你是谁？
    - Who's speaking? 谁在讲话？
    - Hi, ... It's... here.嗨，……我是……
    - Hold on, please.请稍等。
    - Hold on for a moment/minute, please.
      请稍等一下。
    - Hello, this is... here. Who's that?
      喂，我是……你是谁？
    - Sorry, he isn't in right now.
      对不起，他此刻不在（家）。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Not much.

⑦交际用语

e.g.—What are you doing this evening?你今晚要做什么事?

—Well, not much/nothing much. 嗯，没什么事。

not much 还可说成nothing much，用来作为对对方询问"做什么"的回答，意为"没做什么；没什么事"，表示自己有空。

★I'd love to.

⑧交际用语

本句是省略句，完全形式是"I'd love to eat out."。

e.g.—Would you like to play football with me?

你想要和我一起去踢足球吗?

—Yes, I'd love/like to. 是的，我非常愿意。

to 不能丢掉

—I'm going to town. Would you like to join me?

我打算进城去，你想跟我一同去吗?

—I'd love/like to, but I'm too busy./Sorry, I'm afraid I can't because I still have lots of homework to do.

我非常愿意，但是我太忙了。/真抱歉，我恐怕不能，因为我还有好多家庭作业要做呢。

- I'd love to 经常用于礼貌地接受他人邀请，也可用I'd like to，但语气较前者稍弱，其中I'd=I would，常用来回答Would you like to...?提出的问句。
- 当婉言拒绝他人邀请时，英语多用I'd love to, but... 或Sorry, I'm afraid I can't because... 等。

考题在线 4 —Jerry, could you tell me how to take a taxi through "Didi"?

—_____. [兰州]

A. Take it easy　　B. You are welcome

C. Thank you　　D. Sure, I'd love to

点拨:用交际法解题。Take it easy 意为"别紧张；放轻松"；You are welcome 意为"不客气"；Thank you 意为"谢谢"；Sure, I'd love to 意为"当然可以，我很乐意"。根据问句句意"杰里，你可以告诉我通过'滴滴'怎么乘坐出租车吗？"可推测出回答者应礼貌地表示愿意告诉对方或拒绝，结合选项可知"Sure, I'd love to"符合语境。

考题在线答案 1.D 2.wash 3.D 4.D

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见300页)

听力技巧

行为活动预测法(有些听力题考查不同人物的不同活动。含有这类选项的问题是考查"行为活动"的类型。根据动词的不同形式，问题考查的重点也可能不同。选项均以动词原形开头，问题大多是关于建议某人做某事，有时也表示为了某种目的而要做某事；选项均为动词的 -ing 形式开头，问题大多是关于正在进行的动作或者计划、打算。选项均为不定式，问题很可能是关于做某事的目的，或是计划、承诺或要求做某事。)

听力过程

课文听力 1b

一、听 1b，补全句子

1. Jenny is _____. She thinks the show is _____.
2. John is _____, but Dave and Mary are _____ a CD.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

二、听 2a，选择正确答案



3. What's Steve doing?

A. Washing the dishes.

B. Watching TV.

C. Doing the shopping.

4. What's Jack doing?

A. Playing a game.

B. Visiting the zoo.

C. Listening to a CD.

5. What do they want to do?

A. To watch the boring TV show.

B. To stay at home.

C. To go to the movies.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见300页)

一、根据首字母提示补全单词或用所给单词的适当形式填空

1. Why not u_____ a pen to write the letter?

2. Give me today's n_____, please. I want to read the news.

3. I'm j_____ watching TV.

4. Rosie's mother usually_____ (do) some _____ (clean) at home.

5. Tom's mother often _____ (wash) clothes for him. But now Tom _____ (wash) his own clothes.

二、单项选择

6.—The TV show is a little boring. What about going to the _____?

—Good idea! But what movie is showing now?

A. schools　　B. movies

C. stores　　D. libraries

7. *The New York Times* is a popular daily_____.

A. dictionary　　B. magazine

C. newspaper　　D. guidebook

8. When I got into the room, Mr. Green was talking_____the phone.

A. on　　B. with

C. to　　D. in

9.—Hello, this is David. Can I speak to Tom?

—_____.

A. Tom is me

B. This is Tom speaking

C. I am Tom

D. That is Tom

10.—Would you like to travel with me after this exam?

—_____. I can't wait. [十堰]

A. That's all right

B. Of course not

C. Yes, I'd love to

D. What a pity

三、根据要求完成句子

11. 看！他们正在使用电脑。(汉译英)

_____! They _____ _____ the computer.

12. 我妈妈正在厨房里为我们做汤。(汉译英)

My mother _____ _____ _____ for us in the kitchen.

13. 孩子们想出去吃饭。(汉译英)

The children _____ _____ _____ _____.

14. 没什么。他们只是在讨论一个计划。(汉译英)

_____ _____. They are just discussing a plan.

15. Do you often watch the movies?(改为同义句)

Do you often _____ _____ _____ _____?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What are you doing? 你正在做什么?	I'm watching TV. 我正在看电视。
What's she doing? 她正在做什么?	She's washing her clothes. 她正在洗衣服。
What are they doing? 他们正在做什么?	They're listening to a CD. 他们正在听 CD。
Are you doing your homework? 你正在做作业吗?	Yes, I am./No, I'm not. 是的，我在做。/ 不，我没做。 I'm cleaning my room. 我正在打扫我的房间。
Is he reading a newspaper? 他正在看报纸吗?	Yes, he is./No, he isn't. 是的，他在看。/ 不，他没看。 He's playing basketball. 他正在打篮球。
Are they using the computer? 他们正在使用电脑吗?	Yes, they are./No, they aren't. They're exercising. 是的，他们在用。/ 不，他们没用。他们正在锻炼。

She's exercising (now). 她（现在）正在锻炼。
She exercises (on Mondays/every night/in the mornings/etc.).
她（在周一 / 每天晚上 / 在上午 / 等）锻炼。

3a Write sentences following the examples. 根据下面的例子写句子。

1.Jenny/clean the house/haʊs/ /now 珍妮 / 打扫房子 / 现在
Jenny is cleaning the house now. 珍妮现在正在打扫房子。

2.Bob/make dinner/every Saturday 鲍勃 / 做晚饭 / 每周六
Bob makes dinner every Saturday. 鲍勃每周六做晚饭。

3.Mary's parents/drink/drɪŋk/ ① tea/ti:/ ② /after dinner 玛丽的父母 / 喝茶 / 晚饭后
_____

4.Bill/talk on the phone/now 比尔 / 通过电话交谈 / 现在
_____

5.Becky and Bob/watch TV/on weekends 贝姬和鲍勃 / 看电视 / 在周末
_____

3b Number the sentences in order to make a telephone conversation. Then practice it with a partner.
将这些句子排序，组成一段电话对话。然后与一个伙伴练习它。

_____Do you want to go tomorrow/təˈmɒrəʊ/, /təˈmɑ:rəʊ/ then? 那么，明天你想去吗?
_____OK. See you tomorrow evening! 好的。明天晚上见!
_____I'm reading a book. 我正在读一本书。
_____Let's go at seven o'clock. 咱们七点钟去。
_____No, this book is really interesting. 不，这本书真的很有趣。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

__1__ What are you doing? 你正在干什么?

_____Do you want to go to the movies now? 你现在想去看电影吗?

_____Sure, what time? 可以，什么时间?

3c **Take turns miming different activities in your group. The others in the group guess what the activities are.** 在你们小组内轮流用哑剧形式表示不同的活动。小组内的其他人猜一下这些活动是什么。

—Are you making soup?—No, I'm not.——你正在做汤吗? ——不，不是。

—Are you cleaning?—Yes, you're right.——你正在打扫卫生吗? ——是的，你是正确的。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

•考点应用

★英语中不同的"喝"法

- drink tea/milk/wine/beer/coffee 喝茶/牛奶/酒/啤酒/咖啡
- eat soup 喝汤
- take medicine 喝药

①茶的分类

红茶 (black tea)、
绿茶 (green tea)、
白茶 (white tea)、
乌龙茶 (oolong tea)

②跟茶有关的习语

- as useful as a chocolate teapot 中看不中用
- a storm in a teacup 小题大做
- not my cup of tea 不是我喜欢的

素养行动：感受英式下午茶的文化和礼仪。

素养行动结果：了解、学习、感受英式下午茶的文化和礼仪，同时也被其熏陶。

★drink tea

① **drink** /drɪŋk/ *v.* 喝 *n.* 饮料

drink

- drink用作及物动词，意为"喝"。 Would you like to drink a cup of milk? 你想要喝一杯牛奶吗?
- drink用作名词，意为"饮料"，一般情况下用作不可数名词，也可用作可数名词。 Let's buy some drink for the party. 让我们为聚会买些饮料吧。 There are all kinds of drinks in the shop. 这个商店有各种各样的饮料。

拓展：drink 作不及物动词，意为"喝，喝酒"，后面不接宾语。

e.g. My brother doesn't drink.

我的弟弟不喝酒。

② **tea** /tiː/ *n.* 茶；茶叶

e.g. Drinking tea is many Chinese people's habit.

喝茶是很多中国人的习惯。

He'd like to buy some tea on the Internet.

他想在网上买些茶叶。

核心素养之文化意识

了解下午茶，感受异国茶文化

英式下午茶 (afternoon tea)——英国实际上是欧洲最晚开始喝茶的国家，英国人习惯喝红茶是因为红茶作为全发酵茶，包容性大，加奶加糖皆可，且颜色与英国法国红酒相似，更容易接受，也适合他们的品饮品味。红茶要用白色大口瓷杯盛，这样才能看到红茶泡好后红润的色泽。当时人们只食用早餐和晚餐，所以需要在中间加一点配合茶一起食用的小甜点 (dessert)，后来上流社会时髦太太小姐们用下午茶来消磨时间进行社交活动，英式下午茶成了优雅生活的代名词。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

现在进行时（Ⅰ）

现在进行时表示现在（说话瞬间）正在进行或发生的动作，也可以表示当前一段时间内的活动或现阶段正在进行的动作。



考点1 现在进行时的构成、句式变化及现在分词的变化

考向1：现在进行时的构成

助动词 am/is/are
be doing（结构）　现在分词
与主语人称和数一致

e.g. I'm watching the World Cup.

我正在看世界杯。

My sister is talking on the phone.

我姐姐正在打电话。

They are listening to music.

他们正在听音乐。

考向2：现在进行时的句式变化

肯定句	主语 +be+*v*.-ing 形式 + 其他 .
否定句	主语 +be+not+*v*.-ing 形式 + 其他 .
一般疑问句及其简略回答	Be+ 主语 +*v*.-ing 形式 + 其他? 肯定回答：Yes, 主语 +be. 否定回答：No, 主语 +be+not.
特殊疑问句	疑问词 +be+ 主语 +*v*.-ing形式 + 其他? 疑问词 Who+be+*v*.-ing形式 + 其他?

e.g. She is/I am/They are watching TV.

她 / 我 / 他们正在看电视。

Tina is not riding a shared bike.

蒂娜没有在骑共享单车。

—Is Dave swimming in the pool?

戴夫正在游泳池里游泳吗？

—Yes, he is. 是的，他在游泳。

—No, he isn't. 不，他没有游泳。

What is she doing at home?

她在家做什么呢？

Who is reading English?

谁在读英语？

速记 小筱

现在进行时用法

表示动作正发生，时间状语 now 时态定；be+doing 是结构，am/is/are 要随主语行；否定 be 后加 not，一般问句把 be 提前；特殊问句问动作，what 一马当先往前冲。

考题在线1 Mr. Hu is having a rest in his bedroom.（改为否定句）　[重庆A]

Mr. Hu _____ _____ having a rest in his bedroom.

点拨：现在进行时的句子变否定句时，直接在 be 动词后加 not。

考题在线2 The students are taking notes now.（改为一般疑问句）

_____the students _____ notes now?

点拨：现在进行时的句子变一般疑问句时，只需要将 be 动词提到句子开头即可。

考向3：现在分词的构成方法

一般直接在动词后 +-ing	look–looking，go–going，visit–visiting...
以不发音的字母 e 结尾的动词，去 e+-ing	come–coming，make–making，take–taking，have–having，dance–dancing，give–giving...
以辅音字母 +y 结尾的动词，直接 +-ing	study–studying，fly–flying，cry–crying，carry–carrying...
以重读闭音节结尾且末尾只有一个辅音字母的动词，双写辅音字母 +-ing	get–getting，shop–shopping，swim–swimming，put–putting，begin–beginning，run–running，cut–cutting...
以 ie 结尾的重读开音节词，变 ie 为 y+-ing	die–dying，lie–lying，tie–tying...

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

速记小筏

现在分词

现在分词不难记，动词后加 -ing；
词尾若有哑音 e，去 e 再加 -ing；
一辅重读闭音节，辅音字母需双写；
lie，tie 有讲究，变 ie 为 y 加 -ing。

考点 2 现在进行时的一些标志词或提示

考向 1：题干中有 look, listen, now 等标志词时用现在进行时。

敲黑板 这些标志词可以帮助你正确答题，一定要记住并会用！

考题在线 3 Please don't make so much noise. The baby _____ now. [北京]

A. sleeps
B. slept
C. will sleep
D. is sleeping

方法真题练

点拨：用关键词法解题。由句中 now 可知本句应用现在进行时，其构成为“be(am/is/are)+ *v.*-ing”。

考题在线 4 Listen! Mr. Black _____ a talk on robots in the hall. [重庆 B]

A. gives　　B. is giving
C. will gave　　D. gave

点拨：“Listen!(听！)”表示动作正在进行，所以要用现在进行时态。

考向 2：【易错点】通过上下文提示可知动作正在进行。如“It's ten o'clock.”，“Look at the picture.”以及“these days/months/years”和“this month”等，表示当前一段时间内正在进行的动作或现阶段正在进行的动作。

考题在线 5 — Hurry up!
— One moment. I _____ my e-mails and then I'm ready to go. 【导学号：8811889】[江西]

A. read　　B. am reading
C. was reading　　D. have read

考点 3 现在进行时的特殊用法

考向 1：【难点】现在进行时与 always 连用，表示反复出现或习惯性的动作，有强烈的感情色彩。

比较：

- be always doing sth.“总是 / 一直做某事”，含有赞赏、厌恶等感情色彩；
- always do sth.“总是做某事”，陈述事实，不带感情色彩。

e.g. You are always forgetting your homework.
你总是忘记你的家庭作业。

考向 2：一些表示动作转移的动词可以用现在进行时表示将来，表示最近按计划或安排要进行的动作。这样的动词主要有 go，come，begin，start，leave，arrive，fly 等。

e.g. I'm going shopping tomorrow.
明天我要去购物。
He is leaving for Beijing next week.
他下周启程去北京。

考题在线 6 根据汉语意思完成句子。

他们将于后天动身前往广州进行一场比赛。

They are_____ _____Guangzhou the day after tomorrow for a game. [赤峰]

点拨：用语法分析法解题。由汉语意思可知本题要用一般将来时；leave for... 意为“动身去……”，其中 leave 是趋向性动词，要用现在进行时表将来。

考题在线 7 —What are you doing on Saturday morning?
—Well, it's going to be sunny, so I _____ a picnic with my friend. [包头]

A. have　　B. had
C. have had　　D. am having

点拨：用语境判定法解题。问句问星期六上午打算做什么，答语要与之呼应，表明打算去野餐。表示按计划或安排要进行的动作用现在进行时表示将来。

考点 4 现在进行时和一般现在时的区别

考向 1：概念

1. 现在进行时表示说话时（瞬间）正在进行的动作，也表示目前阶段一直进行的动作。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g.I am doing my homework. 我正在做家庭作业。

2. 一般现在时表示经常性或习惯性的动作或存在的状态，也表示说话者的能力，还表示自然现象。

e.g. My father walks to work.

我爸爸步行去上班。

考向 2：构成

1. 现在进行时由“助动词 be + 动词的 -ing 形式”构成。

e.g. The lion is sleeping.

那只狮子正在睡觉。

2. 一般现在时的谓语构成主要有四种形式：连系动词 be（am, is, are）；实义动词原形；实义动词的第三人称单数形式；情态动词 + 实义动词原形。

e.g.I am a teacher. 我是一名教师。

I go to school at 6:00 a.m. 我早晨六点去上学。

My grandmother can use Payment Online ! 我奶奶会使用在线支付！

另外，祈使句实际上也是一般现在时。

e.g. Let's go to the zoo. 咱们去动物园吧。

考向 3：时间状语

1. 现在进行时的时间状语主要有：now, these days 等。

e.g. What are you doing these days?

你这些天在干什么？

2. 一般现在时的时间状语主要有：every day/morning, in the morning/afternoon/evening, at eight o'clock 等短语和 often, usually, sometimes, always 等频率副词。

e.g. We watch TV in the evening.

我们晚上看电视。

考题在线 8 —What is Bill doing right now?

—He _____ soccer. He _____ soccer every Saturday. [湘西]

A. plays; plays

B. plays; is playing

C. is playing; plays

点拨:用语法分析法解题。由问句是现在进行时可知，答语第一句要用相同的时态表示“正在踢足球”；由答语第二句的时间状语 every Saturday 可知表示经常性的动作，要用一般现在时。

考题在线答案 1.is not 2.Are;taking 3.D 4.B 5.B 6.leaving for 7.D 8.C

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

☞（答案见 300 页）

一、用所给词的适当形式填空

1. Bob _____（make） dinner now.

2. Look at the photo. My friend _____（run） on the playground（操场）.

3.—Are they_____（read） books in the classroom?

—Yes, they are.

4. Look! The Browns _____(eat) supper in the kitchen. [鄂州]

5. Listen! Someone _____（knock） at the door. [烟台]

二、单项选择

6. —What is your mother doing, Linda?

—She _____ dinner in the kitchen now. [淮安]

A. is cooking B. was cooking

C. cook D. cooking

7. —Where are you going, Bob?

—To go hiking. Eric _____ for me at the school gate ! [黄冈]

A. was waiting B. waits

C. waited D.is waiting

8. —I can't find Jimmy. Where is he?

—He _____ in the garden at the moment（此刻）. [宜宾]

A. works B. will work

C. is working

9. The clothing store _____ a sale. The clothes

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

there are very cheap. [河北改编]

A. have B. had

C. is having D. was having

10. —Sam, let's go to the cinema. There's a new movie called *Avengers* Ⅲ (《复仇者联盟3》).

—Not now. I _____ my brother David with his English. [十堰]

A. help B. helped

C. am helping D. have helped

三、按要求完成句子

11. Maria and Bob are doing their homework.(改为一般疑问句)

_____Maria and Bob _____ their homework?

12. The dog eats meat every day.(用now改写)

The dog _____ _____ meat now.

13. Tom is talking on the phone.(改为否定句)

Tom _____ _____ on the phone.

14. My mother is cooking in the kitchen.(对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ _____in the kitchen?

15. The boy is playing the piano now.(对画线部分提问)

_____ the boy _____ now?

Period 3 Section B (1a–1e)

I. 课文原文、译文

1a **Look at the pictures. Complete the chart.** 看图片。完成表格。

Places 地点	Activities 活动
1.	
2.	
3.	

swimming 游泳 shopping/ˈʃɒpɪŋ/,/ˈʃɑːpɪŋ/①购物 reading 阅读

supermarket/ˈsuːpə(r)ˌmɑː(r)kɪt/ 超市 library 图书馆 pool/puːl/ 游泳池

1b **Look at the pictures in 1a. Then ask and answer questions.** 看1a中的图片。然后进行问答。

—Is the man/mæn/② swimming in a river? 那个男人正在河里游泳吗?

—No, he isn't. He's swimming in a pool. 不,他没有。他正在游泳池里游泳。



1c **Listen and complete the chart.** 听录音并完成表格。

Names 姓名	Places 地点	Activities 活动
Alice 艾丽斯	supermarket 超市	
Mike 迈克		
Lisa 莉萨		

1d **Listen again. Check your answers in 1c.** 再听一遍录音。检查1c中你的答案

1e **Use the information in the chart to make a conversation.** 用图表中的信息编一组对话。

—Is Alice playing basketball? 艾丽斯正在打篮球吗?

—No, she isn't. She's... 不,她没有。她正在……

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见300页)

听力过程

课文听力1c

听 1c，选择正确答案

1. Where is Alice?

A. At home. B. At the supermarket.

C. At the station.

2. What is Alice doing?

A. She's buying things.

B. She's playing.

C. She's having bread.

3. Where is Mike?

A. At home. B. In the school.

C. On the farm.

4. What is Mike doing?

A. Doing his homework.

B. Playing the guitar.

C. Playing basketball.

5. Where's Lisa?

A. At home. B. At the bookstore.

C. At the library.

6. What is Lisa doing?

A. She is doing some reading.

B. She is cleaning her room.

C. She is washing her clothes.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★shopping

① **shop** /ʃɒp/, /ʃɑːp/ *v.* 购物 *n.* 商店

shop
- 用作动词，意为"购物"。 — They shopped all morning for new coats.他们一上午都在买新外套。
- 用作名词，意为"商店"。 — There are lots of shops in the street.在这条街上有很多店铺。

e.g. Can you go shopping with me?

你能和我一起去购物吗?

速记小筏：

shop——shopping——go shopping

v.购物 动词的-ing形式 去购物

★常用短语：

go shopping 去购物

do some shopping 买一些东西

★Is the man swimming in a river?

② **man** /mæn/ *n.* 男人；人

速记小筏：

man(n. 男人；人) —复数→ men

woman(n. 妇女；女性) —复数→ women

e.g. Who is the man in this photo?

这张照片里的男人是谁?

敲黑板 a变为e，重点内容，需牢记!

In China, men and women are equal in right.

在中国，男女的权力平等。

a woman writer 一位女作家

some women writers 一些女作家

a boy student 一位男学生

some girl students 一些女学生

boy和girl用作定语时，总是用单数。

man，woman用于名词前作定语时，其单复数形式与所修饰的名词的单复数形式一致，即man或woman作定语构成的名词短语变复数时，man或woman及名词都要变为复数形式。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 There are many old _____ and_____in the park. [怀化]

A. man; children B. men; child C. men; children

点拨:用语法分析法解题。由空前 many 可知空格处的名词需用复数形式，man 的复数形式是 men，child 的复数形式是 children。

考题在线答案 C

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）



I. 课文原文、译文

2a Look at the clocks and ask your partner about the time in different places.

看时钟并且问你的伙伴关于不同地方的时间。

A:What time is it in Beijing? 北京是什么时间?

B:It's eight o'clock in the morning. 是早上八点钟。

8:00 AM 上午 8:00　9:00 AM 上午 9:00　8:00 PM 晚上 8:00　10:00 AM 上午 10:00

Beijing 北京　Tokyo 东京　New York 纽约　Sydney 悉尼

2b Read the TV report and answer the questions. 读这则电视报道并回答问题。



1.Why are Zhu Hui's family watching boat races/ˈreɪsɪz/ and making *zongzi*?

为什么朱辉的家人看龙舟比赛、包粽子?

2.Does Zhu Hui like his host/həʊst/ family? What does he think about his home in China?

朱辉喜欢他的寄宿家庭吗? 他在想关于他在中国的家的什么?

Today's story is about Zhu Hui, a student from Shenzhen. He's now studying/ˈstʌdɪŋ/① in the United States/juˈnaɪtɪd ˈsteɪts/. He's living with an American/əˈmerɪkən/ family in New York. Today is the Dragon/ˈdrægən/ Boat Festival. It's 9:00 a.m. and Zhu Hui's family are at home. His mom and aunt are making *zongzi*. His dad and uncle are watching the boat races② on TV.

今天的故事是关于朱辉，一个来自深圳的学生的。他现在正在美国学习。他住在纽约的一个美国家庭里。今天是端午节。现在是上午九点，朱辉的家人都在家。他的妈妈和婶婶正在包粽子。他的爸爸和叔叔正在看电视上的龙舟比赛。

Is Zhu Hui also watching the races and eating *zongzi*? Well, it's 9:00 p.m. in New York, and it's the night before the festival. But there isn't a Dragon Boat Festival in the US, so it's like any /ˈeni/④ other /ˈʌðə(r)/⑤③ night for Zhu Hui and his host family. The mother is reading a story to her young/jʌŋ/⑥ children/ˈtʃɪldrən/⑦. The father is watching a soccer game on TV. And what's Zhu Hui doing? He's talking on the phone to his cousin in Shenzhen. Zhu Hui misses/ˈmɪsɪz/⑧ his family and wishes/ˈwɪʃɪz/⑨ to have his mom's delicious/dɪˈlɪʃəs/ *zongzi*. Zhu Hui likes New York and his host family a lot, but there's still/stɪl/⑩ "no place like home".

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

朱辉也在看比赛、吃粽子吗？噢，现在是纽约时间晚上九点，是端午节前一夜。但是在美国没有端午节，所以对朱辉和他的寄宿家庭来说，今晚和平时的晚上是一样的。妈妈正在给她年幼的孩子们读故事。爸爸正在电视上看一场足球赛。那么朱辉在干什么？他正在与在深圳的表哥通过电话交谈。朱辉想念他的家人并希望吃到他妈妈包的美味的粽子。朱辉非常喜欢纽约及他的寄宿家庭，但是“千好万好还是不如自己的家好”。

2c Match the verbs in column A with the words in column B. Then use the phrases to write sentences according to the TV report. 将A栏中的动词与B栏中的词语相匹配。然后根据电视报道用这些短语写句子。

A	B
living/ˈlɪvɪŋ/ 居住	food 食物
reading 阅读	in the US 在美国
making 制作	a race 一场比赛
talking 谈话	with a family 与一个家庭
studying 学习	on the phone 通过电话
watching 观看	a story 一个故事

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 稳拿中考听力20分

(答案见300页)

阅读策略

对照阅读法（在阅读时，我们会遇到同一时间不同的人的不同活动。本部分的课文就是如此。在端午节这天，朱辉在国内的家人忙着过节，而在美国的朱辉和他的寄宿家庭的家人却和平时一样。阅读此类文章时，我们可以对照着把父母、兄弟姐妹、爷爷奶奶以及其他亲属在同一时间不同的活动内容进行比较，这样对整篇文章就会有一个全面的认知。）



阅读过程

一、速读2b，选择正确答案

1. What's the passage mainly about?

（主旨大意题）

A. Zhu Hui's day on China's Dragon Boat Festival.

B. Zhu Hui's studying in America.

C. Who likes the boat races?

D. How to have a great time.

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. Where is Zhu Hui now?（细节理解题）

A. In China. B. In America.

C. In England. D. In Japan.

3. What are Zhu Hui's family doing?

（细节理解题）

A. Rowing a boat.

B. Watching a movie on TV.

C. Eating *zongzi* and making a boat.

D. Making *zongzi* and watching the boat races.

4. Tonight in New York is_____.

（细节理解题）

A. different from any other night

B. very strange for everyone

C. the same as any other night

D. the Dragon Boat Festival

5. From the last sentence we can know _____.

（综合判断题）

A. Zhu Hui likes his host family best

B. Zhu Hui likes his home best

C. Zhu Hui doesn't like Shenzhen

D. there is no place for Zhu Hui to live

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点批注

速记 小筱：

study (v. 学习；研究)

studies (第三人称单数)　studying (现在分词)

★ study 还可用作名词，意为“学习；研究；书房”。



n.&v. 学习　n. 书房

Mr. Li is studying his son's study in his study. 李先生正在书房里研究他心子的学习。

“any other + 名词单数”意为“(除了某个以外) 任何其他的”，指在同一范围内除了某人或某物以外的其他人或物。

难点，可通过例子进行记忆！

•考点应用

★He's now studying in the United States.

① **study**/stʌdi/ *v.* **学习；研究**

【重点】study 在此处用作不及物动词，意为“学习”；study 也可作及物动词，相当于 learn。

辨析：study 与 learn

study	侧重于学习的过程。用于表示较高深或周密的“研究”。	He is studying the math problem. 他正在研究这个数学问题。
learn	侧重于学习的结果，意为“学会”，用于初级阶段的学习。 learn from sb.“向某人学习”。	He learns English on the radio. 他通过收音机学英语。 We should learn from Lei Feng. 我们应该向雷锋学习。

e.g. That is good for your study.那对你的学习有好处。

A study shows good habits are important.
一项研究表明好习惯很重要。

My father is reading newspapers at his study.
我爸爸正在书房里看报纸。

★His dad and uncle are watching the boat races on TV.

② **race**/reɪs/ *n.* **竞赛；比赛**

辨析：race 与 game

race	通常指速度方面的比赛，如赛车、赛马等。	a horse race 赛马 a 10-mile race 10 英里赛跑
game	指决定胜负的游戏，通常有一定的规则，凡参加者均需遵守，多用于美式英语。英式英语则用 match，此时 game 与 match 可以互换。	a football game/match 足球赛 a basketball game/match 篮球赛
	game 用复数形式时，也可指大型的国际体育运动会、比赛等。	the Olympic Games 奥林匹克运动会

★...so it's like any other night for Zhu Hui and his host family.

③ **any other 任何其他的**

e.g. Jack is like any other boy of his age.
杰克像其他和他同龄的男孩一样。
→ 同一范围

注意：“any+ 单数名词”指不是同一范围内除了某人或某物以外的其他人或物。

e.g. Jack is taller than any boy in his brother's class.
杰克比他哥哥班上的任何一个男生都高。
→ 不在同一范围

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线1 —Do you know Shanghai is one of _____in the world?

—Yes, it's bigger than _____ city in China. [龙东]

A. the biggest city; any B. the biggest cities; any

C. the biggest cities; any other

点拨:用固定搭配法解题。"one of+the+ 形容词最高级 + 名词复数"是固定用法,意为"最……的……之一";"比较级 +than+any other+ 名词单数"是用比较级形式表达最高级概念,意为"比任何其他的……更……"。

A man knows his companion in a long journey and a little inn.
路遥知马力,日久见人心。

④ **any**/'eni/*adj.* 任何的;任一的 *pron.* 任何;任一

辨析: any 与 some

any 和 some 都可用作形容词,它们在用法上有一些不同:

any与some

- any与可数名词单数或不可数名词连用,用于肯定句,表示"任一的;任何的";用于否定句和疑问句中代替some。
  - You can come here any day. 你可以在任何一天来这里。
  - There isn't any food at home. 家里没有食物。
- some与可数名词复数或不可数名词连用,一般用于肯定句中;若用于疑问句中,则表示委婉请求或建议或期望得到肯定回答。
  - I have some books. 我有一些书。
  - Would you like some tea? 你想喝点茶吗?

e.g.Here are three books. You can read any.
这儿有三本书,你可以读任何一本。

any 还可用作代词,意为"任何;任一"。

考题在线2 —When shall we go hiking again?

—Make it _____ day you like. It's all the same to me. [乐山]

A. either B. any C. one

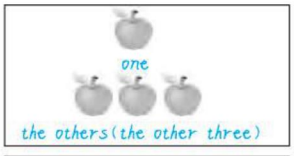
点拨:用关键信息法解题。由答语后句"对我来说都一样"这一关键信息可知,去远足的时间可安排在任何一天。

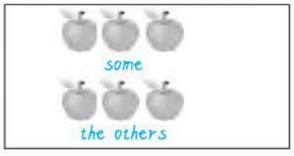
⑤ **other**/'ʌðə(r)/ *adj.* 另外的;其他的 *pron.* 另外的人(或物)

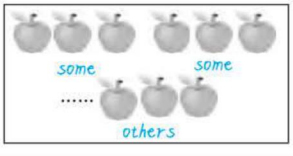
辨析: other, others, the other, the others 与 another

其他的/另外的(人或事物)

- other:其余的(人或物),后接复数名词。
  - I can see some other boys. 我可以看到一些其他的男孩。
- others:剩余的另一些(并非全部)。
  - A lot of people are in the park. Some are singing, some are dancing, and others are running.许多人在公园里,一些在唱歌,一些在跳舞,另一些在跑步。
- the other:两个之中的另一个。
  - I have two pencils. One is red, and the other is green. 我有两支铅笔,一支是红色的,另一支是绿色的。
- the others:指一定范围内"剩余的全部的人或物"。
  - There are 20 students. 15 of them are boys, and the others are girls.有20名学生,15名是男孩,其余的是女孩。
- another:"再一个/又一个/另一个的(人或事物)"。
  - I want to have another apple.我想再吃一个苹果。







关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线3 Some people are too shy to say a word in public. However, _____ aren't. [淮安]

A. another B. the other C. others D. the others

点拨:用语法分析法解题。句意为“一些人在公共场所太害羞了而不能说话，然而，其他人不这样”。“一些……，其他(并非全部)……”，应用“some ...others...”。

younger 是 young 的比较级，意为“较年轻的”。

考题在线4 Catherine has two cousins. One is quiet, and _____ is noisy. [上海]

A. another B. the other C. other D. others

点拨:one..., the other... 指“一个……，另一个……”。句意为“凯瑟琳有两个表兄弟。一个是安静的，另一个是吵闹的”。

the young 表示“年轻人”。类似的还有：the old 老人，the rich 富人，the poor 穷人。

★**The mother is reading a story to her young children.**

⑥ **young**/jʌŋ/ *adj.* 幼小的；年轻的

e.g.His brother is a young teacher. 他哥哥是一名年轻的老师。

You look younger than me. 你看上去比我年轻。

⑦ **children**/tʃɪldrən/ (单数：**child**/tʃaɪld/) *n.* 儿童

e.g.The children are playing soccer.

孩子们正在踢足球。

敲黑板 重点也是常考点，熟记单、复数之间的变化。

We have a great time on Children's Day.

在儿童节我们玩得很快乐。

children 是 child 的复数形式，意为“孩子们”，是由“child + 后缀(-ren)”构成的，作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

考题在线5 She has two c_____, a son and a daughter. [贺州]

children 的名词所有格是在词尾直接加“'s”。

★**Zhu Hui misses his family and wishes ...**

⑧ **miss**/mɪs/ *v.* 怀念；思念；错过

e.g.I miss my mother very much. 我非常想念我的母亲。

miss 的其他用法：及物动词，第三人称单数是 misses



- miss
  - 及物动词，意为“错过”。 → He arrived too late and missed the train. 他到得太晚，错过了火车。
  - 还可作名词，首字母大写，即Miss，意为“小姐，老师”，常用于未婚女性的姓氏前。 → Miss Sun is our English teacher. 孙老师是我们的英语老师。

考题在线6 Don't _____ the chance when you can catch it, or you will regret.

A. guess B. miss C. remember D. allow

⑨ **wish**/wɪʃ/ *v.* 希望

辨析: wish 与 hope

wish 与 hope 都可用作动词，表示“希望”，二者均可以跟动词不定式，其

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

区别如下：

- wish
  - wish sb. sth.祝某人……
  - wish (sb.) to do sth.希望（某人）做某事
  - wish+从句，表示难以实现的愿望
- hope
  - hope to do sth.希望做某事
  - hope+从句，表示可以实现的愿望

wish 可用于 wish sb. to do sth. 的结构，而 hope 不可这样用。

wish 还可作名词，常用复数形式表示祝福等。

e.g.Best wishes to you. 给你最好的祝福。

e.g. We wish you a happy new year. 我们祝你新年快乐。

I wish you to go. 我希望你去。

I wish I could fly like a bird.我希望我能像一只鸟一样飞。

We hope to see you again. 我们希望能再次见到你。

I hope my students can learn more about the China Dream. 我希望我的学生多了解些“中国梦”。

考题在线 7 She said she hoped _____ her daughter. [邵阳]

A. to see B. you to see C. seeing

点拨:用固定搭配法解题。句意为“她说她希望看一看她的女儿”。hope to do sth. 是固定搭配，意为“希望做某事”；没有 hope sb. to do 这一用法。

★..., but there's still "no place like home".

⑩ **still**/stɪl/ *adv.* 还；仍然

still 用作副词，意为“还；仍然”，表示某事仍然在继续，多用于肯定句或疑问句中。

still 有时也可用于否定句中，此时，它要放于否定的助动词之前。

e.g. My mother is still cooking. 我妈妈还在做饭。

Are you still learning online courses? 你还在学习网上课程吗?

I still don't understand. 我仍旧不明白。

考题在线 8 They are not young any more, but they are _____ beautiful.

A. even B. still C. never D. often

考题在线答案 1.C 2.B 3.C 4.B 5.children 6.B 7.A 8.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见300页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示完成句子

1. How many _____（州）are there in your country?
2. My brother _____（仍然）likes TFBOYS' songs.
3. We are watching a horse _____（竞赛）on TV.
4. I like it because it's _____（美味的）.
5. The _____（年轻的）girl is wearing a red dress.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. Li Ming is _____（study）for a test now.
7. Do you wish _____（get）good grades?
8. So many _____ (child) like *Peppa Pig*.
9. I know Mary is an _____（America）girl.
10. The mother _____（miss）her daughter very much.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、单项选择

11. I am busy today. _____ is OK.

A. Any day　　B. Any other day

C. All days　　D. Any other days

12. —What's the English word for the Chinese food *jiaozi*?

—You can _____ say "*jiaozi*". It has been added to *The Oxford English Dictionary*.

[东营]

A. just　　B. even

C. still　　D. hardly

13. —Do you have _____ books on music?

—Yes, you can take _____ one you like.

A. any; some　　B. any; any

C. some; any　　D. some; some

14. There are only big trees on one side of the street; different flowers lie on _____.

[株洲]

A. other　　B. another　　C. the other

15. He wishes _____ a scholar and we ____ him good luck.　　[江西]

A. to be; wish　　B. being; wish

C. to be; wishes　　D. being; wishing

四、按要求完成句子

16. She is talking to her mother on the phone.(改为否定句)

She _____ _____ to her mother on the phone.

17. I'm doing my homework.(变为一般疑问句)

_____ you doing _____ homework?

18. The students are waiting for <u>their teachers</u>.(对画线部分提问)

_____ are the students _____ for?

19. She often plays the violin.(用 now 替换 often)

She _____ _____the violin now.

20. He hopes that he can see that girl again.(改为同义句)

He wishes _____ _____ that girl again.

Period 5 Section B(3a–Self Check)

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Complete Jim's letter. 完成吉姆的信。

Dear Bob, 亲爱的鲍勃:

Here is a picture of my family. We are all at home now. I am doing my homework. My parents in the living room. My grandfather_____ . My sister _____. 这是我家的一张全家福。现在我们都在家。我正在做我的家庭作业。我的父母在客厅_____。我爷爷_____。我姐姐_____。

Jim 吉姆

3b Bring in some photos of your own (or draw some pictures of you and your family or friends) and write about them. 拿来一些你自己的照片(或者画一些你和你的家人或朋友的画)并且写出关于它们的事。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Add more words in the chart. Then write at least five sentences using the words. 在表格中加入更多的词。然后用这些词写出至少五个句子。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

play 玩→ playing 正在玩	make 制作→ making 正在制作	run 跑→ running 正在跑

Jack is playing basketball now. 杰克现在正在打篮球。

2 **Write questions to complete the conversation.** 写出问句完成对话。

A:Hey, Bob!_____?(what) 嘿，鲍勃！_____？（什么）

B:I'm listening to the radio. 我正在听收音机。

A:_____?(play soccer)_____？（踢足球）

B:Sounds good, but this talk show is interesting. 听起来很好，但是这个访谈节目很有趣。

A:_____?(what, Tony)_____？（什么，托尼）

B:Oh, he's studying for a test. 哦，他正在备考。

A:_____?(Steve, too)_____？（史蒂夫，也）

B:No, he's not. I think he can play soccer with you. 不，他没有。我认为他可以和你一起踢足球。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★Here is a picture of my family.

句法分析

此句是全部倒装句，其结构为"Here be+ 主语（名词）+ 其他."，谓语动词用单数形式还是复数形式要根据主语来确定。

从here, there 引导的句子要用全部倒装。但当主语是人称代词时，则不用倒装。

e.g. Here is a dictionary. 这儿有一本字典。

Here are some books. 这儿有一些书。

Here they come. 他们来了。

Here it is. 它在这里。

Ⅲ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

单元话题

现在是晚上八点，Frank 一家人正在进行不同的活动。请你根据下表中提示的信息对他们的活动情况进行描述。

Father	read a book
Mother	clean the room
Grandparents	watch TV
Frank	do his homework
Mary	play computer games

要求：1. 词数：70 左右；

2. 语句通顺、内容详实，可适当发挥。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 注意时态用现在进行时。
2. 注意使用过渡句使文章衔接自然。
3. 注意句式的灵活多样。
4. 正确使用人称——第三人称。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

"4W1H 法"描述事件

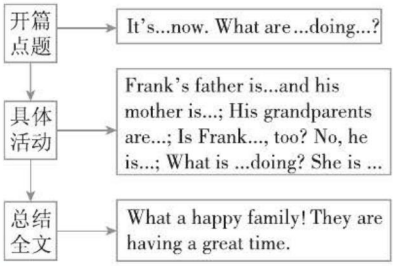
写作话题是描述故事或正在发生的事件时，可使用 4W1H 法，通过对时间



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

（When）、地点（Where）、人物（Who）、事件或活动（What）和人物的感觉或评价（How）等要素进行叙述。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	read, clean, watch, do, play
短语	read a book, clean the room, watch TV, do one's homework, play computer games
句子	① It's...o'clock... ② What are...doing...? ③ Is Frank ...? ④ He is... ⑤ What a...! ⑥ They are...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

It's eight o'clock in the evening now. What are Frank's family doing at home? ① Frank's father is reading a book and his mother is cleaning the room. His grandparents are watching TV. Is Frank watching TV, too? ② No, he is doing his homework. What is his sister Mary doing? ② Oh, she is playing computer games.

What a happy family! ③ They are having a great time.

名师点评：本文运用"4W1H法"描述事件。结构严谨、语言流畅、要点全面、叙述有条理。

第一：明确了时间"when"（eight o'clock in the evening）。

第二：点明了地点"where"（at home）。

第三：介绍了具体人物"who"和各自的活动"what"（包括了表格中所有人和所有活动）；第四：表达了感受"how"。

添彩点：①从时间开头，从设问引入话题。②运用现在进行时按照表格内容逐个描述一家人的活动，特殊疑问句和一般疑问句交叉使用，过渡自然。③结尾用感叹句抒发了感情。



Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞（答案见301页）

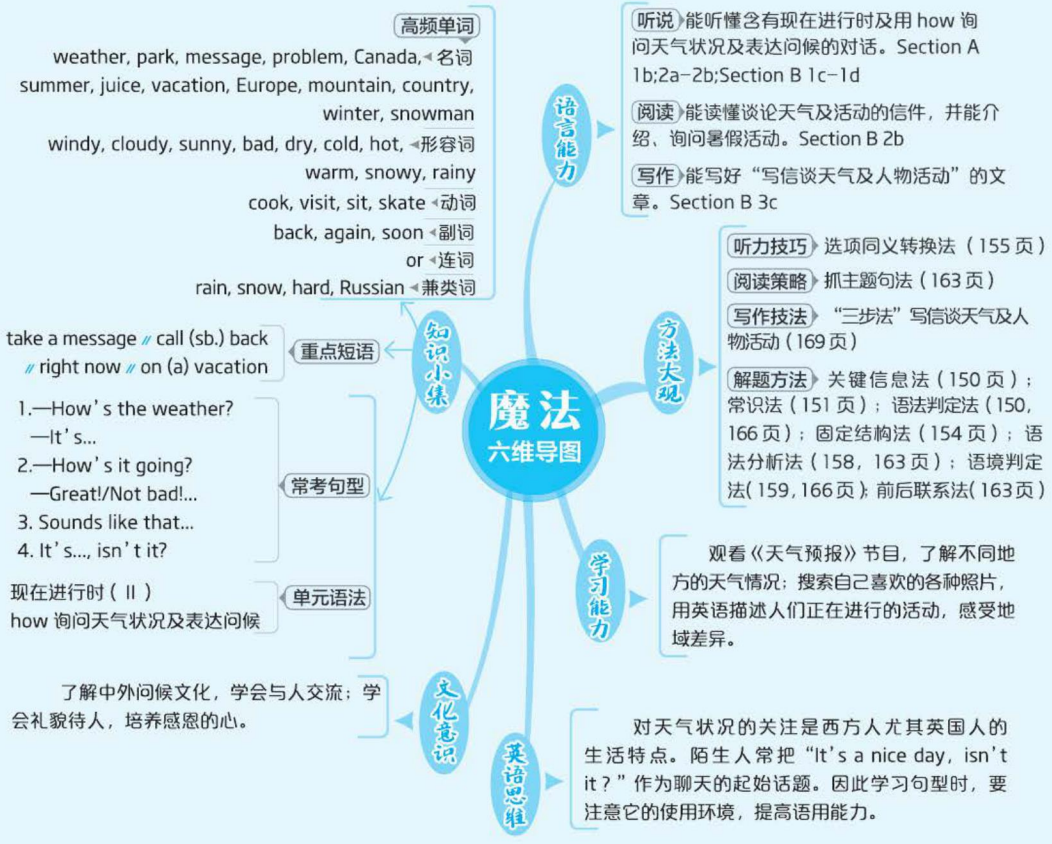
单元知识浓缩

Rosie, a student from Hebei, is now _____[1] in the United States. She is living with an American family. Today is the Dragon Boat Festival. It's 9:00 a.m. and Rosie's family are _____[2] home. Her mom and aunt are _____[3] *zongzi*. Her dad and uncle are _____[4] the boat _____[5] on TV. It's 9:00 p.m. in New York. But there isn't a Dragon Boat Festival in the US, so it's like any _____[6] night for Rosie and her _____[7] family. The mother is _____[8] a story to her children. The father is watching a soccer game on TV. And Rosie is _____[9] on the phone _____[10] her brother. Rosie _____[11] her family and _____[12] to have her mom's delicious *zongzi*.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 7 It's raining!

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a-2d)

Ⅱ必背单词

1.rain *v.* 下雨 *n.* 雨水 → heavy rain 大雨

2.snow *v.* 下雪 *n.* 雪→ snowy（形容词）

3.cook *v.* 做饭 → cooking 现在分词 → cooker *n.* 炊具→ cook *n.* 厨师

4.bad *adj.* 坏的；糟的→ good（反义词）→ badly（副词）→ be bad for 对……不好

5.back *adv.* 回来；回原处→ be/come back 回来

6.problem *n.* 困难；难题→ solve a problem 解决难题

7.windy *adj.* 多风的→ wind（名词）

8.cloudy *adj.* 多云的→ cloud（名词）

9.sunny *adj.* 晴朗的→ sun（名词）→ a sunny day 晴天

10.him *pron.* 他（he 的宾格）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

11.could *modal v.* 能；可以

12.weather *n.* 天气

13.park *n.* 公园→ in the park 在公园里

14.message *n.* 信息；消息

必背短语

15.take a message 捎个口信；传话

16.call （ sb. ） back （给某人）回电话

必背句子

17.—How's the weather in Beijing?

北京的天气怎么样?

—It's sunny. 天气晴朗。

18.—How's it going? 一切都好吗?

—Not bad, thanks. 还不错，谢谢。

19.Sounds like you're having a good time.

听起来你正玩得很开心。

20.Could you just tell him to call me back?

你能让他给我回个电话吗?

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3b)

必背单词

1.again *adv.* 再一次；又一次→ again and again 再三；反复

必背短语

2.right now 此刻；马上

必背句子 & 语法

3.—How's the weather？天气怎么样?

—It's cloudy./It's sunny./It's raining.

天气多云。/ 天气晴朗。/ 天在下雨。

4.—How's it going？一切都好吗?

—Great!/Not bad./Terrible!

好极了！/ 还不错。/ 糟透了！

Period 3 Section B (1a–1e)

必背单词

1.dry *adj.* 干燥的→ wet（反义词）

2.cold *adj.* 寒冷的；冷的→ **hot**（反义词）热的

3.warm *adj.* 温暖的→ cool（反义词）

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

必背单词

1.visit *v.* 拜访；参观→ visitor（名词）游客

2.Canada *n.* 加拿大→ Canadian（形容词 / 名词）加拿大的 / 加拿大人

3.vacation *n.* 假期→ go on a vacation 去度假→ holiday（同义词）

4.Europe *n.* 欧洲→ European 欧洲的；欧洲人

5.country *n.* 国；国家→ countries（复数）

6.sit *v.* 坐→ sit down 坐下　seat → *n.* 座位

7.soon *adv.* 不久；很快

8.hard *adv.* 努力地→ work hard 努力工作

adj. 困难的→ hard work 困难的工作→ difficult（同义词）

9.summer *n.* 夏天；夏季 in summer 在夏天

10.juice *n.* 果汁；饮料

11.mountain *n.* 高山→ in the mountains 在山里

必背句子

12.I'm **having a great time visiting** my aunt in Canada.

我正在加拿大看望我的姑姑，过得很愉快。

13.I'm so happy to see them again.

再次见到他们我是如此高兴。

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

必背单词

1.skate *v.* 滑冰→ skating（现在分词）→ go skating 去滑冰

2.snowy *adj.* 下雪的→ snow（名词；动词）

3.winter *n.* 冬天；冬季→ in winter 在冬天

4.Russian *adj.* 俄罗斯的 →Russia *n.* 俄罗斯

5.rainy *adj.* 阴雨的；多雨的→ rain（名词；动词）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goals: Describe the weather; Describe what you are doing
语言目标：描述天气；描述你正在做什么

1a Match the words with the pictures [a–e]. 将单词与图片［a–e］相匹配。

1. raining/reɪnɪŋ/① ____a____ 正下雨 ____a____
2. windy/ˈwɪndi/ _____ 多风的 _____
3. cloudy/ˈklaʊdi/ _____ 多云的 _____
4. sunny/ˈsʌni/ _____ 晴朗的 _____
5. snowing/snəʊɪŋ/_____ 正下雪 _____

Beijing 北京
—How's the weather/ˈweðə(r)/③ in Shanghai?② 上海的天气怎么样?
—It's cloudy④. 天气多云。

课文听力 1b

1b Listen and write these city names in the boxes above. 听录音并把这些城市的名字写在上面的方框中。

Beijing 北京　Moscow/ˈmɒskaʊ, ˈmɑːskaʊ/ 莫斯科　Toronto/təˈrɒntəʊ, təˈrɑːntəʊ/ 多伦多
Boston/ˈbɒstən, ˈbɑːstən/ 波士顿　Shanghai 上海

1c Imagine you are in one of the places in 1a. Talk about the weather with your friend on the phone.
假设你在 1a 中的一个地方。打电话和你的朋友谈论一下天气。

A:Hi! How's the weather in Beijing? 嗨！北京的天气怎么样?
B:It's sunny. 天气晴朗。

课文听力 2a

2a Listen and number the pictures [1–4]. 听录音并给图片编号［1—4］。

2b Listen again. Match the names with the activities. 再听一遍，把名字与活动相匹配。

1.____c____ Uncle Joe/dʒəʊ/ 乔叔叔	a.is playing computer games. 正在玩电脑游戏。
2._____Jeff/dʒef/ 杰夫	b.is cooking/kʊkɪŋ/⑤. 正在做饭。
3._____Mary 玛丽	c.is playing basketball. 正在打篮球。
4._____Aunt Sally 萨莉姨妈	d.is watching TV. 正在看电视。

2c Talk about the people in 2a with a partner. 和一个同伴谈论 2a 中的人物。

—What's Uncle Joe doing? 乔叔叔正在做什么?
—He's playing basketball. 他正在打篮球。

课文朗读 2d

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演这个对话。

Rick: Hello, Rick speaking. 你好，我是里克。
Steve: Hi, Rick. It's Steve. How's it going?⑥嗨，里克。我是史蒂夫。一切都好吗?
Rick: Not bad/bæd/⑧, thanks.⑦ The weather's great. What are you doing? 还不错，谢谢。天气很棒。你正在做什么?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Steve: I'm playing basketball with some friends at the park/pɑː(r)k/.

我正在公园里和一些朋友打篮球。

Rick: Sounds like you're having a good time⑩. ⑨听起来你正玩得高兴。

Steve: Yeah. Is your brother at home? 是的。你弟弟在家吗?

Rick: Oh, he's not here. He's studying at his friend's home. Can I take a message/'mesɪdʒ/⑪ for him /hɪm/? 噢,他不在。他正在他的朋友家里学习。我可以给他捎个口信吗?

Steve: Yes. Could/kʊd/ you just tell⑫ him to call me back/bæk/⑬? ⑭

可以。你告诉他给我回个电话好吗?

Rick: Sure, no problem /'prɒbləm, 'prɑːbləm/.⑮当然,没问题。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

•考点应用

★raining

①**rain**/reɪn/ *v.* 下雨 *n.* 雨水 rain 的现在分词形式

e.g. It is raining outside. 外面正在下雨。

Does it often rain heavily/hard in your city?

你所在的城市经常下大雨吗?

There is a lot of rain here in summer.

这儿夏天雨水很多。 不可数名词

It's a rainy day today. 今天是雨天。 adj. 多雨的;阴雨的

There will be a heavy rain tomorrow.

明天会有一场大雨。

考题在线1 —Why are you all wet?

—It's _____ heavily. I forgot to take my umbrella! [苏州]

点拨:用语法判定法及关键信息法解题。由空格后的heavily可知需填动词;由关键信息all wet及forgot to take my umbrella可知"雨下得很大";"下雨"是rain,结合空格前的It's可知填raining,构成现在进行时。

考题在线2 —Listen! It's raining _____ outside.

—Wow, look! The yard is full of rainwater now! [襄阳]

A. strongly B. hardly

C. greatly D. heavily

表示"雨下得大"可用heavily或hard修饰rain。

a heavy/light rain表示"一阵/场大/小雨"。

速记小筏:

北京在下雨。

- n. 雨;雨水 There is rain in Beijing.
- adj. 阴雨的 It is rainy in Beijing.
- 现在分词 It is raining in Beijing.

★How's the weather in Shanghai?

重点内容,记记记! 敲黑板

②交际用语【重点】How's the weather? 意为"天气怎么样?"是用来询问天气状况的常用句型,还可以表示为"What's the weather like?",询问某地的天气状况时,在句子末尾加介词短语"in +某地"。回答用"It's+ 描述天气的形容词."

知识微课

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

或直接用描述天气的形容词，也可以用现在进行时进行回答：It's raining/snowing. 正在下雨 / 下雪。

e.g.—How's the weather in Beijing?
(=What's the weather like in Beijing?)
北京的天气怎么样?
—It's raining./It's rainy./Rainy.
正在下雨。/ 是雨天。/ 雨天。

常见的形容天气的形容词有：fine（晴朗的），dry（干燥的），warm（温暖的），cold（寒冷的），cool（凉爽的），hot（炎热的），rainy（阴雨的），snowy（下雪的），sunny（晴朗的），cloudy（多云的）等。

③ **weather**/'weðə(r)/ *n.* 天气

易错警示：多么糟糕的天气啊!
What bad weather! （√）
What a bad weather! （×）

敲黑板 常考点，易错点，理解记住!

weather 是不可数名词，前面不能用不定冠词 a/an，其同音异形词是 whether（是否）。

考题在线 3 — Could you tell me how to start a conversation with people from England?
— I think talking about the _____ is the first choice(选择).

【导学号：8811889】[东营]

A. age　　B. family　　C. money　　D. weather

点拨：用常识法解题。根据英国习俗，人们见面谈论最多的话题是天气。

核心素养之文化意识

了解中外问候文化，学会与人交流

我们都知道，英国人总是在谈论天气，人们经常通过谈论天气打招呼（*greeting*），问候彼此。美国人则用"*Hello!*"或"*Hi!*"。而中国人除了说"你好!"以外，在吃饭后会问"吃过饭了吗?"，都是客套话。美国人有时候不理解，会误会（*misunderstand*），因为这样打招呼有时意味着你想邀请对方去吃饭。中国人也谈论天气，但那不是开头的问候语。

素养行动：主动和别人打招呼，语言要得体舒服（comfortable），令人如沐春风，你会变成一个受欢迎的（popular）人。

素养行动结果：做一个积极主动的（active）、乐观的（optimistic）、好交际的（communicative）人。

★ **It's cloudy.**

④ **cloudy**/'klaʊdi/ *adj.* 多云的

拓展：cloudy 是由名词 cloud（云）加后缀 -y 构成的形容词。类似的还有：

名词+y →
- rain—rainy 阴雨的
- snow—snowy 下雪的
- wind—windy 多风的


cloudy


windy


rainy


snowy

e.g. There are black clouds in the sky. Today is cloudy.
天空中乌云密布。今天是个多云的天气。

考题在线 4 It's _____ (多云的). Maybe it will rain later. [苏州]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

cooking 可作不可数名词，常用于短语 do some cooking，意为“烹饪；做饭”。

cook 用作及物动词，意为“烹调，煮，烧”，其后可接双宾语，即“cook sb. sth. = cook sth. for sb.”。

★... is cooking.

⑤ **cook**/kʊk/ *v.* 做饭　用作不及物动词，意为“做饭”。

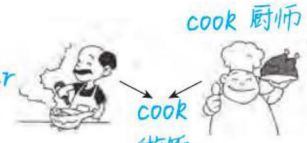
e.g. Xie Tingfeng shows how to cook on his show.

谢霆锋在他的节目上展示如何烹饪。

Mother is cooking dinner for us.

=Mother is cooking us dinner.

妈妈正在为我们做晚饭。



拓展： cook *n.* 厨师；cooker *n.* 炊具

e.g. The cook is cooking with the cooker now.

厨师现在正在用炊具做饭。

★How's it going?

⑥交际用语

本句是询问对方的处境或事情进展如何的习惯用语，后面可跟介词短语“with sb./sth.”，可 与“How's everything？ /How's everything going？”等互换。回答时可用“Not bad./Pretty good!/Wonderful!”等。

e.g.—How's it going with Mary/Mary's study?

玛丽 / 玛丽的学习情况最近怎么样?

—Pretty good! 相当好!



★Not bad, thanks.

⑦交际用语

“Not bad, thanks.”是口语中常用的表达，也可用作“Not so bad./Not too bad.”等。

e.g.—How are you today? 你今天怎么样?

—Not bad, thanks. 还不错，谢谢。

核心素养之文化意识

学会礼貌待人，培养感恩的心

致谢是世界各国人民都遵循的礼仪规范（manners）。在英美等英语国家里，人们对他人给予的巨大帮助要表示感谢。对举手之劳的小事，如扶门、指路等，也要表达谢意。别人应邀参加了你的宴会或聚会，你要表示感谢；别人给你让路，你要表示感谢；别人称赞你，你要表示感谢。

值得注意的是，英美人士表达谢意时都注意言辞适度（moderation）。一般的感谢不要夸大为特别的感谢。所以，无论致谢还是应答，选词的得体性十分重要。

素养行动：面对别人点滴的帮助，真诚地说声“感谢”。真诚(sincerity)让人温暖，感谢让人快乐。

素养行动结果：学会礼貌待人，学会感恩(learn to be grateful)。

⑧ **bad**/bæd/ *adj.* 坏的；糟的　反义词good　副词形式badly

e.g.I'm bad at math. 我不擅长数学。

Smoking is bad for you. 抽烟对你有害。

be bad at 不擅长
be bad for 对……有害

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Sounds like you're having a good time.

⑨交际用语

本句是一个省略句，完整的句子是“It/That sounds like you're having a good time.”。sound like 后接名词或从句，表示“听起来……”。

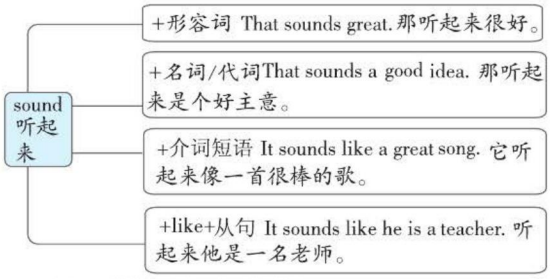
e.g. It sounds like a good idea. 听起来像一个好主意。

It sounds like you are having a good time on your trip.

听起来你旅行玩得很愉快。

温馨提示：英语中类似 sound 这样的感官动词（如 look, smell, taste, feel 等），后面都可加介词 like，再接宾语。

拓展： sound 的用法总结



⑩ **have a good time 玩得开心；过得愉快**

have a good time 意为“玩得开心；过得愉快”，也可表示为 have a great/nice/wonderful time；表示“做某事玩得开心”要说“have a good time doing sth.”；“Have a good time!”还可作为对对方的一种祝福。

★“玩得开心”的不同表达

- have a good/great/wonderful time doing sth.
- have fun 可单独使用，若跟动词，要用动词的 -ing 形式。
- enjoy oneself 这里的反身代词在人称和数上必须与主语一致。

e.g. Everyone is having a good time at the party.

每个人在聚会上都正玩得很开心。

—We want to go on a trip to Qinhuangdao.

我们想到秦皇岛去旅行。

—Have a good time!（祝你们）玩得开心！

考题在线 5 —I'm going on a vacation this weekend.

—_____.

[重庆 B]

A. The same to you　　B. Have a good time

C. Hurry up　　D. Hold on, please

e.g. We have a good time taking a high-speed train.

=We have fun taking a high-speed train.

=We enjoy ourselves taking a high-speed train.

我们乘高铁很开心。

★Can I take a message for him?

⑪ **message**/'mesɪdʒ/ *n.* **信息；消息**

可数名词

e.g. Please take a message for Mike. 请给迈克捎个口信。

辨析：news 与 message

news	不可数名词	消息，新闻
message	可数名词	消息，信息

★message 的相关短语有：

- take a message for sb. 给某人捎口信
- send a text message to sb. 给某人发短信
- leave a message 留言

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线6 When Peter comes, please ask him to leave a（n）_____.

[呼和浩特]

A. notice　　B. message

C. sentence　　D. information

Failure is the mother of success.
失败乃成功之母。

★Could you just tell him to call me back?

常用句型，一定要记熟！敲黑板

⑫交际用语

Could you ...? 意为“你能……吗？”，用于委婉地提出请求。could为情态动词，比can更委婉、客气。肯定回答可用：Sure./Of course./Certainly.“当然可以。”；With pleasure.“很乐意。”；No problem.“没问题。”，否定回答常用Sorry, I can't. I...“抱歉，我不能。我……”。

易错警示：对于“Could you...?”的回答要用can/can't，而不能用could/couldn't。

e.g.—Could you go to the movies with me?

你可以和我一起去看电影吗？

—Sure. 当然。（肯定回答）

—Sorry, I can't. I have to do my homework.（否定回答）

对不起，我不能。我得做我的家庭作业。

考题在线7 —Could you help me with my English after school?

—_____

[锦州]

A. It's a pleasure.　　B. With pleasure.

C. You're welcome.　　D. OK, I could.

点拨:It's a pleasure. 别客气。；With pleasure. 愿意效劳。；You're welcome. 不客气。；OK, I could. 好的，我能。“With pleasure.”用来回答别人对你的“请求”。could一般不用于答语中。

考题在线8 —It's too hot. _____ I swim in the lake?

—No, you _____. That's too dangerous!

[黄石]

A. Should; can't　　B. Need; mustn't

C. Must; needn't　　D. Could; can't

⑬ **tell**/tel/ *v.* 告诉

★tell相关短语：
- tell stories 讲故事
- tell a lie 说谎

tell
- tell sb. sth. 告诉某人某事 — Please tell me your favorite actor. 请告诉我你最喜欢的演员。
- tell sb. about sth. 告诉某人关于某事 — Let me tell you something about our school. 让我告诉你关于我们学校的事情吧。
- tell sb. (not) to do sth. 告诉某人（不）做某事 — Could you please tell him to watch *Fast and Furious*? 请你告诉他看《速度与激情》，好吗？

考题在线9 Parents should tell their children_____unhealthy food. It's bad for their health.

[丹东]

A. not to eat　　B. not eating　　C. to eat　　D. eating

点拨: 用固定结构法解题。tell sb. not to do sth. 是固定结构，意为“告诉

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

某人不要做某事”。

★call sb. back 是“动词+副词”的结构，代词作宾语时，要放在动词和副词之间。

⑭ **call me back 给我回电话**

e.g. Please tell your mother I will call her back this afternoon. 请告诉你妈妈，我今天下午将给她回电话。

When are you coming back? 你什么时候回来？

★back 常用短语
- call back 回电话
- come back 回来
- get back 返回
- go back 回去
- pay back 偿还
- bring back 拿回

★Sure, no problem.

⑮ **交际用语**

本句用来表示同意或愉快地回答请求，意为“当然，没问题/小事一桩。”。

e.g.—Could you help me clean the room? 你能帮我打扫房间吗？

—Sure, no problem. 当然，没问题。

拓展：“No problem”的常见用法还有：

No problem
- 用于礼貌地回答某人的感谢，意为“不用谢；别客气”。
  - —Thank you very much. 非常感谢你。
  - —No problem. 不客气。
- 用来回答道歉，意为“没关系；没什么”。
  - —I'm sorry I can't go with you. 很抱歉我不能和你一起去。
  - —No problem. 没关系。
- 用来表示有能力做某事，意为“没问题；不在话下”。
  - —Can you finish the work in an hour? 你能在一小时内完成这项工作吗？
  - —No problem. 没问题。
- 用来表示安慰，意为“那没关系，那不成问题”。
  - —I left my money at home. 我把钱忘在家里了。
  - —No problem. I can lend you some. 那不成问题，我可以借给你一些。

Industry is the parent of success.
成功源于勤奋。

考题在线 10 —Would you like to go to the movie with me tonight?

—_____. See you then. [贵港]

A. No problem　　B. I'm not free

C. Yes, please　　D. I'm not sure

考题在线答案 1.raining 2.D 3.D 4.cloudy 5.B 6.B 7.B 8.D 9.A 10.A

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力20分

(答案见301页)

听力技巧

选项同义转换法（在做听力题时，我们会遇到一些题目，它的正确选项并不是听力原文，而是进行了某些同义变化的另外的表达方式。这就要求我们观察所给选项，将每个选项在头脑中进行加工，进行转化，如所给选项是 rainy，我们可以考虑它在原文中的说法可能是“It's raining.”。如此训练后，会帮助我们大大提高做对题的概率。）

听力过程

课文听力1b

一、听 1b 完成以下习题

1.Which city is snowing?

A. Shanghai.　　B. Moscow.

C. Beijing.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2.It's _____in Boston.

A. windy B. sunny C. rainy

3.How's the weather in Beijing?

A. Rainy. B. Snowy. C. Sunny.

4.The weather in Toronto is _____.

A. rainy B. cloudy C. windy

二、听2a，补全句子



5.Uncle Joe is outside. It's _____ and really warm. He's _____.

6. Aunt Sally is busy _____. Mary is only watching TV. What about Jeff? He's just playing _____.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞(答案见301页)

一、根据首字母提示完成句子

1. When do you usually come b_____ home?

2. My aunt is a cook. She likes c_____ very much.

3. —How's the w_____ in New York?
—It's cloudy.

4.We should go now. Do you have any p_____?

5.They often take a walk in the p_____ near their house.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6.The teachers often tell us _____ (not swim) in the river. It's dangerous. [百色改编]

7.We are going to Mount Fanjing if it is _____ (sun) tomorrow. [铜仁]

8.The day is _____ (cloud), but the sun is going to come out.

9.This kind of food is _____ (badly) for animals.

10.There's lots of _____ (rainy) in Sichuan.

三、单项选择

11. — _____the weather in your city?
—It's windy.

A. What B. How

C. What's D. How's

12. —How's everything going in the hospital, dear?
—_____. [武汉]

A. I'm all right. Thanks

B. Not too bad, I guess

C. Not at all

D. That's all right. Thank you

13. —My parents will take me to Shanghai Disneyland this summer holiday.
—_____. [葫芦岛]

A Good luck to you

B. It's a good idea

C. Best wishes to you

D. Have a good time

14. —Hello. This is Leo speaking. Is that John?
—Sorry, he isn't in. _____ [恩施]

A. Please hold on.

B. May I take a message?

C. What are you saying to him?

15. —Could you please take out the rubbish?
—_____. But I want to drink a cup of water first. [临沂]

A. Thank you B. Sure, no problem

C. You're welcome D. No, I can't

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3b）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

How's the weather? 天气怎么样?	It's cloudy./It's sunny./It's raining. 天气多云。/ 天气晴朗。/ 天在下雨。
What are you doing? 你正在做什么?	I'm cooking. 我正在做饭。
What are they doing? 他们正在做什么?	They're playing basketball in the park. 他们正在公园里打篮球。
What's he doing? 他正在做什么?	He's studying at his friend's home. 他正在他的朋友家里学习。
How's it going? 一切还好吗?	Great!/Not bad./Terrible! 好极了! / 还不错。/ 糟透了!

3a Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in the box. Then practice the conversations with a partner. 用方框内动词的正确形式填空，然后和一个同伴练习这些对话。

be 是　play 踢（球）　study 学习　talk 谈话　do 做　make 制作

1.**A:**What are you doing? 你正在做什么?

B:I _____ my homework. I always _____ my homework in the evening. 我_____我的家庭作业。我总是在晚上_____我的家庭作业。

2.**A:**What's John doing right now①? 约翰此刻在做什么?

B:He _____ soccer. He _____ soccer every Saturday. 他_____足球。他每周六_____足球。

3.**A:**_____Julie _____ English right now? 朱莉现在_____英语吗?

B:No, she isn't. She _____ Chinese. 不，她没有。她_____汉语。

4.**A:**What are Julie and Jane doing? 朱莉和简正在做什么?

B:They _____ soup. They can _____ very good soup. 她们_____汤。她们能_____非常好的汤。

5.**A:**_____Lisa _____ on the phone again/əˈgen,əˈgeɪn/②? 莉萨又在电话里_____吗?

B:Yes, she _____ on the phone for three hours every day! 是的，她每天要在电话里_____三个小时!

3b Yuan Yuan from CCTV is interviewing people in five different places. Fill in the chart below. 来自中央电视台的袁圆正在采访五个不同地方的人。填下面的表格。

How's the weather? 天气怎么样?	What are they doing? 他们正在做什么?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★What's John doing right now?

① **right now 此刻；马上**

e.g. Mum is cooking right now.

妈妈此刻正在做饭。

I have to go right now.

我马上得走了。

- right now = at the moment，相当于 now，可用于现在进行时句子中。
- right now 也可表示"立刻；马上"，与 right away/in a minute/at once/immediately 同义。

★有关 again 的短语

- again and again 再三；一再；反复；三番五次
- once again 再一次
- now and again 时而，不时

★Is Lisa talking on the phone again?

② **again**/əˈgen/, /əˈgeɪn/ *adv.* **再一次；又一次**

e.g. Would you please say that again?

请你再说一遍好吗？

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

现在进行时（Ⅱ）

考点1 有关现在进行时的注意事项

考向：不能用于现在进行时的情况：

不能用于现在进行时的情况

- 表示感官的动词：hear, see, taste, sound, notice, smell等。 — The food smells good. 这个食物闻起来不错。
- 表示占有、从属、构成等关系的动词：have, own, contain（包含），possess（拥有）等。 — I have two brothers and a sister. 我有两个哥哥和一个姐姐。
- 表示思想、理解的动词：understand, doubt, believe, know, recognize, remember, forget, think等。 — I know what he is doing. 我知道他正在做什么。 I forget what he said. 我忘记他说什么了。
- 表示存在的状况：be, remain等。 — Tom is a good student. 汤姆是个好学生。
- 表示感情、希望的动词：like, love, hate, prefer, need, want, wish等。 — I want a schoolbag and a pencil box. 我想要一个书包和一个铅笔盒。

[**注意**] 当 have 表示"开会；吃饭；玩得高兴"等意思时可以用于现在进行时。

e.g. They are having a good time.

他们正玩得高兴。

考点2 现在进行时的特殊疑问句

考向：构成

1. 疑问词 +be+ 动词的 -ing 形式 + 其他？（对主语提问）
2. 疑问词 +be+ 主语 + 动词的 -ing 形式 + 其他？（对非主语提问）

e.g. Jack is waiting for the bus.（对主语提问）

杰克正在等公共汽车。

→Who is waiting for the bus?

谁正在等公共汽车？

They are listening to music.（对非主语提问）

他们正在听音乐。

→What are they doing? 他们正在做什么？

考题在线1 I am having dinner at home.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ you _____ dinner?

点拨：用语法分析法解题。要求是对地点进行提问，所以疑问词要用 where；原句是现在进行时，问句也要用相同时态，主语改为了 you，所以 be 动词用 are，having 不变。

考题在线2 —Hi, Lucy. _____ is your birthday?

—My birthday is on May 2nd. [昆明]

A. What　　B. Why

C. When　　D. Where

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

how 询问天气状况及表达问候

考点 3 how 询问天气状况

讲解见本书 Unit 7 Period 1 考点 2 内容。

考点 4 how 用于寒暄问候语

考向：朋友见面打招呼或者寒暄时，常常用到“How is it going?”意为“一切可好 / 近来怎样?”，此类表达还有：

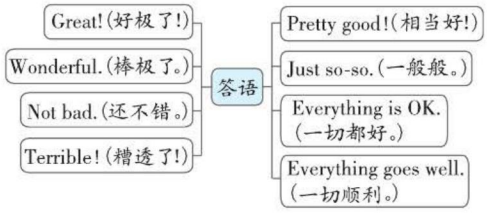
How are things with you?

How are you doing?

How is everything?

How are you getting on?

对此类问候的回答常用：



考题在线 3 —Tim, how is it going with you?

—_____. I'm having fun. [云南]

A. Terrible B. Boring

C. Very tiring D. Pretty good

考题在线 4 —Hey, Jane. _____ are you feeling now?

—Much better. Thanks. [黄石]

A. What B. Where

C. How D. When

点拨：用语境判定法解题。问句是现在进行时的特殊疑问句，由答语中“Much better.”可知要用 How 提问。

考题在线答案 1.Where are;having 2.C 3.D 4.C

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

☞(答案见 301 页)

一、单项选择

1. —The bookstore _____ a big sale. The books there must be very cheap now.

—Sounds great. Let's go into it and have a look. [十堰]

A. will have B. had

C. is having D. was having

2. — Cathy, can you answer the door? I _____the room.

—I'm coming, Mum. [安徽]

A. clean B. cleaned

C. have cleaned D. am cleaning

3. —Hi, Tom. How is everything?（同义替换）

—Pretty good.

A. How is it going? B. How do you like?

C. How old are you? D. How is the weather?

4. It _____. Please take an umbrella with you, Annie. [河北]

A. rains B. is raining

C. rained D. was raining

5. —Would you mind turning down your music player? Everybody _____ now!

—I'm sorry. I'll do it right now.

A. sleep B. slept

C. is sleeping D. are sleeping

二、根据括号内的要求完成下列句子，每空一词（含缩写）

6. It's raining here today.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____the weather here today?

7. —How's the weather in Jinan?（补全答语）

—_____ snowing.

8. How's the weather in London?（改为同义句）

_____ the weather _____ in London?

9. Bob and Jane are playing chess.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____Bob and Jane _____?

10. Some children are flying kites.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ flying kites?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a **Match the words with the pictures.** 把单词和图片相匹配。

1.__d__dry/draɪ/ ① 干燥的　　2._____cold/kəʊld/ ② 寒冷的

3._____cool 凉爽的　　4._____warm/wɔ:(r)m/ 温暖的

5._____hot/hɒt, hɑ:t/ 热的

1b **Ask and answer questions about the weather in the pictures in 1a.** 就 1a 图片中的天气进行提问并回答问题。

—How's the weather in picture d? 图片 d 中的天气怎么样?

—It's dry. 天气干燥。

1c **Listen and write what Mary and Eric answer to *How's it going*.** 听录音并写出玛丽和埃里克对日子过得怎么样的回答。

课文听力 1c

	How's it going? 日子过得怎么样?	What are you doing? 你正在干什么?	How's the weather? 天气怎么样?
Mary 玛丽			
Eric 埃里克	great 好极了		

1d **Listen again. Write the answers to *What are you doing* and *How's the weather*.** 再听一遍。写出对你正在干什么和天气怎么样的回答。

1e **Role-play a conversation between Mary and Eric.** 分角色表演一个玛丽和埃里克之间的对话。

—Hi! How's it going? 嗨！日子过得怎么样?

—Hello... Oh, not too bad! What are you doing? 你好……哦，不是太坏！你正在干什么?

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见 301 页）

听力过程

听 1c，选择正确答案

课文听力 1c

1. How's it going with Eric?

A. Not bad.

B. Great.

C. Terrible.

2. What is Eric doing?

A. He's doing his homework.

B. He's watching a movie.

C. He's having a party.

3. How's the weather in Eric's place?

A. It's sunny and cloudy.

B. It's snowing.

C. It's cold and it's raining.

4. What's the weather like in Mexico?

A. Hot, dry and sunny.

B. Hot, cloudy and rainy.

C. Cold, sunny and dry.

5. What is Mary doing in Mexico?

A. Studying English.

B. Visiting her grandmother.

C. Staying with her parents.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点应用　　•考点批注

★dry

① **dry**/draɪ/ *adj.* 干燥的　用作表语或定语，反义词 wet 潮湿的。

e.g. The weather is hot and dry.

天气炎热且干燥。

速记小筏：

dry —反义词→ wet（潮湿的）

dry → cry（哭）→ try（尝试）

dry-dried（过去式）→ dries（第三人称单数）

拓展：【难点】① dry 可用作及物动词，意为“使干燥；弄干”。

e.g. Don't cry! Dry your eyes.

别哭了！擦干你的眼睛。

② dry 可用作不及物动词，意为“变干”。

e.g. The wet clothes will soon dry in the sun.

湿衣服在阳光下很快就会干。

★cold

② **cold**/kəʊld/ *adj.* 寒冷的；冷的　形容天气

e.g. It's a cold morning. 这是一个寒冷的早晨。

A cold hand and a warm heart. 刀子嘴，豆腐心。　形容人的特征或感觉

速记小筏：

cold（冷的）—形近词→ old（老的；旧的）

cold（冷的）—反义词→ hot（热的；炎热的）

形容天气的词还有 hot（热的；炎热的）、warm（温暖的）等。

辨析：cold 与 cool

cold	①作形容词时意为“冷的”，其反义词为 hot。②作名词时意为“伤风；感冒”。	It's a cold winter. 这是一个寒冷的冬天。 She is in bed with a cold. 她因感冒而卧床。
cool	形容词，意为“凉爽的”，其反义词为 warm。也意为“酷的”。	It's very cool today. 今天天气很凉爽。 I like Liu Chao. He is very cool. 我喜欢刘超。他很酷。



Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

☞（答案见301页）

根据句意及所给提示补全句子

1. The weather in winter here is very d_____. We need to drink more water.
2. It's w_____ in spring and you don't need to wear many clothes.
3. On a c_____ winter evening, I don't want to go out.
4. It's very _____（热的）in the room, so we need to open the windows.
5. The weather here is _____（凉爽的）all the year round.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

2a Talk about the pictures below with a partner. How's the weather? What are the people doing? 和一个同伴谈论下面的图片。天气怎么样？人们正在做什么？

2b Match each postcard below with the correct picture in 2a. 把下面的每一张明信片和 2a 中正确的图片相匹配。

Dear Jane, 亲爱的简：

How's it going? I'm having a great time visiting ① ② my aunt in Canada ③. She's working here and I'm going to summer school. I'm studying English and I'm learning a lot. I'm also visiting some of my old friends. I'm so happy ④ to see them again. It's afternoon right now, and I'm sitting by ⑤ the pool and drinking orange juice. It's warm and sunny, and it's very relaxing here.

课文朗读 2b

日子过得怎么样？我正在加拿大看望我的姑姑，过得很愉快。她在这儿工作，我将要去上暑期学校。我正在学习英语并学到很多。我也在拜访我的一些老朋友。再次见到他们我是如此高兴。现在是下午，我正坐在游泳池旁边，喝着橙汁。天气温暖又晴朗，并且这儿非常令人放松。

See you soon ⑥. 希望尽快见到你。

Su Lin 苏林

To 寄

Jane 简

Dear Jane, 亲爱的简：

How's your summer vacation going? Are you studying hard ⑦, or are you having fun? I'm having a great time in Europe! My family and I are on a vacation ⑧ in the mountainsI want to call you but my phone isn't working ⑨, so I'm writing to ⑩ you. It's hot in your country now, isn't it? ⑪ The weather here is cool and cloudy, just right for walking.

你的暑假过得怎样？你正在努力学习还是正玩得开心？我正在欧洲愉快地玩！我和我的家人正在山里度假。我想给你打电话但我的电话坏了，因此我在给你写信。你的国家现在很热，不是吗？这儿的天气凉爽又多云，正适合散步。

See you next month. 下个月见。

Dave 戴夫

To 寄

Jane 简

2c Fill in the chart with information from the postcards in 2b. 用 2b 中明信片中的信息来填表格。

Name 名字	Where are they? 他们在哪儿？	How's the weather? 天气怎么样？	What are they doing? 他们正在做什么？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 20分

(答案见301页)

阅读策略

抓主题句法(阅读本部分的信件,可通过抓主题句法。抓住了主题句也就抓住了文章的大意。第一张明信片:由主题句"I'm having a great time visiting..."可明确写信人的活动;第二张明信片:由开篇第一句的问候"How's your summer vacation...?"便可知写信人写信的目的是想了解对方暑假生活的情况。)

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读2b,选择正确答案

1. What are the passages mainly about? (主旨大意题)

A.The summer vacation.

B.The weather in summer.

C.How to write a letter.

D.Where to go.

二、细读文章,完成下列题目

2. Where is Su Lin? (细节理解题)

A. In Australia. B. In Canada.

C. In Europe. D. In Africa.

3. What is Su Lin doing now? (细节理解题)

A. Working with her aunt.

B. Listening to the beautiful music.

C. Playing with some of her old friends.

D. Sitting by the pool and drinking orange juice.

4. Dave and his family are_____. (细节理解题)

A. at home B. on the beach

C. in the mountains D. by the lake nearby

5. The weather in Europe is_____. (细节理解题)

A. warm and sunny B. cold and snowy

C. hot and windy D. cool and cloudy

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★I'm having a great time visiting my aunt in Canada.

① have a great time visiting... 拜访……很愉快

e.g. The boys are having a great time playing basketball.

男孩们正在愉快地打篮球。

have a great time doing... 意为"愉快地做……",相当于"have fun doing sth."。

考题在线1 Yunnan Museum is such an interesting place that many kids have a great time _____ it. [昆明改编]

A. visiting B. to visit C. reading D. to read

点拨:用语法分析法及前后联系法解题。have a great time doing sth. 表示"做某事很开心",故排除选项B和D;由主语Yunnan Museum可知,谓语动词应用visit"参观"。

② visit/ˈvɪzɪt/ *v.* **拜访;参观**

e.g.I visit my grandfather on weekends. 我在周末看望我爷爷。

I am happy to visit the Disneyland. 我很高兴参观迪士尼乐园。

visit sb. 拜访某人
visit+地点名词 参观某地

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

一语辨异：

The two boys are from Canada. They are Canadians. The Canadian boys like China very much. 这两个男孩来自加拿大，他们是加拿大人。这两个加拿大男孩非常喜欢中国。

拓展： ① visit 可用作名词，意为“访问；参观；拜访；游览”。

e.g. This is my first visit to China. 这是我第一次访问中国。

② visitor *n.* 参观者；游客

e.g. There are many visitors in Beijing every year. 每年北京都有许多游客。

③ **Canada**/ˈkænədə/ *n.* **加拿大**

e.g. My cousin studies in Canada. 我的表哥在加拿大求学。

拓展： Canadian 用作形容词，意为“加拿大的”；用作名词，意为“加拿大人”，复数是 Canadians。

e.g. She is a Canadian girl. 她是个加拿大女孩。

They are Canadians. 他们是加拿大人。

★I'm so happy to see them again.

④ **be happy 的用法**

- be happy to do sth. 做某事很开心
- be happy about sth. 对某事/物感到满意
- be happy+that 从句 很高兴……

e.g. He is happy to pass the exam. 他通过考试很开心。

My teacher is happy about the result. 我的老师对结果很满意。

He is happy that he can see his favourite singer, Li Jian. 他很高兴能看到他最喜欢的歌手李健。

★It's afternoon right now, and I'm sitting by the pool and drinking orange juice.

⑤ **by**/baɪ/ *prep.* **在……旁边**

e.g. James is standing by the door. 詹姆斯正站在门旁边。

辨析：by, near, beside 与 next to

by	（可与 beside 互换）在……旁边	Come and sit by me. 过来挨着我坐。
near	在……附近，与目标物有一定距离	I live near the park. 我住在公园附近。
beside	在……旁边	The shop is beside the river. 那家商店在河旁边。
next to	与……相邻	The hotel is next to the church. 旅馆就在教堂隔壁。

by
- by+交通工具 乘坐……
- 表示“用某种方法或手段”
- by oneself 单独，独自
- by the way 顺便说一下

拓展： by 的其他用法

e.g. Uncle Wang goes to work by car. 王叔叔开车去上班。

The young man makes a living by delivering. 这个年轻人通过送外卖谋生。

She can handle this by herself. 这点事她一个人能应付。

By the way, do you like the program *Super Brain*? 顺便问一下，你喜欢《最强大脑》节目吗？

★See you soon.

⑥ **soon**/suːn/ *adv.* **不久；很快**

辨析：soon 与 fast（见 Unit 2 Period 4 考点 1）

e.g. Please come here soon. 请快点来这儿。

The boy runs very fast. 这个男孩跑得很快。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★Are you studying hard, or are you having fun?

⑦ **hard**/hɑ:(r)d/ *adv.* 努力地 *adj.* 困难的 → adv. 努力地

e.g.Jack works very hard and the boss likes him very much.

杰克工作很努力，老板很喜欢他。

It's raining hard. 雨正下得很大。

敲黑板 hardly 不是 hard 的副词形式，牢记！

辨析：hard 与 hardly adv. 大量地

hard 意为“努力地，艰难地；大量地”，用在实义动词后；hardly 意为“几乎不，几乎没有”，用在实义动词前。

e.g.It is raining so hard that we can hardly go out. 雨下得这么大，我们几乎出不去。

考题在线 2 It is _____ for him to get to school on time, because it is raining _____. [宜宾]

A. hard; hardly B. hardly; hard C. hard; hard

adj. 坚硬的；困难的

hard

adv. 大量地；费力地

★My family and I are on a vacation in the mountains.

⑧ **on a vacation 在度假**

e.g.They're on（a）vacation in Paris. 他们正在巴黎度假。

辨析：vacation 与 holiday

vacation	主要用于美式英语，既可表示长时间的假期，也可指一两天的短时间的假日，在英式英语中则主要指“大学的假期”。
holiday	单数形式可指一两天的短期假日；较长期的假期常用复数形式，但也可用单数形式。

e.g.The Greens are on vacation. 格林一家在度假。

on a vacation 相当于 on vacation，介词 on 用来说明活动或状态。

- go on vacation “去度假”，表示动作；
- be on vacation “在度假”，表示状态。

★I want to call you but my phone isn't working, so I'm writing to you.

⑨ **work**/wɜ:k/ *v.* 工作

work 用来表示仪器、设备的“运作；运行；工作”，这种情形下，若用于否定结构，大多表示某一物件“坏掉了”或“不运作了”。

e.g.The clock isn't working now. 现在钟坏了。

⑩ **write to... 给……写信**

e.g.I often hear from my pen pal.

=I often receive/get a letter from my pen pal.

我经常收到我笔友的来信。

- write to sb.= write a letter to sb. 给某人写信
- hear from sb.= receive/get a letter from sb. 收到某人的来信
- write back to sb. 给某人回信

★It's hot in your country now, isn't it?

⑪ **句法分析【重点】**

这是一个反意疑问句。反意疑问句一般由两部分组成：“陈述句＋简略问句？”，其基本结构有两种：“肯定陈述句＋否定式的简略问句？”和“否定陈述句＋肯定式的简略问句？”。反意疑问句的前后两部分在人称、时态和数上都要保持一致。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

速记小筏：
反意疑问句用法歌诀：
反意问句要点三，
前后谓语正相反；
附加问句not现，
必须缩写是习惯；
最后一点应注意，
问句主语代词填。

e.g. —Bill doesn't want to go shopping, does he?
比尔不想去购物，是吧？
—Yes, he does./No, he doesn't. 不，他想。/是的，他不想。

敲黑板 “前肯后否，前否后肯”重点记忆！

注意：【难点】【易错点】对反意疑问句的回答要根据实际情况而定。事实为肯定的就用 Yes 回答，事实为否定的就用 No 回答。Yes 后面一定跟肯定句，No 后面一定跟否定句。

考题在线 3 Professor Tu Youyou never stops doing research on Chinese medicine, _____? [上海]

A. is she B. does she C. isn't she D. doesn't she

点拨：用语法判定法解题。反意疑问句遵循“前肯后否，前否后肯”原则。陈述句中有否定词 never，属于“前否后肯”型的反意疑问句，所以附加问句中应用肯定形式；前面的行为动词 stops 说明附加问句中要借助于助动词 does。

考题在线 4 —He didn't go to school, did he?
— _____, though he had a stomachache. [黄石]

A. No, he didn't B. Yes, he didn't
C. Yes, he did D. No, he did

点拨：用语境判定法解题。由后面“虽然他胃痛”可知，他还是去上学了。反意疑问句要根据事实回答，故回答 Yes，后面内容与之保持一致，用肯定句。

考题在线答案 1.A 2.C 3.B 4.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见301页)

一、根据句意及所给提示补全句子

1. She is v_____ an old friend in Beijing.
2. It's very hot in s_____.
3. Different _____（国家）have different stories.
4. He lives in a m_____ village.
5. A little boy is_____（坐）behind the door.

二、单项选择

6. A woman stood _____ the window, watching the children playing games in the garden. [德州]

A. past B. through
C. across D. by

7. He has a great time _____ football after school.

A. play B. playing
C. to play D. plays

8. You should _____ a letter _____ him.

A. write; to B. write; on
C. wrote; to D. wrote; on

9. —Steven had nothing for breakfast this morning,_____? [黔南、黔东南、黔西南]
—No. Because he had a fever.

A. hadn't he B. had he
C. didn't he D. did he

10. —Can I use your phone, John? Mine doesn't _____.
—Sure. Here you are.

A. use B. keep
C. work D. go

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、根据汉语意思完成句子

11. 布莱克一家正在加拿大度假。

The Blacks are _____ _____ _____ in _____.

12. 这天气正适合游泳。

The weather is _____ _____ _____ swimming.

13. 李明学习很努力，很快他就能做完作业了。

Li Ming _____ _____, and he can finish his homework _____.

14. 我很高兴参观这个美丽的地方。

I _____ _____ _____visit this beautiful place.

15. 我想给你打电话，但是我的电话坏了。

I want _____ _____ you but my phone isn't _____.

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 用方框内的单词来填空。

skating/skeɪtɪŋ/ 滑冰	buying 买	playing 玩
taking 照、拍	snowy/ˈsnəʊi/ 下雪的	windy 多风的

Dear Xiao Lu, 亲爱的肖露：

It's winter/ˈwɪntə(r)/ in Harbin. The weather is _____ and_____. People are wearing hats and sweaters, but they're having fun. Friends are _____ Russian/ˈrʌʃn/ bread to take home. In a park, some boys are _____ in the snow. One girl is _____ on a river and a man is _____ a photo of a snowman/ˈsnəʊmæn/.

哈尔滨现在是冬天。天气_____又_____。人们戴着帽子、穿着毛衣，但他们玩得开心。朋友们在_____俄罗斯面包带回家。在一个公园里，一些男孩正在雪里_____。一个女孩正在河上_____，一位男士正在给一个雪人_____照片。

I miss you. 我想你。

Kate 凯特

3b Imagine you are on vacation. Write notes about your vacation. 设想你在度假。记录一下关于你假期的情况。

Where are you? 你在哪里?

What's the weather like? 天气怎么样?

What are you doing right now? 你现在正在做什么?

What are your friends or family doing? 你的朋友们或家人正在做什么?

Are you having a good time? 你正玩得高兴吗?

3c Write a postcard to a friend. Tell your friend about your vacation and what you are doing. 给一个朋友写一张明信片。告诉你的朋友关于你的假期的情况和你正在做什么。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Self Check 自我检测

1 Add more words in each box. 在每个方框内加上更多的词。

Feelings 感觉	great, 好极了,
Weather 天气	cool, 凉爽的,
Activities 活动	playing ping-pong, 打乒乓球,

2 Match the sentences on the left with the responses on the right. 把左边的句子与右边的回答相匹配。

A: Hello? Jenny speaking. 你好？我是珍妮。

A: Sorry, she's not at home. Can I take a message? 对不起，她不在家。我可以捎个口信儿吗？

A: Sure, no problem. 当然，没问题。

B: Thank you. Bye. 谢谢。再见。

B: Hi, Jenny. It's Steve here. May I speak to Laura, please? 嗨，珍妮。我是史蒂夫。请问我可以和劳拉说话吗？

B: Yes. Could you ask her to call me at 8765-4321? 可以。你能叫她拨 8765-4321 给我打电话吗？

3 Put these sentences in order to make a conversation. Then write your own conversation. 把这些句子排序组成一个对话。然后写一写你自己的对话。

_____It's raining and very cool. 天在下雨，很凉爽。

_____Not too bad. 不太坏。

_____I'm reading a book in my room. 我正在我的房间里读书。

_____What are you doing in the rainy/ˈreɪni/ weather? 在雨天里你正在做什么？

_____How's the weather in Nanjing? 南京的天气怎么样？

_____Hi, Jill! How's it going? 嗨，吉尔！日子过得怎么样？

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注

take a photo/ photos of sb./sth. 意为"给某人/某物拍照"。

take 构成的词组：
take a walk 散步
take a bus 乘公共汽车
take some exercise 做些运动
take a vacation 度假

•考点应用

★**...a man is taking a photo of a snowman.**

take a photo 拍照 相当于 take photos

e.g. Do you like taking photos of animals?
你喜欢给动物拍照吗？

【**重点**】名词 photo 变为复数形式时要加 -s, 而不是 -es。以 -o 结尾的名词变复数时加 -es 的有：

tomato → tomatoes（西红柿）
potato → potatoes（土豆；马铃薯）
hero → heroes（英雄）

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

单元话题

假如你叫 Mary，现在给你的笔友 Nancy 写信，介绍你的家庭成员及其活动，还有天气情况。提供材料如下：

季节	气候
夏天	很热，多雨
冬天	多风且很冷

家庭成员	职业	活动
爸爸	记者	正在看电视
妈妈	老师	正在洗衣服
姐姐	护士	正在和朋友打电话

要求：语法正确，语句通顺，不少于 80 词。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 描述天气和人们的活动时要按照先天气后活动的顺序来写，并把天气与人们的活动结合起来。

2. 描写人们的活动时要用现在进行时，并把人们的感受也写一写。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

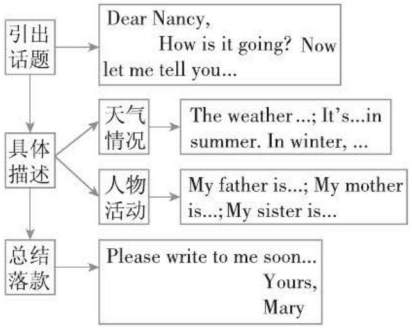
“三步法”写信谈天气及人物活动

第一步：问候及引出话题

第二步：分别谈论天气和人物活动

第三步：结尾与落款

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	tell, weather, reporter, nurse, hot, rain, summer, winter, cold, stay
短语	tell sb. sth., a TV station, right now, talk on the phone, stay at home, write to sb.
句子	① How's it going? ② Let sb. tell sb. sth. ③ Sb. is talking on the phone with sb. ④ The weather in sb.'s city is...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Dear Nancy,

How is it going? Now let me tell you something about my family and the weather in my city.

The weather in my city isn't good. It's very hot and it often rains in summer. ① In winter, we often stay at home because it's windy and quite cold. ② Right now, it's too cold to go outside, so we stay at home. ③ My father is a reporter and he works at a TV station. Now he is watching TV. My mother is a teacher. She teaches music. She is washing clothes. My sister is a nurse and she is talking on the phone with her friend. ①

Please write to me soon and tell me something about your family and the weather in your city.

Yours,

Mary

名师点评：本文用“三步法”写信谈天气及人物活动。

1. 问候及引出话题——第一段。

2. 分别谈论天气和人物活动——第二段。

3. 结尾与落款——第三段。层次清晰，语言流畅。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

添彩点：①并列连词 and 连接两个并列的句子，使句子有感染力。
②本句使用了原因状语从句，使文章表现形式丰富多样。
③此处使用了“too...to...”的结构，句子看似简单，实则包含丰富的含义；so 连接的句子表结果和前面的原因状语从句相呼应，避免了句式的单一。



Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见302页)

单元知识浓缩

根据所给汉语提示完成短文

What's the weather like in _____[1]（春天）? It's often _____[2]（有风的）in March. It _____[3]（下雨）sometimes and everything looks fresh and green.

What's the weather like in _____[4]（夏天）? It's _____[5]（热的）in the day and _____[6]（凉爽的）at night. It usually _____[7]（下大雨）in July and August. Students have summer vacation in these two months and they would like _____[8]（参观）some beautiful places.

For me, autumn is the best season in my city. Because it's _____[9]（温暖的）and _____[10]（阳光明媚的）. We can go to the beach to go on a _____[11]（假期）.

How's the weather in _____[12]（冬季）? It often _____[13]（下雪）, so we usually have a great time _____[14]（堆雪人）. I like winter because I can _____[15]（去滑冰）on the ice.

What a great year!

All that you do, do with your might; things done by halves are never right.
凡事要做，尽力去做；半途而废，就是大错。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 8 Is there a post office near here?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1.police *n.* 警察→policeman 男警察→policewoman 女警察

2.hospital *n.* 医院→in hospital 生病住院→in the hospital 在医院

3.street *n.* 大街→on/in the street 在大街上

4.pay *v.&n.* 付费→pay for 支付

5.behind *prep.* 在……的后面→in front of 在……前面

6.hotel *n.* 旅馆；酒店→family hotel 家庭旅馆

7.restaurant *n.* 餐馆→fast food restaurant 速食店

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

8.near *prep.* 在……附近→ next to（近义词）
9.across *adv.& prep.* 过；穿过→ cross *v.* 穿过
10.around *prep.* 在……周围；*adv.* 在周围；大约
→ show sb. around 带某人参观
11.post *n.* 邮政→ postcard 明信片
12.office *n.* 办公室→ in the office 在办公室里
13.bank *n.* 银行→ go to the bank 去银行
14.town *n.* 镇；市镇→ in town 在城镇
15.front *n.* 前面

‖必背短语

16.post office 邮局
17.police station 警察局
18.pay phone 付费电话
19.across from 在……对面

‖必背句子

20.—Is there a hospital near here?
这附近有医院吗?
—Yes, there is. 是的，有。
21. The pay phone **is across from** the library.
付费电话在图书馆对面。
22.Where's the hospital?
医院在哪儿?
23.How can I help you?
我怎么帮你呢?

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

‖必背单词

1.north *n.* 北；北方 *adj.* 北方的→ in the north of
在……的北方

‖必背句子 & 语法

2.—Are there any restaurants near here?
这附近有一些餐馆吗?
—Yes, there's one in front of the post office.
是的，在邮局前面有一家。

Period 3 Section B (1a–1d)

‖必背单词

1.right *adv.* 向右边 *n.* 右边→ on the right 在右边
2.left *adv.* 向左边 *n.* 左边→ on the left 在左边
3.along *prep.* 沿着→ down（近义词）
4.turn *v.* 转向；翻→ turn to... 转向……
5.crossing *n.* 十字路口→ cross *v.* 穿过

‖必背短语

6.go along (the street) 沿着（这条街）走
7.turn right/left 向右 / 左转

‖必背句子

8.Go along Long Street and it's on the right.
沿着长街走，它在右边。
9.Turn right at the first crossing and the restaurant is **on your left**, across from the pay phone.
在第一个十字路口向右转，餐馆在你的左边，付费电话的对面。

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

‖必背单词

1.spend *v.* 花（时间、钱等）→ spend time doing sth. 花费时间做某事
2.enjoy *v.* 享受；喜爱→ enjoy doing sth. 喜欢做某事→ enjoy oneself 玩得高兴
3. monkey *n.* 猴子→ monkeys（复数）
4. climb *v.* 爬→ climb the mountain 爬山
5. road *n.* 路→ on the road 在公路上
6. often *adv.* 时常；常常→ usually（近义词）
7. air *n.* 空气→ in the air 在空中→ by air 乘飞机
8. free *adj.* 免费的→ free drinks 免费的饮料
9. easily *adv.* 容易地→ easy *adj.* 容易的
10. money *n.* 钱→ make money 挣钱→ much money
很多钱

‖必背短语

11. spend time 花时间
12. enjoy reading 喜欢阅读

‖必背句子

13.I love to **watch** the monkeys **climbing** around.
我喜欢看猴子们四处攀爬。
14.To get there, I usually walk out and turn right on Bridge Road.
要到达那儿，我通常步行出去，在大桥路向右拐。

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

‖必背句子

I **am very busy** on school days, but I have some **free** time on weekends.
在上学的日子里我非常忙，但在周末我有一些空闲的时间。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Ask for and give directions on the street
语言目标：在大街上问路和指路

1a Match the words with the places in the picture. 将词与图片中的地点相匹配。

1.post/pəʊst/ office/ˈɒfɪs,ˈɑːfɪs/ ___f___ 邮局 ___f___
2.police/pəˈliːs/ ① station _____ 警察局 _____
3.hotel/həʊˈtel/ _____ 旅馆 _____
4.restaurant/ˈrestrɒnt, ˈrestərɑːnt/ _____ 餐馆 _____
5.bank/bæŋk/ _____ 银行 _____
6.hospital/ˈhɒspɪtl, ˈhɑːspɪtl/ _____ 医院 _____
7.street/striːt/ _____ 大街 _____
8.pay/peɪ/ phone _____ 付费电话 _____
9.park _____ 公园 _____

—Is there a hospital ④ near ⑤ here? ② 这附近有医院吗?
—Yes, there is ③. It's on Bridge Street ⑥. 是的，有。它在大桥街上。

课文听力 1b

1b Listen and circle the places you hear in 1a. 听录音并在 1a 中圈出你所听到的地点。

1c Practice the conversation with your partner. Then ask and answer questions about the other places in 1a. 和你的同伴练习这个对话。然后就 1a 中其他的地方进行问答。

A: Is there a hospital near/nɪə, nɪr/ here? 这附近有医院吗?
B: Yes, there is. It's on Bridge Street. 是的，有。它在大桥街上。

2a Match the sentences with the pictures. Write each number in the box. 将句子与图片相匹配。将每个序号填在方框中。

1.The pay ⑦ phone is across /əˈkrɒs,əˈkrɔːs/ from ⑧ the library. 付费电话在图书馆对面。
2.The pay phone is next to ⑨ the library. 付费电话紧邻图书馆。
3.The pay phone is between the post office and ⑩ the library. 付费电话在邮局和图书馆之间。
4.The pay phone is on Green Street. 付费电话在格林大街上。
5.The pay phone is in front/frʌnt/ ⑪ of the library. 付费电话在图书馆前面。
6.The pay phone is behind/bɪˈhaɪnd/ ⑫ the library. 付费电话在图书馆后面。

2b Listen and fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 听录音并用方框内的词（组）填空。

next to 在……近旁；紧邻	in front of 在……前面	between 在……之间
behind 在……的后面	across from 在……对面	on 在……上

课文听力 2b

1.The police station is between the restaurant and the hospital. 警察局在餐馆和医院之间。
2.The park is _____ the bank. 公园在银行的_____。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3.The hospital is _____ Bridge Street. 医院在大桥街的_____。

4.The pay phone is _____ the post office. 付费电话在邮局的_____。

5.The restaurant is _____ the post office. 餐馆在邮局的_____。

6.The hotel is _____ the police station. 旅馆在警察局的_____。

2c Ask and answer questions about the places in 1a on page 43. 就 43 页 1a 中的地点进行问答。

—Where's the hospital? 医院在哪儿?

—It's next to the police station. 它紧挨着警察局。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演这个对话。

课文朗读 2d

Tony: Hi, excuse me[13]. 嗨，打扰一下。

Linda: Yes. How can I help you?[14] 噢。我怎么帮你呢?

Tony: Well, I'm new in town/taʊn/. Is there a bank around/əˈraʊnd/[15] here? 嗯，我是镇上新来的。这周围有银行吗?

Linda: Yes, there is. It's on Center Street. It's across from the park. 是的，有。它在中心大街上。它在公园对面。

Tony: Oh ... where's Center Street? 哦……中心大街在哪儿?

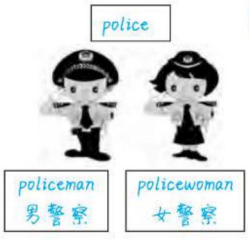
Linda: It's not too far from[16] here. I can walk with you. 它离这儿不太远。我可以和你一起走过去。

Tony: Oh, that's great! Thanks so much. 噢，那太好了！非常感谢。

Linda: No problem. 不客气。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用



与 police 用法类似的词有 people, youth 等。这类词表示单数概念时，要改用别的词汇。如: people → a person, youth → a young person/man/woman。

★police station

① **police** /pəˈliːs/ *n.* 警察

police 是集体名词，是“警察”的总称，即指“警察部门”或“多个警察”。作“警察”讲时相当于 policewomen and policemen, 谓语动词用复数形式。

e.g. The police are searching for a man with a beard.
警察正在搜寻一个留胡子的人。

敲黑板 谓语动词用复数，谨记!

注意：表示“一名警察”时不能用 a police, 应该用 a policeman（一名男警察）/ a policewoman（一名女警察）。

e.g. She wants to be a policewoman. 她想成为一名女警察。

考题在线 1 用所给单词的正确形式填空。

Tony's father and uncle are both_____（policeman）. They help keep the city safe. [上海]

点拨: 用主谓一致法解题。由主语是两个人可知填 policeman 的复数形式。

★—Is there a hospital near here?—Yes, there is.

②句法分析 [**重点**] 这是一个 there be 句型的一般疑问句，是问路的常用句型。（详见本单元语法）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

③ **there be 有**

【易错点】辨析：there be 与 have/has 都意为“有”，但有区别：

there be	表示“某处有某物 / 人”，指客观存在。句型为“There be+ 某物 / 人 + 某地 .”。句中有两个或多个并列主语时，be 动词的形式要与最靠近的主语在数上保持一致，即遵循“就近原则”。
have/ has	表示“某人 / 物有”，指从属关系。句型为“某人 / 物 +have/has+ 某物 .”。用 have 或 has 取决于句子的主语。

★ there be 和 have/has 不能同时出现在一个句子中。

e.g. 今天将有一场比赛。

(√)There will be a match today.

(x)There will have a match today.

e.g. There is a pen and two pencils in my pencil box. 在我的铅笔盒里有一支钢笔和两支铅笔。（钢笔和铅笔不一定是属于我的）

There are two pencils and a pen in my pencil box.

在我的铅笔盒里有两支铅笔和一支钢笔。

I have a pen and two pencils.

我有一支钢笔和两支铅笔。（钢笔和铅笔是属于我的）

He has two pencils and a pen. 他有两支铅笔和一支钢笔。

考题在线 2 _____more chances（机会） for young people to find jobs in big cities. **[青海]**

A. There are　　B. We have　　C. It's said

点拨：用固定句式法解题。There are 有；We have 我们有；It's said 据说。句意：对于年轻人，在大城市里有更多的机会找到工作。本句符合“There be+ 某物 / 人 + 某地 .”的句式。

④ **hospital**/ˈhɒspɪtl/ *n.* **医院**

e.g. There are two hospitals in my city. 在我所居住的城市有两家医院。

辨析：in hospital 与 in the hospital

in hospital	指“生病住院”， hospital 是一个抽象名词。
in the hospital	指“在医院”，可能是到医院工作，可能是看护病人。由于有了定冠词 the 的限制，hospital 成为了一个具体指某个地点的名词。

“在医院”要加定冠词 the。

e.g. His mother is in hospital. 他妈妈生病住院了。

There are many people in the hospital. 医院里有很多人。

⑤ **near**/nɪə, nɪr/ *prep.* **在……附近**

near { 形容词，“近的；接近的”。 副词，“在附近；临近”。

e.g. There is a park near our school. 我们学校附近有一个公园。

His house is very near. 他的房子就在附近。

Come near and you can hear Zhang Jie clearly.

靠近点，你能更清晰地听见张杰（唱歌）。

考题在线 3 There is a river _____（在……的附近） my school.[**河池**]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

提示：表示“在”街上英国英语用in，美国英语用on。

★**It's on Bridge Street.**

⑥ **on Bridge Street 在大桥街上**

e.g. Center Street 中心大街

Green Street 格林大街

Zhonghua Street 中华大街

街道名称为专有名词，首字母应大写。

街道名称与介词的连用

on+ 街道名称“在……街 / 路上”	My house is on Nanjing Road. 我家在南京路上。
at+ 门牌号 + 街道名称“在……街 / 路……号”	Mr Green lives at No. 66 Center Street. 格林先生住在中心大街 66 号。

考题在线 4 I often go to the bookstore _____Quancheng Road although it's crowded. [济南]

A. on B. for C. from D. between

★**The pay phone is across from the library.**

⑦ **pay**/peɪ/ *v.* & *n.* 付费 pay phone 付费电话

e.g. Is there a pay phone in your shop? 你们店里有付费电话吗?

The boss pays the workers every month. 老板每月都给工人发薪水。

Could you tell me how to pay for the food by QR code on the phone?

你能告诉我如何用手机上的二维码支付食物费用吗?

How much do I need to pay for the computer?

这台电脑我需要付多少钱?

★pay 用作动词

- pay sb. 付钱给某人
- pay for sth. 为……付钱
- pay...for sth. 买某物付……钱

辨析：pay, spend, take 与 cost

（见本单元 Period 4 考点 1）

考题在线 5 Before stamps, people didn't _____for the letters they sent, but for the letters they received. [临沂]

A. pay B. cost C. spend D. take

⑧ **across from 在……对面**

【重点】across from 是固定短语，可用作定语，其后接表示地点的名词或代词，意为“在……对面”。

e.g. He lives in the house across from/opposite/on the other side of ours.

他住在我们对面的那个房子里。

The pay phone is across from the bank. 付费电话在银行的对面。

Can you swim across?（作副词）你能游过去吗?

I can swim across the river in 10 minutes.

（作介词）我可以在十分钟之内游过这个河。

- sth. across from+ 地点 = opposite/on the other side of... 在……对面的……
- be across from+ 地点 在……对面

across 用作副词或介词，意为“过；穿过”。

【易错警示】不要将 across 误用作动词。

河水太深，我们过不了。

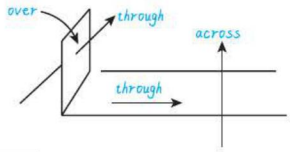
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The river is too deep and we can't cross. (√)

The river is too deep and we can't across. (×)

错句可改为:

The river is too deep and we can't go across.



辨析: across, over 与 through

across	指从物体表面横向穿过,由一边到另一边。
over	多指从物体上方翻越或跨越。
through	强调从物体内部或空间穿过。

一语辨异:

When we walk through the park, we see a car going across the bridge and a plane flying over our head.

当我们步行穿过公园时,我们看到一辆汽车从桥上经过,一架飞机从我们头顶上方飞过。

考题在线 6 根据汉语提示用适当的短语填空。

The library is _____ (在……对面) our school. It's easy to go there to borrow books.

考题在线 7 —Shall I help you _____ the street, Grandpa?

—No, thanks. I can manage it myself. 【导学号: 8811889】[河南]

A. on B. with C. across D. along

★The pay phone is next to the library.

⑨ **next to 在……近旁,紧邻**

e.g.The notebook is next to the pencil case. 笔记本在铅笔盒的旁边。

Peter sits next to Mike. 彼得紧挨着迈克坐。 方位介词短语,表空间位置,与 beside 同义

Peter sits near Tom. 彼得坐在汤姆附近。

★辨析: next to 与 near 从空间讲 near 只表示"在……附近",而 next to 有"紧挨着"之意, next to 比 near 靠得更近。

考题在线 8 他旁边的那位女士是我的姑姑莉兹。

The woman _____ _____ him is my aunt Liz.

★The pay phone is between the post office and the library.

⑩ **between...and... 在……和……之间**

e.g.There is no parking here between 9 a. m. and 6 p. m.

上午 9 时至下午 6 时此处禁止停车。

He sits between Row 3 and Row 5.

他坐在第 3 排和第 5 排之间。

You sit between him and me.

你坐在他和我之间。 → 后接人称代词时用其宾格形式

between...and... 连接两个并列成分,可以表示地点的概念和时间的概念。

考题在线 9 The high-speed train _____ Qingdao and Beijing travels faster now. The train ride takes only about three hours. [青岛]

A. from B. among C. in D. between

点拨: 此处指青岛和北京两地之间的高铁,故用 between...and... 表示"在……和……之间"。句意:青岛和北京的高铁现在运行得更快了。坐火车只需三个小时左右。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★辨析 in front of 与 in the front of

- in front of 强调一个物体在另一个物体外部的前面
- in the front of 强调一个物体在另一个物体内部的前面

★The pay phone is in front of the library.

⑪ **front**/frʌnt/ *n.* 前面 → 反义词 back

e.g.Lucy, come to the front of the classroom, please. 露西，请到教室前面来。

The cat is in front of the bus.

那只猫在公共汽车的前面。 → 在……的前面

The driver is in the front of the bus. 司机在公共汽车的前部。

考题在线 10 —Why are you standing, Alice?

—I can't see the blackboard clearly. Two tall boys are sitting _____me. [广东]

A. behind B. next to

C. between D. in front of

点拨：用逻辑推理法解题。看不清黑板的原因是两个高个子男生坐在“我”的前面，故可知答案。



in the front of the car 在车的前部

in front of the car. 在车的前方

★The pay phone is behind the library.

⑫ **behind** /bɪ'haɪnd/ *prep.* 在……的后面 反义短语：in front of

e.g.There is a cat behind the door. 门后面有一只猫。

His family are right behind him. 他的家人完全支持他。 → 介词，表示“支持”

辨析：behind 与 after

behind	常用于表示位置或方向上的“在……的后面”。	Your seat is behind hers. 你的座位在她的座位的后面。
after	常用于表示时间上的“在……之后”。	Let's watch *Fast and Furious* after dinner. 晚饭后我们看《速度与激情》吧。

考题在线 11 To my pleasure（高兴），my family are always _____ me whatever I decide to do（无论我决定做什么）. [安徽]

A. above B. behind C. from D. through



behind

★Hi, excuse me.

⑬ **excuse me** 劳驾，对不起 → 用于向陌生人问路

e.g.Excuse me. Is there a hospital near here? 打扰一下。这附近有医院吗?

拓展：excuse me 可以用在不同场合

和别人谈话时要出去或做别的事时 / 表示失礼，请求原谅时

客气地纠正别人的话时 / **excuse me** / 客气地请求许可时

回答“Excuse me...”时，不可以说：I'll excuse you. 应该说：Never mind./That's all right. 没关系。或 Certainly. 当然。

e.g.Excuse me, just a minute. 对不起，稍等一下。

Excuse me, I think you are wrong. 对不起 / 失敬了，我认为你错了。

Excuse me for troubling you. 抱歉，打扰你们了。

Excuse me, but can I go out for a while?

对不起，我能出去一会儿吗?

考题在线 12 —_____. Could you tell me where to park my car?

—Sure. There's an underground parking lot over there. [曲靖]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

A. Let it go　　B. Pardon me

C. Excuse me　　D. On the way

点拨：用交际法解题。Let it go. 意为“放手吧。”；Pardon me. 意为“请再说一遍。”；Excuse me. 意为“打扰一下。”；On the way. 意为“沿途。”。由答语“当然。那边有个地下停车场。”可知问句意为“打扰一下。你能告诉我把车停在哪里吗?”。

素养 行动：请在遇到以上情景时，第一时间送出你的“Excuse me.”。

素养 行动结果：你的一句“Excuse me.”，会让身边的人感觉温暖和舒适。

核心素养之文化意识

了解异国文化，学会礼貌待人

在国外，特别是在美国，人们每天都会说很多次“Excuse me.”。需要问路或提问时；狭窄路段，想从别人身边强行挤过时；失礼时；在别人面前打嗝（hiccup）、忍不住打喷嚏（sneeze）时……

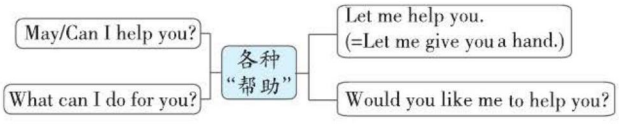
★How can I help you?

⑭交际用语，本句是向别人提供帮助时的常用语。回答时不需要用 yes 或 no，直接说明需要帮忙的事即可。

e.g.—How can I help you? 我怎么帮你呢？

—I'd like to send this letter to my brother. 我想把这封信寄给我哥哥。

拓展：“向别人提供帮助”的其他表达法：



e.g.—What can I do for you? 我可以为你做什么吗?

—I'm looking for a book named *Jane Eyre*.

我正在找一本叫《简爱》的书。

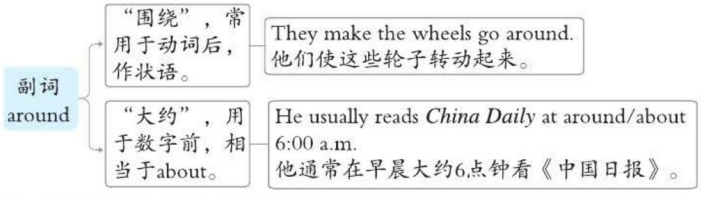
★Is there a bank around here?

⑮ **around**/əˈraʊnd/ *prep.* 在……周围

e.g.They are sitting around the fire. 他们正围火而坐。

around 此处用作介词，意为“在……周围”。

拓展：around 还可用作副词，用法如下：



★It's not too far from here.

⑯ **far from** 远离

敲黑板 不与具体数字连用，牢记！

e.g.My home is not far（away） from our school. 我的家离我们学校不远。

The station is two kilometers（away）from here. 车站离这儿有两千米远。

far from 相当于 far away from，通常不与具体数字连用，若出现具体数字，常用 away from。

far from 的反义词为 near，意为“在……附近，靠近”。

考题在线答案 1.policemen　2.A　3.near　4.A　5.A　6.across from　7.C　8.next to　9.D　10.D　11.B　12.C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见302页)

听力技巧

听介词确定位置关系法(在做听力题时,我们会遇到一些有关位置关系的题目。这些题目往往会涉及问路、指路等。在做此类题时,要重点听连接两个或多个位置关系的介词,如 behind, in front of, across from, next to, between...and... 等。)

课文听力1b

听力过程

一、听 1b 完成以下习题

1. There is a _____ on Bridge Street.

2. There's one _____on Long Street, but there isn't a _____on Center Street.

二、听 2b, 选择正确答案

3.Where is the police station?

A. Between the restaurant and the hospital.

B. Across from the bank.

C. On Bridge Street.

课文听力2b

4.Where can we see the park?

A. Across from the zoo.

B. In front of the bank.

C. Across from the bank.

5.There is a _____ in front of the post office.

A. pay phone B. hospital

C. restaurant

6.The hotel is _____.

A. behind the police station

B. behind the pay phone

C. next to the police station

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见302页)

一、根据首字母提示完成句子

1. It's time for lunch. Let's go to a r_____.

2. Our hotel is n_____ the sea. It's easy for us to go swimming there.

3. He p_____ $200 a week for this apartment (公寓套房).

4. He doesn't feel well, so his parents take him to a h_____.

5. I sit b_____ the tall boy, so I can't see the blackboard clearly.

二、单项选择

6. The _____ help us when we have problems.

A. teacher B. doctor

C. actor D. police

7. —Are you watching the football matches of the World Cup (世界杯足球赛) these days?

—Sometimes, and I'll watch the match _____ Japan and Poland tonight. [包头]

A. against B. about

C. through D. between

8. —Is there a bank _____ here, please?

—Yes, there's one _____ Zhongshan Road.

A. around; on B. of; on

C. around; at D. of; at

9. —There _____ a book sale in our school. Would you like to have a look with me?

—Sure. I'd love to. [湘西]

A. is B. have

C. are

10. Jim sits behind me, so I sit _____ him. [南宁]

A. at the top of B. at the end of

C. in the middle of D. in front of

三、根据汉语意思完成英文句子

11. 里克在公园对面的中国银行上班。[烟台改编]

Rick works at the Bank of China _____ _____ the park.

12. 付费电话就在超市的附近。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

The _____ _____ is just _____ the supermarket.

13. 打扰一下，公共汽车站在哪里?

_____ _____. _____ _____ the bus stop?

14. 邮局离这儿很远，你可以乘公共汽车去那儿。

The post office is _____ _____ here. You can go there by bus.

15. 我怎么帮你呢?

_____ _____ I _____ you?

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

Is there a bank near here? 这附近有银行吗?	Yes, there is. It's on Center Street. 是的，有。它在中心大街上。
Are there any restaurants near here? 这附近有一些餐馆吗?	Yes, there's one in front of the post office. 是的，在邮局前面有一家。
Where's the hotel? 旅馆在哪儿?	It's behind the police station. 它在警察局的后面。
Where's the bank? 银行在哪儿?	It's next to the post office. 它紧挨着邮局。
Where's the park? 公园在哪儿?	It's across from the bank, behind the hotel. 它在银行对面，旅馆的后面。
Where are the pay phones? 付费电话在哪儿?	They're between the post office and the library. 它们在邮局和图书馆之间。

3a Look at the map and answer the questions. 看地图，回答问题。

1.Where's the bank? 银行在哪儿?

_____

2.Is there a restaurant on North/nɔ:(r)θ/ Street? 在北街上有餐馆吗?

_____

3.Where's the pay phone? 付费电话在哪儿?

_____

4.Where's the post office? 邮局在哪儿?

_____

5.Is there a hospital near the pay phone? 付费电话附近有医院吗?

_____

3b Look at the map in 3a and write three sentences. 看 3a 中的地图，写三个句子。

The bank is next to the hospital and across from the park. 银行紧挨着医院，在公园对面。

1._____

2._____

3._____

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3c Take turns to choose a place in the picture in 1a on page 43. Your classmates ask questions and then guess the place. 轮流从43页1a的图片中选择一个地方。你的同班同学们提问题，然后猜这个地方。

—Is it on Bridge Street? 它在大桥街上吗?
—Yes, it is. 是的，它在。
—Is it next to the police station? 它紧挨着警察局吗?
—Yes, it is. 是的，它是。
—Is it the restaurant? 它是餐馆吗?
—Yes, it is. 是的，它是。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

速记 小筱：
news（新闻）=north（北方）+east（东方）+west（西方）+south（南方）【四个方向的首字母】，即：来自四方的新闻

★Is there a restaurant on North Street?

north/nɔ:(r)θ/ *n.* 北；北方　*adj.* 北方的

e.g. There is some snow in the north in winter.
在冬天北方有些雪。
One of his friends comes from North America.
他的一个朋友来自北美。

拓展：south（S）南方；east（E）东方；west（W）西方

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

there be 句型

考点 there be 句型表示“某地有某人或某物”。其构成是：There be + 人或物 + 地点状语（常由介词短语构成）.

考向 1：there be 句型的主语通常在 be 动词之后。如果句子的主语是单数可数名词或不可数名词，be 动词用 is；如果句子的主语是可数名词复数，be 动词用 are。

e.g. There is some milk in the bottle.
瓶子里有些牛奶。
There are some pencils in my pencil box.
我的铅笔盒里有些铅笔。

考题在线 1 Look! There _____ a photo of our English teacher in today's newspaper! [南京]

A. is　　B. are
C. have　　D. has

点拨：用语法分析法解题。本句是 there be 句型，不能和 have/has 同时出现在一个句子中，故排除C、D两项；空后的 a photo 是单数，因此 be 动词用 is。

考向 2：there be 句型的疑问句式要把 be 动词提到 there 前，肯定回答为“Yes, there is/are.”，否定回答为“No, there isn't/aren't.”。注意不要用“Yes, it is/they are.”或“No, it isn't/they aren't.”来回答。

易错内容，牢记！敲黑板

e.g.—Are there any flowers in your school?
你们学校里有一些花吗?
—Yes, there are. 是的，有。
/No, there aren't. 不，没有。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—Is there a bag on the chair?

椅子上有个包吗?

—Yes, there is. 是的,有。

/No, there isn't. 不,没有。

考题在线 2 — _____there anything new in today's *Qianzhong Morning Daily*?

—No. But there _____ some inspiring stories worth reading. [安顺]

A. Is; is　　B. Are; are

C. Is; are　　D. Are; is

点拨:用主谓一致法解题。问句中不定代词 anything 作主语,there be 句型中的 be 动词应用单数形式;答语中 some inspiring stories 作句子的主语,there be 句型中的 be 动词应用复数形式。

考题在线 3 —Is there a watermelon on the table?

—_____ [南充]

A. Yes, there is.　　B. Yes, it is.

C. No, there is.　　D. No, it isn't.

考向 3:there be 句型的否定句式是在 be 动词后面加 not, is not 可缩写为 isn't; are not 可缩写为 aren't。

e.g. There are some girls in the photo.

那张照片中有一些女孩。

There aren' t any girls in the photo. (否定句)

那张照片中没有女孩。

考向 4:【易错点】there be 后跟两个或两个以上的主语时,be 动词的形式要与离它最近的主语的数保持一致,即"就近原则"。

难点,易错点,要遵守"原则"!

敲黑板

考题在线 4 Don't worry. There _____ enough water, vegetables and fruits in the fridge. [乐山]

A. have　　B. are　　C. is

点拨:用语法分析法解题。there be 句型中有两个或两个以上并列主语时,be 动词应遵循"就近原则",water 是不可数名词,所以 be 动词要用单数形式。

速记小筏

there be 句型,主语 be 后停;
单数主语用 is,复数主语 are 前行。
变否定,容易成,be 后 not 来报名;
变疑问,一招灵,be 前 there 后面横。
肯定句用 some,否定、疑问 any 赢。

问路和指路

考点 1 如何问路

Excuse me, { is there...around here? / where is the...? }

知识微课

考题在线 5 —Excuse me, _____?

—It's next to Wanda Cinema. [南宁]

A. when is the movie on

B. what is your mother

C. who is the girl under the tree

D. where is the nearest bookshop

考点 2 【重点】如何指路

{ Yes, there is. It's... / It's... / Go along/down... / Turn left/right at the...crossing. / This way, please. }

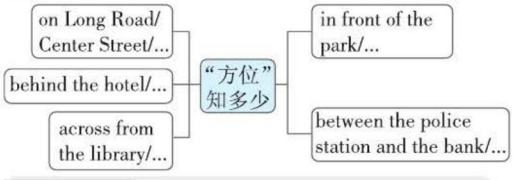
考题在线 6 —Excuse me, where's the meeting room?

—_____. I will show you there. [泰州]

A. This way, please　　B. That's right

C. I can manage　　D. In your dreams

考点 3 【重点】表示方位的介词短语



考题在线答案 1.A 2.C 3.A 4.C 5.D 6.A

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

☞(答案见302页)

一、单项选择

1. —Excuse me. Is there a bank near here?
—_____. It's just between my house and a post office. [湘西]
A. Yes, it is B. No, there isn't
C. Yes, there is

2. _____a clock on the desk. It wakes me up every day. [湘潭]
A. There are B. There be C. There is

3. There _____ two dictionaries on the bookcase. You can use either of them. [长春]
A. is B. was C. are D. were

4. —Excuse me, _____?
—Oh, it's near the Center Park.
A. when will the bus come
B. what is your sister
C. where is the bank
D. who can play it

5. — What's in the picture on the wall?
—There _____ a teacher and some students playing soccer on the playground. [凉山]
A. has B. are C. is D. have

二、选单词或短语填空补全句子

6. There _____ (have/are) six apples on the tree.

7. —Is there a cat on the sofa?
—Yes, _____ (it is/there is).

8. There _____ (is/are) a hamburger on the table.

9. _____ (They are/There are) 37 students in my class.

10. _____ (Is there/Are there) any milk or apples on the table?

三、按要求完成下列句子,每空一词(含缩写)

11. Are two baseballs in the backpack? (改为同义句)
_____ _____two baseballs in the backpack?

12. There are some tigers in the zoo. (改为一般疑问句)
_____ _____ _____tigers in the zoo?

13. Is there a post office on Fifth Avenue? (作否定回答)
_____, _____ _____.

14. There is a woman teacher in the classroom. (改为复数句子)
There_____ _____ _____ _____ in the classroom.

15. The Bank of China is near the post office. (对画线部分提问)
_____ _____ the Bank of China?

Period 3 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Match the words in the box with the signs. 将方框内的词与标志相匹配。

a. go along/əˈlɒŋ,əˈlɔːŋ/①沿着……走 b.turn/tɜː(r)n/② right/raɪt/③向右转
c. turn left/left/ 向左转

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料



1._____ 2._____ 3._____

课文听力 1b

1b Listen and write the correct place for each letter in the picture. 听录音并写出图中每个字母所指的正确的地方。

A_____ B_____

1c Listen again. Fill in the blanks. 再听一遍录音。填空。

A:Excuse me. Is there a _____ around here? 打扰一下。这附近有一家_____吗?

B:Yes, there is. Just go _____ Bridge Street and turn _____when you see the library. Go along Long Street and it's on the_____. It's _____ _____the supermarket and across from the _____. 是的,有。就_____大桥街走,当你看见图书馆时向_____转。沿着长街走,它在_____。它在超市的_____,并且在_____的对面。

A:Thanks! And is there a restaurant near the _____? 谢谢!在_____附近有餐馆吗?

B:Yes. _____along New Street. _____ right at the first crossing/ˈkrɒsɪŋ, ˈkrɔːsɪŋ/ and the restaurant is on your left, _____ _____the pay phone. 是的。沿着新街_____。在第一个十字路口向右_____,餐馆在你的左边,付费电话的_____。

A:Thank you very much. 非常感谢你。

B:You're welcome. 不客气。

1d Imagine you and your partner are the two people in the picture in 1b. Ask and answer questions about the places. 想象你和你的同伴是 1b 图中的两个人,就图中的地点进行问答。

—Is there a supermarket near here?
这附近有超市吗?
—Yes, there is. Go along Bridge Street and ...
是的,有。沿着大桥街走……

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见302页)

听力过程

课文听力 1b

听 1b, 选择正确答案

1. When the man sees the library, he should_____.
   A. turn right B. go straight
   C. turn left
2. To get to the hotel, the man must go along _____.
   A. Bridge Street and Long Street
   B. Bridge Street and North Street
   C. Long Street and North Street
3. Where is the hotel?
   A. Across from the bank and behind the hospital.
   B. Next to the supermarket and across from the bank.
   C. Between the restaurant and the hospital.
4. Where is the restaurant?
   A.Near the hotel and across from the pay phone.
   B. Near the hotel and in front of the bank.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

C. Near the hospital and behind the bank.

5. To get to the restaurant, the man needs to turn right_____.

A. when he sees the police station

B. at the first crossing

C. on Long Street

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

along 还可用作副词，意为“向前；一同”。与动词连用时，常与on同义，表示“向前移动”。

★**go along** 相当于down，可以和walk，go等动词连用。

① **along**/əˈlɒŋ, əˈlɔːŋ/ *prep.* 沿着

e.g.Go along the street, and you'll find it.

沿着这条街走，你就会找到它。→沿着这条街走

Please go along with us. 请与我们一同前往。

考题在线1 Let's take a walk _____ the river after dinner, shall we? [无锡]

A. along B. through C. upon D. over

★**turn right**



left ← turn → right

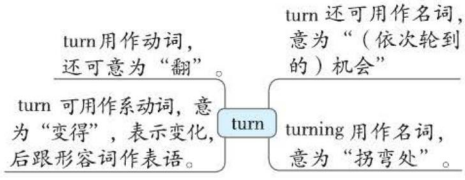
向左拐 向右拐

② **turn**/tɜː(r)n/ *v.* 转向

e.g.Turn right and go along the street. 向右转，然后沿着这条街走。

The boy turns his face to his mother. 这个男孩转过脸朝向他妈妈。

拓展：



★right的相关短语

- turn right（= turn to the right）向右拐
- on the right 在右边
- on one's right 在某人的右边
- on the right of... 在……右边

e.g.Please turn to page 2. 请翻到第2页。

Trees turn green in spring. 春天树变绿了。

It's your turn to clean the room. 轮到你打扫房间了。

Take the next turning on the right. 在下一个路口向右拐。

③ **right**/raɪt/ *adv.* 向右边 *n.* 右边

e.g.Turn right at the second crossing. You'll see the market on your right.

在第二个十字路口向右拐。你会看到市场在你的右边。

考题在线2 同学们，请靠马路右边行走。

Boys and girls, please walk _____ side of the road. [陕西]

考题在线答案 1.A 2.on/along the right

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见302页)

根据汉语意思，完成相应的英文句子

1. 沿着这条街走，你就能到达北京动物园。

   _____ _____ the street and you'll get to Beijing Zoo.

2. 请直行，不要向右拐。

   Please go straight and don't _____ _____.

3. 李宇春的粉丝正站在她的左边。

   Li Yuchun's fans are standing _____ _____.

4. 超市在书店的对面吗?

   Is the supermarket _____ _____ the bookstore?

5. 你可以在第一个十字路口看到我。

   You can see me _____ _____ _____ _____.

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

2a Check（√） the places near your home. Tell your partner where they are. 给你家附近的地点打上对号。告诉你的同伴它们在哪儿。

clothes store 服装店　post office 邮局　bookstore 书店　school 学校
supermarket 超市　bank 银行

2b Read the passages. Match each passage with a map. 读这些文章。把每一篇文章与一幅地图相匹配。

课文朗读2b

Anna 安娜

There is a zoo in my neighborhood/ˈneɪbə(r)hʊd/. I like to spend/spend/① time there on weekends. I love to watch② the monkeys/ˈmʌŋkiz/ climbing/klaɪmɪŋ/ around. The monkeys sometimes fight. They look like my friends and me when we fight!

在我的街区有一个动物园。在周末，我喜欢在那儿消磨时光。我喜欢看猴子们四处攀爬。猴子们有时打架。它们看起来像我和我的朋友们打架时的样子!

To get there③, I usually walk out and turn right on Bridge Road/rəʊd/.Then I walk along Bridge Road. The zoo is on the right.

要到达那儿，我通常步行出去，在大桥路向右拐。然后我沿着大桥路走。动物园在右边。

John 约翰

I live near a supermarket. My parents usually shop there. There is a big park across from the supermarket. I often/ˈɒfn,ˈɔ:fn/ exercise at the park because I love the clean air/eə, er/ and sunshine /ˈsʌnʃaɪn/. The best things in life are free/fri:/④!

我住在一家超市附近。我的父母通常在那儿购物。在超市对面有个大公园。我常常在公园里锻炼，因为我喜爱清洁的空气和阳光。生命中最好的东西是免费的!

To get to the park, you just have to cross Center Street. 要到公园，你只需要穿过中心大街。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Lisa 莉萨

I live in a noisy neighborhood. There is a post office between my house and a clothes store. But my favorite place is the library. It is very quiet and I enjoy/ɪn'dʒɔɪ/⑤ reading there.When I read books, time goes quickly!

我住在一个喧闹的街区。在我家和一家服装店之间有一个邮局。但我最喜爱的地方是图书馆。它非常安静，我喜欢在那里阅读。当我读书的时候，时间过得很快！

You can get to the library easily/'i:zəli/. Just go down North Road and turn left. It is across from the park. 你可以很容易地到达图书馆。就沿着北路走并且左转。它在公园的对面。

2c Read the passages again and answer the questions. 再读一遍文章并回答问题。

1.What does Anna like doing in the zoo? 安娜喜欢在动物园里干什么?

2. Does Anna think monkeys are like people? Why? 安娜认为猴子像人吗？为什么?

3.What does John like to do at the park? 约翰喜欢在公园里做什么?

4. John thinks the best things do not need money/'mʌni/⑥. Do you think so, too? 约翰认为最好的东西不需要钱。你也这样认为吗?

5. How does Lisa get to the library from her home? 莉萨如何从她家到达图书馆?

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 20分

(答案见302页)

阅读策略

逐层推进法（本部分阅读内容主要是介绍自己所住街区周围的地方，以及如何到达这一地方。阅读时，我们要抓住主线、逐层推进来理解文章内容：喜欢的地方——喜欢此地方的原因——到达该地方的线路。）

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What are the passages mainly about?

（主旨大意题）

A. Places around different persons.

B. Going to the park on weekends.

C. The name of your neighborhood.

D. How to get to the zoo and the park.

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. What does Anna like to do in the zoo?

（细节理解题）

A. Feed the animals.

B. Fight with monkeys.

C. Walk along Bridge Road.

D. Watch the monkeys climbing around.

3. What things are free? （细节理解题）

A. Books.

B. Things in the supermarket.

C. Monkeys.

D. The clean air and sunshine.

4. What's between Lisa's house and a clothes store? （细节理解题）

A. A bank. B. A library.

C. A post office. D. A police station.

5. How does Lisa go to the library?

（细节理解题）

A. She has to cross Center Street.

B. She can go down North Road and turn left.

C. She can walk along Bridge Road.

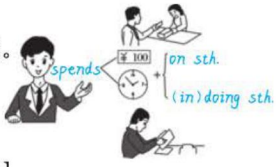
D. She can walk out and turn right on Bridge Road.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★I like to spend time there on weekends.

① **spend**/spend/ *v.* 花（时间、钱等）



e.g. Some women like to spend money on clothes. 一些女人喜欢在衣服上花钱。

Bob spends a lot of time playing basketball. 鲍勃花大量时间打篮球。

考题在线 1 在空白处填入适当的词，使句子通顺正确。

We should spend more time _____ our study. [常德]

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。spend time on sth. 意为“在……上花时间”。

考题在线 2 I like the TV program *The Reader* best. I think we should spend as much time as we can _____ in our spare time. [眉山]

A.read B. to read C. reading D. reads

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。句意：我最喜欢《朗读者》这个电视节目，我认为我们应该在我们的空闲时间花费尽量多的时间去阅读。spend …(in)doing sth.…花费……做某事。

【难点】【易错点】辨析：spend, pay, cost 与 take

spend	“人 +spend（s）+ 时间 / 金钱 +on sth.”表示“某人在某物上花费时间 / 金钱。”	He spent fifty dollars on these books. 他在这些书上花费了 50 美元。
	“人 +spend（s）+ 时间 / 金钱 +（in） doing sth.”表示“某人花费时间 / 金钱做某事。”	I spent two days reading the book. 我花了两天时间读这本书。
pay	“人 +pay（s）（+ 人）+ 金钱 +for sth.”表示“某人（向某人）支付多少钱买某物。”	She paid twenty yuan for the book. 她支付了 20 元钱买这本书。
cost	“物 +cost（s）（+ 人）+ 金钱.”表示“某物花了（某人）多少钱。”	The book cost her twenty yuan. 这本书花了她 20 元钱。
take	It takes sb. some time to do sth. =Sb. spend（s） some time （in） doing sth. 表示“做某事花了某人多长时间。”	It took me seven days to finish the task.=I spent seven days finishing the task. 我花了七天时间完成这项任务。

速记 小筱：take 花时间，cost 与 pay 花金钱，spend 花费时间与金钱；人作主语 pay 与 spend，物作主语 cost，it 作主语用 take。

考题在线 3 — Lin Jia, you have a loving grandma, right?

— Yes, she always _____ her time with me whenever I need her.[本溪]

A. spends B. uses C. takes D. pays

点拨：用词义辨析法及语境判定法解题。spend, take, pay 都有“花费”之意，但是 take 用于“It takes sb. some time to do sth.”的句型中，而 pay 只和金

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

钱有关，故排除C、D两项；结合语境可知“不论何时我需要她时，她总是花费她的时间和我在一起。”，spend time with sb. 意为“花费时间和某人在一起。”。

★I love to watch the monkeys climbing around.

② **watch**/wɒtʃ/ *v.* 观看

【重点】【难点】【易错点】辨析：watch sb. doing sth. 与 watch sb. do sth.

与watch有相同用法的感官动词有see, hear, notice。

watch sb. doing sth.	观看某人正在做某事（强调动作正在进行）	The young mother is watching her little son playing games. 那个年轻的妈妈正在看她的小儿子做游戏。
watch sb. do sth.	观看某人做了某事（强调动作的整个过程）	Let's watch them play football. 咱们看他们踢足球吧。

★To get there, I usually walk out and turn right on Bridge Road.

③ **To get there** 要到达那儿

To get there是动词不定式短语，在句中作目的状语，放在句首起强调作用，也可放在句末。

e.g. To learn English well, he needs a dictionary.

为了学好英语，他需要一本词典。

He works day and night to make money. 他夜以继日地工作来赚钱。

考题在线4 He took off his expensive watch _____ the fact that he was rich. [重庆A卷]

A. to hide　　B. hid　　C. hide　　D. hidden

点拨：用语境判定法解题。分析语境可知，他摘下昂贵手表的原因是为了隐藏他很富有的事实，故用动词不定式作目的状语。空格处动词不定式在句中作目的状语。

★The best things in life are free!

④ **free**/friː/ *adj.* 免费的

free的一词多义



自由的



空闲的



免费的

e.g. You need not pay—it is free. 你不必付钱——这是免费的。（作表语）

Here is your free lunch. 这是你的免费午餐。（作定语）

拓展：free 的其他用法：

- free
  - “空闲的”，反义词是busy“繁忙的”。 → Are you free tomorrow? 明天你有空吗？
  - “自由的，无拘无束的”，副词形式是freely。 → You are free to read here. 你可以在这里自由阅读。

考题在线5 The best things in life are _____ such as the clean air and sunshine we have in Yunnan. [云南]

A. free　　B. old　　C. expensive　　D. new

点拨：用语境判定法解题。free“免费的；空闲的；自由的”；old“老的；旧的”；expensive“昂贵的”；new“新的”。由常识可知“空气和阳光”是生活中最好的东西，而且是不用付费的。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

It is very quiet and I enjoy reading there.

⑤ **enjoy**/ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ *v.* 享受；喜爱 enjoy 后跟名词、代词或动词的-ing形式。

e.g. Sue enjoys **listening** to music in her free time. 休在闲暇时喜欢听音乐。

考题在线 6 People enjoy _____ *zongzi* on the Dragon Boat Festival. [岳阳]

A. eat B. eating C. to eat

e.g.—We are going to the beach! 我们要去海滩了！

—Enjoy yourselves! 玩得开心！

- enjoy sth. 喜欢某物
- enjoy doing sth. 喜欢/喜爱做某事
- enjoy oneself 过得愉快；过得快乐= have fun/ have a good time

John thinks the best things do not need money.

⑥ **money**/ˈmʌni/ *n.* 钱 常用much/a lot of/lots of/little修饰。

e.g. Time is money. 时间就是金钱。

I will find a job to make money. 我要找份工作赚钱。

常用短语：make money/earn money 赚钱；save money 存钱。

核心素养之良好品质

合理用钱，培养正确的财富观

有了钱，你可以买到房子（*house*），但不可以买到一个家（*home*）；有了钱，你可以买到钟表（*clock*），但不可以买到时间（*time*）；有了钱，你可以买到医疗服务，但不可以买到健康（*health*）；有了钱，你可以买到地位，但不可以买到尊严（*dignity*）；有了钱，你可以买到一张床，但不可以买到充足的睡眠；有了钱，你可以买到书，但不可以买到知识（*knowledge*）；有了钱，你可以买到血液（*blood*），但不可以买到生命（*life*）……我们对钱要有一种正确的认识，要“取之有道，用之有度”。

素养行动：做一个有爱心、有善心的人（*full of love and kindness*），用钱帮助更多的人。

素养行动结果：让世界充满温暖和爱（*full of warmth and love*）。

考题在线答案 1.on 2.C 3.A 4.A 5.A 6.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20 分

（答案见302页）

一、根据汉语提示完成句子

1. There are some _____（猴子）in the zoo.
2. The shop has just（刚刚）opened. You can get some _____（免费的）food there.
3. Walk along the road and you can find the subway station _____（容易地）. [贵港]
4. Mr. Wang doesn't have much _____（钱）, but he always buys books for his son.
5. The little cat _____（爬）up the tree and couldn't come down.

二、单项选择

6. —What is Jim doing?

—He's watching some boys _____basketball on the playground.

A. played B. to play

C. playing D. plays

7. My English teacher is very beautiful and _____a movie star.

A. looks after B. looks like

C. looks up D. looks at

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

8. I _____ the whole afternoon in shopping _____ a birthday present. [恩施]
A. spent; in B. paid; for
C. spent; for

9. Lots of people enjoy _____ this park on weekends.
A. visit B. visiting
C. to visit D. visited

10.—Do you always get up so early?
—Yes, _____ the first bus. My home is far away from school. [河南]
A. catch B. to catch
C. catching D. caught

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Look at the map of Cindy's neighborhood and fill in the blanks. 看辛迪的街区的地图并填空。

My house is across from a _____ on Long Street. I usually go shopping at a _____ near my house. It is between a _____ and the _____. On weekends, I like to play in the _____. To get there, I go along Long Street and turn left on North Street. It is on the right, next to a _____.
我家在长街上一家_____的对面。我通常在我家附近的一个_____里购物。它在一个_____和_____之间。在周末，我喜欢在_____里玩。为了到那儿，我沿长街走并在北街向左转。它在右边，紧挨着一个_____。

3b Draw a map of your neighborhood and write about it. These questions may help you. 画一幅你的街区的地图并写一写。这些问题可能会帮助你。

1.Where do you live? 你住在哪儿?
2.What is your favorite place in your neighborhood? 在你的街区你最喜欢的地方是什么?
Why? 为什么?
3.How do you get there from your home? 你从你家怎么到那儿?

Self Check 自我检测

1 Complete the passage with the words in the box. 用方框内的单词完成这篇文章。

spend 花（时间、钱等） free 免费的 climb 爬 enjoy 享受；喜爱

I am very busy on school days, but I have some _____ time on weekends. I like to spend time with my grandparents on Sundays. My grandma makes the foods I like. And I _____ playing Chinese chess with my grandpa. He's very good at it!We also like to sit and talk. We sometimes watch the neighbors' cats _____ the trees. It's relaxing to _____ weekends like this. I love my grandparents!
在上学的日子里我非常忙，但在周末我有一些_____时间。我喜欢和爷爷奶奶一起过星期日。我奶奶做我喜欢的食物。我_____和我爷爷下中国象棋。他非常擅长它！我们也喜欢坐着聊天。我们有时会观看邻居家的猫_____树。像这样_____周末是轻松的。我爱我的爷爷奶奶！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2 **Write five sentences about your school using *there is/are*.** 用 *there is/are* 写五个关于你的学校的句子。

There are some trees in my school. 在我的学校里有一些树。

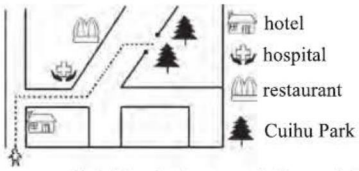
3 **Imagine you are one of the people in the picture on page 46. A person asks you how to get to the supermarket or library. Write a conversation.** 想象你是 46 页图中的一个人。一个人问你如何到达超市或图书馆。写一个对话。

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

单元话题

假如你校有几位来自美国的交换生，他们打算周末步行去翠湖公园。请根据提示为他们写出前往的路线，并简单介绍公园情况。（重庆改编）

1. 路线（见下图）；



2. 公园环境优美、凉爽，还可游泳、野餐等；

3. ……

要求：80 词左右。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 读懂地图和路线，避免方向错误导致描述的语言错误。

2. 描述路线时可多种句型交替使用，尽量避免多次使用一种句型，使语言单调。

3. 具体描述目的地的位置时，选用恰当的介词短语。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三步法”指示路线

第一步：审图

指示路线时要注意结合地图知识，按照所提示的路线图等材料弄清楚出发地点、目的地以及路线，注意方向的准确性。

第二步：描述具体路线

罗列路线中每一阶段使用的句子或词组，并恰当运用连接词连接。避免使用相同结构的句子。

第三步：明确具体位置

明确目的地的具体位置，如在哪些建筑物的附近或之间等。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	along, opposite, street, middle, from, up, down, invite, party, cross, turning
短语	in front of, the way to, go across, go/walk along, turn right/left, get off, take the second turning, on the left/right
句子	① Walk along...until..., and you can see a ...on your left/right. ② Walk past and take the second turning on the left.

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Cuihu Park is not far from here. It's easy to get there. Let me tell you the way to it. Walk along this street and turn right at the first turning. Then go straight and turn left when you find a hospital. Cuihu Park is down the street on your right. Across from the park is a restaurant. By the way, the park is very beautiful and cool, and there is a lake in it. Over the lake, there is a bridge. You can have a picnic and swim there, too. Have fun!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

名师点评：本文运用“三步法”指示路线。
1. 自然引出话题。
2. 恰当地运用指路句型，正确使用副词 then，使条理更清楚。
3. 最后描述公园内环境，并致以美好祝愿。

添彩点：运用一些高级词汇句式，如 be far from，the way to，across from，by the way，have fun 等。

及测听试力卷

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

（答案见302页）

单元知识浓缩

根据汉语提示完成短文

_____[1]（有）a park _____[2]（在镇上）. It's not _____[3]（远离）my house. We can find it _____[4]（容易地）. How can I _____[5]（到达）the park? I usually walk _____[6]（沿着）Center _____[7]（街）, and _____[8]（向右转）at the third turning. You can see the park is _____[9]（在……之间）a _____[10]（邮局）and a _____[11]（警察局）. It is a _____[12]（安静的）park. Many people _____[13]（锻炼）there. And I like to _____[14]（爬）the hills in it when I have _____[15]（空闲的）time.

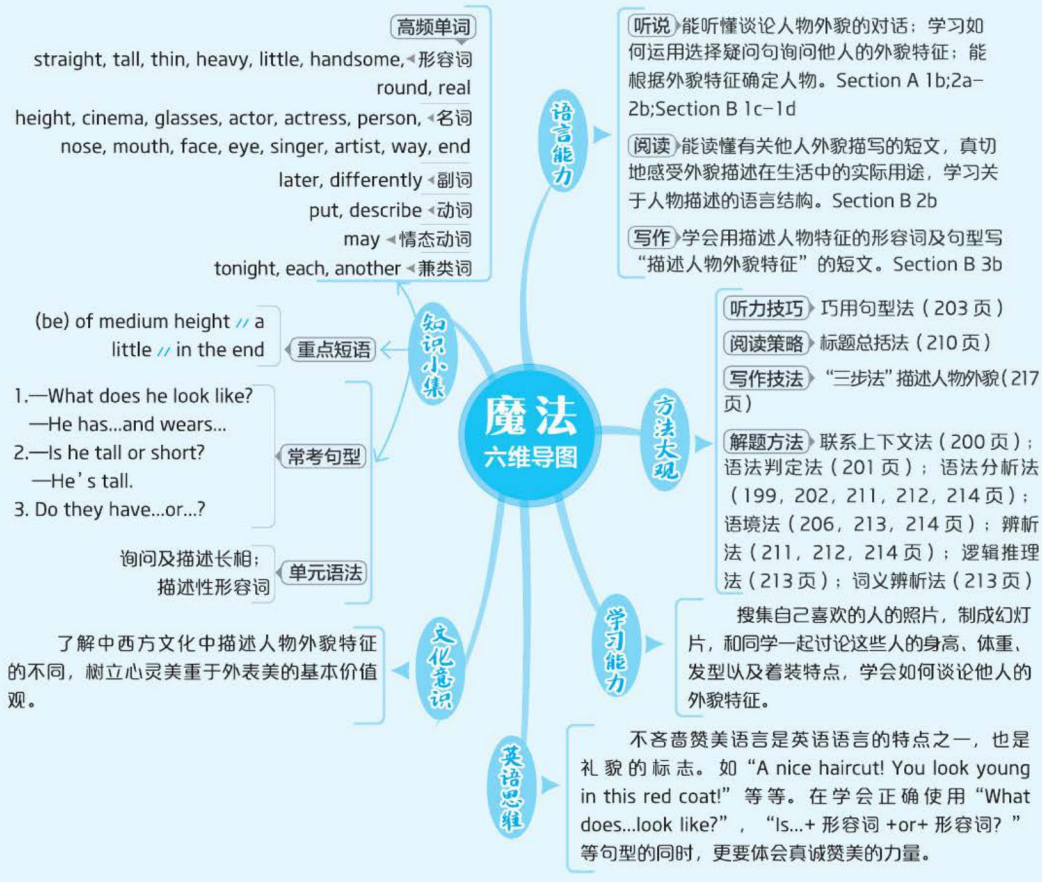
Time is like the water in the sponge, if you like, it can always be squeezed out.
时间像海绵里的水，要挤总是挤得出来的。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 9 What does he look like?





记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a-2d)

必背单词

1.straight *adj.* 直的→ **curly**（反义词）

2.tall *adj.* 高的→ short（反义词）

3.height *n.* 身高；高度→ high（形容词）

4.thin *adj.* → fat（反义词）

5.little *adj.* 小的→ small（同义词）→ less（比较级）→ least（最高级）

6.cinema *n.* 电影院→ go to the cinema 去看电影

7.glasses *n.* 眼镜→ a pair of glasses 一副眼镜

8.later *adv.* 以后→ two days later 两天后

9.heavy *adj.* 重的→ fat（同义词）→ light（反义词）

10.tonight *adv. & n.*（在）今晚；（在）今夜

必背短语

11.(be) of medium height 中等身高

12.a little 一点；少量→ a few（同义词）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

必背句子

13.—What does your friend **look like?**

你的朋友长什么样?

—She's **of medium height,** and she **has long** straight hair.

她中等身高，并留着长长的直发。

14.Is David tall or short ?

戴维是高还是矮?

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus-3d)

必背单词

1.handsome *adj.* 英俊的→ good-looking(同义词)

2.person *n.* 人→ a person 一个人

3.actor *n.* 演员→ an actor 一名演员

4.actress *n.* 女演员

必背句子 & 语法

5.—Do they **have** straight or curly hair ?

他们留着直发还是卷发?

—They have curly hair.

他们留着卷发。

6.—What does he look like?

他长什么样?

—He's really tall.

他确实高。

Period 3 Section B (1a-1e)

必背单词

1.nose *n.* 鼻子→ a long nose 一个大鼻子

2.mouth *n.* 嘴→ big mouth 大嘴

3.round *adj.* 圆形的

4.face *n.* 脸→ round face 圆脸

5.eye *n.* 眼睛→ eyes (复数)

6.singer *n.* 歌手→ sing *v.* 唱；演唱

Period 4 Section B (2a-2c)

必背单词

1.differently *adv.* 不同地→ different *adj.* 不同的

2.real *adj.* 真正的；真实的→ really *adv.* 真正地

3.artist *n.* 艺术家→ an artist 一名艺术家→ art *n.* 艺术

4.jeans *n.* 牛仔裤

5.end *n.* 结尾；尽头

6.crime *n.* 犯罪活动

7.put *v.* 放→ put (过去式) putting (现在分词)

8.each *adj.&pron.* 每个；各自

9.way *n.* 方式；路线→ in this way 用这种方法

10.describe *v.* 描述

11.another *adj.&pron.* 另一；又一

必背短语

12.in the end 最后 → at last (同义词) → at first (反义词)

必背句子

13. He has short curly brown hair.

他有一头短而卷曲的棕色头发。

Period 5 Section B (3a-Self Check)

必背句子

First of all, he is very tall and handsome.

首先，他非常高并非常帅。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Describe people's looks
语言目标：描述人的外貌

1a Match the words with the people in the picture. You can use some letters more than once. 将这些词与图中的人物相匹配。你可以不止一次地用一些字母。

1.short hair ____e____短发 ____e____
2.curly/ˈkɜː(r)li/ hair _____卷发 _____
3.long hair _____ 长发 _____
4.straight/streɪt/ hair① _____直发 _____
5.tall/tɔːl/② _____高的 _____
6.short _____矮的 _____
7.medium/ˈmiːdiəm/ height/haɪt/③ _____中等身高 _____
8.thin/θɪn/ _____瘦的 _____
9.heavy/ˈhevi/④ _____重的 _____

—Is that your friend? 那是你的朋友吗?
—No, it isn't. 不，不是。
—What does he look like?⑤Is he short or tall? 他长什么样？他是矮还是高?
—Well, he's really _____.And he has _____. 噢，他是真的_____。并且他有_____。

1b Listen and fill in the blanks in the picture above. Can you find Amy's friend? 听录音并在上面的图片中填空。你能找到埃米的朋友吗?

课文听力 1b

1c One of the people in 1a is your friend. Describe your friend. Your partner will find him/her. 1a 中有一个人是你的朋友。描述你的朋友。你的搭档会找到他 / 她。

A:What does your friend look like? 你的朋友长什么样?
B:She's of medium height, and she has long straight hair.⑥她中等身高，并留着长长的直发。

2a Listen and answer the questions. 听录音，回答问题。

1.Is David tall or short?⑦戴维是高还是矮?
2.Does Sally have long or short hair? 萨莉留着长发还是短发?
3.Is Peter tall or short? 彼得是高还是矮?

课文听力 2a

2b Listen again.Fill in the chart. 再听一遍。填表格。

	David 戴维	Sally 萨莉	Peter 彼得
is 是	heavy 重的		
has 有			

2c Student A looks at the chart in 2b. Student B asks Student A questions about one of the people and then draws a picture of the person. 学生 A 看着 2b 中的表格。学生 B 就其中的一个人向

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

学生 A 问问题，然后画一张这个人的画像。

—What does he look like? 他长什么样?
—He's of medium height. 他中等身高。

课文朗读 2d

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演这个对话。

Mike: Hi, Tony. Are you going to the movie tonight/təˈnaɪt/? ⑧嗨，托尼。今晚你去看电影吗?

Tony: Yes. We're meeting at seven, right? 是的。我们七点见，对吗?

Mike: Yeah, but I may/meɪ/ be ⑨ a little/ˈlɪtl/ ⑩ late. My friend David is going, too. Just meet him in front of the cinema/ˈsɪnəmə/ first. 对，但我可能会晚一点。我的朋友戴维也要去。就先在电影院前见他吧。

Tony: Oh, but I don't know him. What does he look like? 噢，但是我不认识他。他长什么样?

Mike: Well, he has brown hair and wears glasses/ɡlɑːsɪz, ˈɡlæsɪz/ ⑪. 噢，他留着棕色的头发并且戴着眼镜。

Tony: OK. Is he tall or short? 好的。他是高还是矮?

Mike: He isn't tall or short. He's of medium height. 他不高也不矮。他中等身高。

Tony: OK, sure.See you later/ˈleɪtə(r)/ ⑫ then. 好的，确定。那回头见。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用



straight（直的）　curly（卷曲的）

★straight 常用于修饰 line，hair 等名词，其反义词是 curly，意为"卷曲的"。

① **straight**/streɪt/ *adj.* 直的

e.g. My friend Cathy has straight hair. 我的朋友凯西留着直发。

拓展：straight 还可用作副词，意为"笔直地；成直线；径直"。

e.g.I'm going straight to bed when I get home. 我打算一到家就睡觉。

考题在线 1 Tina is my cousin. She is tall and she has long _____ (直的) hair. [贵港]

★tall

tall 既可以指人个子高，也可以表示物体高度高。

② **tall**/tɔːl/ *adj.* 高的

e.g. The volleyball player, Zhu Ting, is a tall girl.
排球运动员朱婷是个高个子女孩。
He lives in a tall building. 他住在一幢高楼里。

辨析：tall 与 high

tall 也可和表示度量的名词构成短语，短语中的 tall 要置于表示度量的名词之后。

tall	常指人、动物、树、建筑物等的"高"，其反义词为 short。
high	多指山高，也指空间的位置或程度上高，还可指抽象意义上的"高"，如物价、速度、温度等方面的"高"，其反义词为 low。

e.g. There are many tall trees in that high mountain.
在那座高山里有许多高树。
This tree is five meters tall. 这棵树有 5 米高。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 2 I'm 1.70 meters _____.

A. high　　B. higher　　C. tall　　D. taller

★medium height

敲黑板 提问身高、高度用 what，用心记！

③ **height**/haɪt/ *n.* 高度；身高

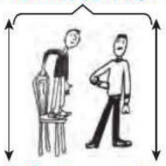
height 用作名词，意为“身高；高度”，其形容词是 high。要询问某人的身高或某物的高度是多少，常用 what 来提问，而不用 how much 或 how many。

e.g. What's the height of that wall? 那堵墙有多高？ the height of ……的高度

拓展：height 可与介词 in 连用，常用于描述某人或某物高度的句子中，其结构为“Sb./Sth.+be+ 数字 / 词 +meter（s）/foot（feet） in height.”。此时，in height 相当于形容词 tall 或 high。

e.g. He is two meters in height.=He is two meters tall. 他身高两米。

They are both 1.85 meters in height. 他俩高度都是 1 米 85。



high（位置）高　tall 高（高度；身高）

考题在线 3 我们历史老师中等身高。他对我们很严格。 [烟台改编]

Our history teacher is of medium _____. He is very strict with us.

★heavy

④ **heavy**/'hevi/ *adj.* 重的 作形容词，可形容人也可形容物。

修饰人，意为“胖的；重的”，用 fat 表达人胖时不礼貌，委婉的说法是用 heavy，反义词 thin（瘦的）。	His sister is a little heavy. 他的妹妹有点胖。
修饰物，意为“沉的；重的”，反义词 light（轻的）。	The box is very heavy. 这个箱子很沉。

e.g. There will be a heavy snow. 将有一场大雪。

adj. 大（量）的；猛烈的

It's raining heavily now. 现在雨下得很大。

adv. 猛烈地



胖的　重的　大的

heavy

考题在线 4 —Look! It's raining _____.

— That's right. The rain is too _____ to go shopping. [铜仁]

A. heavily; heavy　　B. heavily; heavily

C. heavy; heavy　　D. heavy; heavily

点拨：用语法分析法解题。第一个空用副词 heavily 修饰动词 rain，第二个空用形容词 heavy 放在 be 动词之后作表语。句意：——看！雨下得很大。——是的。雨太大了所以不能去购物。

核心素养之文化意识

了解中外文化差异，学会委婉礼貌

在中国文化中，人们并不忌讳肥胖（*fat*）。汉语中就有“富态”、“发福”等与肥胖相关联的褒义词。虽然也有一些含贬义的词汇如“臃肿”，但为数不多。在英美等西方国家，人们认为肥胖有损形象（*image*）。*fat* 作形容词，描述人时意义趋于消极（*negative*），因此人们在交往中多会回避使用，往往会使用一些意义中性或委婉的词汇。甚至人们会说“*She's on a diet.*”来暗指某人胖。如果描述某人很瘦时，也不宜使用 *skinny*，而 *slim* 显得更为礼貌。

素养行动：谈论别人时，要注意措辞，多考虑别人的感受（think about others）。

素养行动结果：了解中外文化差异，学会得体的表达方式（speak in appropriate terms）。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

What+do/does+主语+look like?的答语主要有以下三种：

- 主语+be+形容词（表外貌特征的形容词）.
- 主语+have/has+名词（名词前可有多个形容词修饰）.
- 主语+be of+...height（指个头）.

★What does he look like?

⑤ What +do/does+ 主语 +look like? 某人长什么样?

e.g. What does the Chinese swimmer Sun Yang look like?

中国的游泳运动员孙杨长什么样?

—What does Sun Li look like? 孙俪长什么样?

—She's beautiful. She is of medium height and has short hair.

她很漂亮。她中等身高并留着短发。

辨析: look like 与 be like

look like	只用来形容人的外貌。	—What does he look like? 他长什么样? —He is tall and thin. 他又高又瘦。
be like	既可用来形容人的性格、品行，也可用来形容人的外貌。	—What is he like? 他是个怎样的人? —He is friendly. 他很友好。

考题在线 5 —_____?

—He is tall. [湘西]

A. How is he　　B. What does he look like

C. What does he like

点拨: 用联系上下文法解题。由答语可知对方询问的是外貌。A 项对身体状况提问；C 项询问他喜欢什么；均不符合题意。



★She's of medium height, and she has long straight hair.

⑥此句中有两个用来描述人相貌的常用句型：

描述人相貌

- 用"Sb.+be+of+medium height."表示"某人中等个头"。 → My Chinese teacher is of medium height. 我的语文老师中等身高。
- 用"Sb.+have/has+...hair/eyes..."表示"某人有……头发/眼睛……" → All the members of TFBOYS have short hair. TFBOYS的所有成员都留着短发。

考题在线 6 —Can you help me meet my friend Steve at the airport, Joe?

—With pleasure. What does he look like?

—He_____of medium height and he_____small eyes. [凉山]

A. has; has　　B. is; is　　C. has; is　　D. is; has

敲黑板 选择疑问句不用 yes/no 回答，牢记!

★Is David tall or short?

⑦【句法分析】这是一个选择疑问句，结构是：一般疑问句 +or+ 被选择部分? 回

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

答时不能使用 yes 或 no，而要用一个完整的句子或其省略形式。

e.g.—Do you like to take planes or high-speed trains?

你们喜欢乘飞机还是坐高速列车?

—We like to take high-speed trains. 我们喜欢坐高速列车。

How many pens do you have, one↗ or two↘?

你有多少支钢笔，一支还是两支?

选择疑问句也可用特殊疑问句表示，供选择的部分用 or 连接，前者读升调，后者读降调。

考题在线 7 —Which sport do you prefer(更喜欢), volleyball _____ basketball? 【导学号: 8811889】[哈尔滨]

—I prefer volleyball.

A. or　　B. and　　C. but

点拨: 用语法判定法解题。答语是在问句所提供的备选对象范围内选择的，可知问句是选择疑问句。选择疑问句中，供选择的部分用 or 连接。

★Are you going to the movie tonight?

⑧【句法分析】本句是用现在进行时表将来，主要用于表示按计划或安排将要发生的动作，表示位移的动词，如 arrive, come,leave, meet, fly 等常用现在进行时表将来。

速记小筏：be doing 立足“现在”，面向“未来”。

	表达的时态	时间状语	例句
be doing	表示动作正在进行	now	Ben is having dinner now. 本现在正在吃晚饭。
	表示动作将要发生	tomorrow, next week, soon	Are you meeting Bill tomorrow? 你明天和比尔见面吗?

★Yeah, but I may be a little late.

⑨ **may be 可能；也许**

e.g. It's 7：40. She may be late for school. 7 点 40 分了。她上学可能会迟到。

Jack may know the meaning of “One Belt and One Road”.

杰克可能知道“一带一路”的意思。

may 是情态动词，表示可能性，意为“可能，也许”，后面接动词原形。may do sth. 或许做某事

考题在线 8 When you are travelling, bring a map because it _____ help you. [天津]

A.can't　　B.mustn't　　C.used to　　D.may

辨析: may be 与 maybe

速记小筏：巧记 maybe 与 may be：合并作状语，分开作谓语。含 maybe 意犹在，去 may be 不成句。

may be	结构为：情态动词 +be 动词。在句中作谓语，置于主语后面。	I may be able to help you. 我也许可以帮助你。
maybe	作副词，意为“或许，也许，可能”。在句中作状语。	Maybe you could move the chair. 也许你可以挪动一下那把椅子。

考题在线 9 She _____ knows the answer, but I'm not sure.

A. may　　B. maybe　　C. may be　　D. must

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

①He may be angry.

②Maybe he is angry.
也许他生气了。

⑩ **a little 一点；少量**

a little
- 相当于a bit，修饰形容词或副词，在句中作状语。 — My grandma thinks paying through WeChat a little amazing. 我奶奶觉得微信支付有点惊奇。
- 修饰不可数名词，在句中作定语。 — There is a little milk in the bottle. 瓶子里有点儿牛奶。

辨析: a little, a few, little 与 few

表肯定含义	a little（一点）	a few（几个）
表否定含义	little（几乎没有）	few（几乎没有）

速记小筏：



e.g.There is a little rice in your bowl. 你的碗里有一点儿米饭。

There is little water in the cup. 杯子里几乎没有水了。

She has a few special ideas. 她有一些特别的想法。

He has few friends. 他几乎没有朋友。

考题在线 10 —Hurry up! The movie is beginning.

—Don't worry. There is still _____ time left. [恩施]

A. little B. a little C. a few

★Well, he has brown hair and wears glasses.

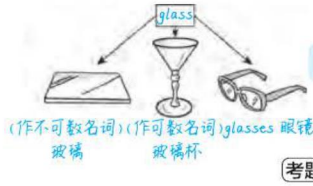
⑪ **glasses**/ɡlɑːsɪz/ *n.* 眼镜

a pair of glasses/this pair of glasses 作主语时，谓语动词用单数。

e.g.His grandfather always wears a pair of glasses.

他的爷爷总是戴着一副眼镜。a pair of glasses 一副眼镜

This pair of glasses looks very nice. 这副眼镜看起来非常漂亮。



glass
- "玻璃"，不可数名词。 — I'd like some colorful glass. 我想要些彩色的玻璃。
- "玻璃杯"，可数名词，复数形式是glasses。 — There are two glasses of coffee for them. 有两杯给他们的咖啡。

考题在线 11 _____ that pair of _____ a little cheaper? [黄石]

A. Is; glass B. Are; glass

C. Is; glasses D. Are; glasses

点拨: 用语法分析法解题。由 that pair of 可知是"那副眼镜"，故排除 A、B 两项；句中谓语动词的数应与 pair 一致。

★See you later then.

⑫ **later**/ˈleɪtə(r)/ *adv.* 以后

单独使用时，表示从现在算起的"以后"。

e.g.Let's stop now and finish it later.

咱们现在停下来，稍后再完成它。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

以后
- 用于一段时间之后，表示从过去算起的多长时间“以后”，相当于“after+时间段”。
  - I called again a week later/after a week.
    一周后我又打了电话。
- 指从现在算起的多久“以后”，通常不用later，而用“in+时间段”来表示。
  - I'll watch *Youth* in a week.
    一周后我将看《芳华》。

考题在线答案 1.straight 2.C 3.height 4.A 5.B 6.D 7.A 8.D 9.B 10.B 11.C

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见303页)

听力技巧

巧用句型法(在做听力题时，往往会遇到一些重要的句型，如“What do/does...look like? What is...like?”等，而这些是和人的外貌相关的，其答语往往是“...is+tall/short/heavy/thin... 或 ...have/has+形容词+hair/face/nose...”。所以我们要认真审题，有针对性地去听，以便选出正确的答案。)

课文听力1b

听力过程

一、听1b，补全句子，每空词数不限

1.That is not Amy's friend. He's really _____, and has _____.

二、听2a，选择正确答案

2.What does David look like?

A. He's tall and heavy.

B. He's tall and thin.

C. He has straight hair.

3.Sally has _____ hair.

A. short straight

B. long curly

C. long straight

4.Sally is _____.

A. of medium height and heavy

B. of medium height and thin

C. tall and heavy

课文听力2a

5.What does Peter look like?

A. He's tall and has long hair.

B. He's tall and has short hair.

C. He's short and has short hair.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见303页)

一、根据句意及汉语提示写出单词

1. —Do you know our new math teacher?
—Yes, he is very _____(高的).

2. —What does the woman look like?
—She has _____(直的) yellow hair.

3. The man is _____(胖的) because he likes eating meat.

4. —You look really cool _____(今晚) at the party!
—Thank you.

5. There are two _____(电影院) in this city.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. It often rains _____(heavy) in this season every year. [兰州]

7. She usually wears a pair of _____(glass).

8. —Can you come to my party tonight?
—Sure. See you _____(late).

9. My father isn't tall or short. He's of medium _____(high).

10. The higher the mountain is, the _____(thin) the air is. [兰州]

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、单项选择

11. She _____ short hair and _____ of medium height.
A. is; is　　B. has; is
C. is; has　　D. has; has

12.—What will we buy, meat _____ fish?
—Fish. There's _____ meat in the fridge.
A. or; many　　B. but; a little
C. or; a little　　D. and; little

13.—_____?
—It's small and short.
A. What is it
B. What does it look like
C. What does it like
D. What does he look like

14.—How nice the building is! What is it for?
—It _____ a hotel. But I'm not sure.
A. must be　　B. have to be
C. may be　　D. will be

15.—What are you doing on Saturday morning?
—Well, it's going to be sunny, so I _____ a picnic with my friend. [包头]
A. have　　B. had
C. have had　　D. am having

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3d）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What does he look like? 他长什么样?	He's really tall. 他确实高。
What does she look like? 她长什么样?	She has long straight hair. 她留着长而直的头发。
Do they have straight or curly hair? 他们留着直发还是卷发?	They have curly hair. 他们留着卷发。
Is he tall or short? 他是高还是矮?	He isn't tall or short. He's of medium height. 他不高不矮。他中等身高。

3a Write these words in the correct box. 把这些词写在正确的方框内。

short hair 短发　heavy 重的　curly hair 卷发　thin 瘦的　young 年轻的
tall 高的　straight hair 直发　short 矮的　long hair 长发　of medium height 中等身高

is 是	
has 有	

3b Circle the correct words to complete the conversation. 圈出正确的单词来完成对话。

A:So what do/does your friend Clark look like? 那么你的朋友克拉克长什么样?
B:Well, he is/has thin, and he have/has black hair. 噢，他很瘦，留着黑发。
A:Really? Is/Does he tall or short? 真的吗? 他是高还是矮?
B:He is/isn't tall or short. He is/has of medium height. 他不高不矮。他中等身高。
A:Does he has/have curly or straight hair? 他留着卷发还是直发?
B:He is/has straight hair. And he is/has really handsome/hænsəm/. 他留着直发。并且他真的很英俊。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3c Write answers to these questions about different people. Then tell your partner about them.
写出这些关于不同的人的问题的答案。然后告诉你的搭档。

What does your favorite actor/ˈæktə(r)/① or actress/ˈæktrəs/ look like? 你最喜欢的男演员或女演员长什么样?

What does your favorite teacher look like? 你最喜欢的老师长什么样?

3d Describe someone in the class. Ask your classmates to guess who you are describing. 描述班里的某个人。让你的同班同学们猜猜你在描述谁。

This person/pɜ:(r)sn/② is of medium height. 这个人中等身高。

She has short hair. 她留着短发。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★What does your favorite actor or actress look like?

① **actor**/ˈæktə(r)/ *n.* 演员 actress 女演员

e.g. Lu Han is a young actor. 鹿晗是一名年轻的演员。

Zhao Liying and Yang Mi are both good **actresses**.

赵丽颖和杨幂都是很好的女演员。

表示"一名男/女演员"时,要说 an actor/actress。

拓展:

英语构词
- "动词+后缀or"变为名词,表示动作的执行者。 visitor参观者, inventor发明家
- "动词+后缀er"变为名词,表示动作的执行者。 teacher教师, reader读者, worker工人, singer歌唱家
- "名词+后缀ist"变为名词,表示"从事……的人"。 artist艺术家, scientist科学家

速记小筏:

act(v."表演")+or(表示人的后缀)=actor(n."演员")

act(v."表演")+ress(表示女性的后缀)=actress(n."女演员")

考题在线 根据括号内的汉语完成句子。

Jackie Chan is not only an _____ (演员)but also a singer.

[铜仁]

★This person is of medium height.

② **person**/pɜ:(r)sn/ *n.* 人 persons(复数形式)人们

e.g. There is only one person in the room. 房间里只有一个人。

辨析: person与people

person	意为"人",着重指个人。作可数名词,常指有个性的、特定的人。	There are three persons in their team. 他们队有三个人。
people	意为"人们",着重指全体,作集合名词,表复数概念。	There are many people at the party. 聚会上有许多人。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

e.g.This is just my personal opinion. 这只是我的个人观点。

The novel is written from personal experience.

这部小说是根据个人经历写的。 personal 个人的，私人的

考题在线答案 actor

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙 夺取中考语法满分

询问及描述长相



考点1 学会询问长相

句型：What+do/does+sb.+look like?

e.g.What do you look like？你长什么样?

What does he look like？他长什么样?

考点2 学会描述长相

①主语 +be 动词 + 形容词 .

② 主语 +be+of+ 形容词 + 名词 .

③主语 +has/have+（a/an）+ 形容词 + 名词 .

e.g.He/She is tall/short/thin/heavy.

他 / 她高 / 矮 / 瘦 / 胖。

He/She is of medium height.

他 / 她是中等身高。

He/She has long/short/curly/straight hair.

他 / 她留着长 / 短 / 卷 / 直发。

考题在线 1 —What does your brother look like?

—_____. [昆明]

A. He is outgoing

B. He is really tall and thin

C. He is a student

D. He is in hospital

描述性形容词

形容词是用来描述、修饰名词或代词的词，表示人或物的性质、特征和状态。

考点1 形容词的用法

形容词通常在句中作定语、表语和宾语补足语等。

e.g.She is a beautiful girl.

她是一个漂亮的姑娘。（定语）

The game is quite interesting.

这个游戏相当有趣。（表语）

We must keep the classroom clean.

我们必须保持教室清洁。（宾语补足语）

考题在线 2 —Look! Is that your friend Lucy?

—No, it isn't. Lucy has _____ hair. [济南]

A. big B. tall

C. short D. small

点拨:句意为：——看！那是你的朋友露西吗?——不，不是的。露西长着_____头发。big“大的”；tall“高的”；short“短的；矮的”；small“小的”。头发通常用长或短修饰。

考题在线 3 Robert is so _____ that he even has no time to stay with his children at weekends. [温州]

A. busy B. smart

C. serious D. pleased

点拨:用语境法解题。由后面的“周末没有时间和孩子们待在一起”可知他很“忙”。

考点2 【重点】【难点】多个形容词的排列顺序

英语中，当名词有多个形容词作前置定语时，这些形容词通常遵循一定的规则，不得随意调换。

基本顺序：限观大形龄色国材。限定词（冠词、指示代词、物主代词、数词等）+ 表示观点的描述性形容词 + 表大小、长短、高低的形容词 + 表形状、年龄、新旧的形容词 + 表颜色的形容词 + 表国籍、地区的形容词 + 表物质材料的形容词 + 中心词。

速记 小筏

多个形容词修饰名词的顺序

限定描绘大长高，形状年龄和新旧；

颜色国籍与材料，作用类别往后靠。

e.g.a quiet big old grey British wooden house

一间灰色的古老而宁静的英式大木屋

考题在线答案 1.B 2.C 3.A

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见303页)

一、单项选择

1.Tom _____ his father and his father _____ young.

A. looks like; looks like

B. looks like; looks

C. looks; looks like

D. looks; looks

2.—Do you remember what she looked like when you first met her?

—Of course. She was tall and thin _____ long hair. [福州]

A. in B. with C. on

3.—What does his mother look like?

—_____.

A. She is a doctor B. She is forty

C. She is thin D. She works in a bank

4.She _____ short and _____ curly hair.

A. is; is B. is; has

C. has; has D. has; is

5.Mary has _____ hair.

A. short curly brown B. curly short brown

C. brown curly short D. short brown curly

二、根据句意，用画线单词的反义词或对应词填空

6.Jim lives in a small house but Tom lives in a _____ one.

7.Tom's hair is curly, but his sister's hair is _____.

8.There is a short boy under the _____ tree.

9.My hair is long, but her hair is _____.

10. Mr Black is old, but his brother is _____.

三、按要求完成句子

11. Tom _____ thin. He _____ of medium height.(用 is 或 has 填空)

12. Kate isn't tall or short.(改为同义句)

Kate is _____ _____ _____.

13. My friend is short and heavy.(对画线部分提问)

_____ _____ your friend _____ _____?

14. Cathy and Ruth look the same.(改为同义句)

Cathy _____ _____ Ruth.

15. 她留着一头美丽的、黑色的、卷曲的长发。

She has _____ _____ _____ _____ hair.

Period 3 Section B(1a-1e)

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Match the words with the pictures. 把词与图片相匹配。

1.__d__ a big nose/nəʊz/__d__一个大鼻子

2._____ blonde/blɒnd, blɑ:nd/ hair_____金色头发

3._____ a small mouth/maʊθ/_____一张小嘴

4._____ glasses_____眼镜

5._____ a round/raʊnd/ face/feɪs/[1]_____一张圆脸

6._____ big eyes/aɪz/_____大眼睛

7._____ black hair_____黑发

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

8._____ a long face_____一张长脸

1b Make sentences about famous people. Fill in the blanks. 造一些关于名人的句子。填空。

1.__Jackie Chan__ has black hair.__成龙__留着黑发。

2._____ has a round face._____有一张圆脸。

3._____ wears glasses._____戴着眼镜。

4._____ has blonde hair._____留着金发。

课文听力 1c

1c Listen and write Johnny/ˈdʒɒni,ˈdʒɑːni/ Dean's/diːnz/ and Tina Brown's jobs in the chart. 听录音，在表格中写上约翰尼·迪安和蒂娜·布朗的职业。

	Johnny Dean 约翰尼·迪安	Tina/tiːnə/ Brown 蒂娜·布朗
Job 工作	singer/ˈsɪŋə(r)/ ②歌手	
Looks like 长相		

1d Listen again. What do Johnny and Tina look like?Complete the chart in 1c. 再听一遍。约翰尼和蒂娜长什么样？完成 1c 中的表格。

1e Describe what your favorite singer or athlete looks like. 描述你最喜欢的歌手或运动员长什么样。

My favorite singer is John Jackson/ˈdʒæksən/. 我最喜欢的歌手是约翰·杰克逊。

He's tall and thin. He has short curly brown hair. 他高而瘦。他有一头短而卷曲的棕色头发。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

（答案见303页）

Ⅱ 听力过程

课文听力 1c

听 1c 完成以下习题

1.What does Johnny Dean do?

A.A worker. B.A singer. C.An actor.

2.What does Johnny Dean look like?

A.Tall and heavy. B.Short and heavy.

C.Tall and thin.

3.What does Tina Brown look like?

A.She's really tall. B.She's really short.

C.She's not tall or short.

4.What does Tina Brown do?

A. An actress. B.A singer.

C.A doctor.

5.Who has funny glasses?

A.Johnny Dean. B.Tina Brown.

C.We don't know.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

·考点批注 ·考点应用

face to face 意为"面对面"；make a face 意为"做鬼脸"。

★a round face

① **face**/feɪs/ *n.* 脸

e.g. She has a beautiful face. 她有一张漂亮的脸。

The room faces south. 房间朝南。 v. 面朝；面向

I can't face another argument. 我无法面对另一场争论。 v. 面对（某人或某事）

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★**singer**

② **singer**/ˈsɪŋə(r)/ *n.* 歌手

e.g. Huang Bo isn't a singer, but he sings very well.

黄渤不是歌手，但是他唱得很好。

考题在线 1 用所给词的适当形式填空。

Alice's hobby is singing. Her dream is to become a_____ (sing) some day.

考题在线 2 I like this song. It's by one of my favorite _____. [河北]

A. singers B. dancers C. painters D. writers

考题在线答案 1.singer 2.A

速记小筏：

sing(v. 唱) +er → singer(n. 歌手)

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

2a Complete the chart with words of the opposite meaning. 用反义词来完成表格。

young 年轻的	
	thin 瘦的
tall 高的	
	long 长的
curly 卷曲的	

2b Read the newspaper article. Which picture shows the real criminal? 阅读这份报纸上的文章。哪幅图画描绘了真正的罪犯?

课文朗读 2b

An Interesting Job 一份有趣的工作

Joe Brown has a very interesting job. **He** is a police artist/ɑ:(r)tɪst/①②. Some people see crimes/kraɪmz/ and then talk to Joe. They tell him what the criminal/krɪmɪnl/ looks like.③ Then Joe draws a picture of the criminal, and the police put/pʊt/④ **it** in newspapers and on television to find **him**.

乔·布朗有一份非常有趣的工作。他是一位警方画像师。一些人目睹了犯罪行为，然后对乔讲述。他们告诉他罪犯长什么样。然后乔画出罪犯的画像，警察把它放在报纸上和电视上来寻找此人。

He wants to draw a good picture of each/i:tʃ/⑤ criminal, but **this job** is sometimes difficult. Many people don't always see things the same way/weɪ/⑥ so⑦ they may describe/dɪˈskraɪb/ the same person differently/dɪfərəntli/⑧. Also, **they** don't always remember well."The criminal is of medium height and young. He has long straight brown hair and big eyes,"says one woman. Another/ənʌðə(r)/⑨ woman says,"**He** is tall and thin, and he has curly blond hair. He's about thirty years old." In the end/end/⑩, the real/rɪəl/ criminal is a short and heavy old man, and he has short black hair!

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

他想给每名罪犯画好画像，但是这工作有时很困难。许多人并非总是以同样的方式看事物，因此他们可能会将同一个人描述得不一样。还有，他们也并不总是记得清。一位妇女说："罪犯中等身高，年轻。他留着长而直的棕色头发，大眼睛。"另一位妇女说："他又高又瘦，他留着卷曲的金发。他大约三十岁。"最后，真正的罪犯是一个又矮又胖的老男人，并且他留着短而黑的头发！

2c Read the article again and write what the words in bold refer to. 再读一遍短文，写一写黑体部分的词指什么。

1.He=_____ 他 = _____

2.it=_____ 它 = _____

3.him=_____ 他 = _____

4.this job=_____ 这个工作 = _____

5.they=_____ 他们 = _____

6.He=_____ 他 = _____

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 20分

☞（答案见303页）

阅读策略

标题总括法（本部分课文有一个非常醒目的标题"An Interesting Job"。看到这个标题便明确了文章的主旨，接下来的内容都围绕这个主题进行阐述。）

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What's the passage mainly about?

（主旨大意题）

A.Joe Brown's interesting job.

B.It's mainly about what an interesting job is.

C.It mainly tells us how to get an interesting job.

D.It mainly tells us interesting jobs are all difficult.

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2.What's Joe Brown's job? （细节理解题）

A.A police doctor. B.A police artist.

C.A teacher. D.A singer.

3.Joe Brown's work can _____.

（推理判断法）

A.bring him much money

B.teach people how to draw pictures

C.tell people which newspaper is good

D.help the police to find the criminal

4.Joe Brown's job is sometimes difficult because _____. （细节理解题）

A.people always see things the same way

B.people don't always tell him the truth

C.people describe the same person differently

D.the person wears different clothes

5.Which of the following can help Joe Brown draw well? （推理判断法）

A.His feelings.

B.The criminal's job.

C.People teach Joe how to draw.

D.People remember the criminal well.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点应用

★He is a police artist.

这是“名词+名词”构成的短语，前一个名词修饰后一个名词。

① **police artist** 警方画像师

注意：这些“名词+名词”构成的短语使用复数时只需将后面的名词变成复数形式。但是 man 和 woman 构成的“名词+名词”短语则必须把两个名词都变成复数形式。

three men teachers 三位男教师

twelve women workers 十二位女工

都要变，记，记，记！ 敲黑板

② **artist**/ˈɑː(r)tɪst/ *n.* **艺术家**

e.g. Qi Baishi is an artist. 齐白石是位艺术家。

考题在线 1 Yangzhou Eight Eccentrics were a group of _____ who created their own style. (艺术家) [扬州]

点拨：用语法分析法解题。artist 意为“艺术家”，是可数名词，前面没有限定词时用复数形式。句意：扬州八怪是一群开创了自己风格的艺术家。

★They tell him what the criminal looks like.

③ **【句法分析】**该句含有 what 引导的宾语从句，其中 what the criminal looks like 作 tell 的直接宾语。宾语从句用陈述语序。

高频考点，“主+谓”结构，牢记！ 敲黑板

e.g.I don't know who you are talking with.

我不知道你在和谁说话。

陈述语序

考题在线 2 —Could you please tell me_____“The Reader”, a TV programme hosted by Dong Qing?

—Well, it is fun and teaches us a lot of knowledge. [泰州]

A.how do people like　　B.how people liked

C.why do many people like　　D.why many people like

★...and the police put it in newspapers and on television to find him.

④ **put**/pʊt/ *v.* **放**

put 用作及物动词，此处意为“放；摆；搁；安置”。put 常用于以下结构：

put+名词/代词+介词短语	Please put the book on the desk. 请把书放在书桌上。
put+名词/代词+副词(短语)	Put the chair here, please. 请把那把椅子放在这里。

考题在线 3 —Where's my English book, Mary?

—Oh, I saw you _____ it in your schoolbag.

A. buy　B. bring　C. take　D. put

点拨：用辨析法解题。buy 买；bring 带来；take 带走；put 放。结合答句后面的 schoolbag 可知把英语书“放”进书包符合逻辑。

•考点批注

★名词+名词

①表材料：stone bridge 石桥

②表用途：meeting room 会议室

③表内容：picture book 图画书

④表性别：boy student 男学生

速记 小筱：

art(n. 美术)+ist(表示人的后缀)=artist(n. 艺术家)

★有关 put 的短语：

- put off 推迟
- put out 扑灭
- put up 举起；张贴
- put on 穿上
- put down 放下
- put away 把……收起来；把……放回原处

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★each 用作代词单独作主语，谓语动词用单数。“each of+复数名词/代词”作主语，谓语动词用单数。作同位语，放在主语后，谓语动词用复数。

★He wants to draw a good picture of each criminal.

⑤ **each**/iːtʃ/ *adj.* **每个**

e.g. Each student has a dictionary. 每个学生都有一本词典。

The boys come from Paris, and each knows Notre-Dame de Paris well. 这些男孩来自巴黎，每个人都对巴黎圣母院有很好的了解。

Each of them is riding a shared bike. 他们每人骑着一辆共享单车。

They each want to scan the QR Code. 他们每个人都想扫二维码。

考题在线 4 Each of us _____ a life goal, which will guide us to a bright future(指引我们走向光明的未来). [盐城]

A. has B. have C. will have D. had

点拨：用语法分析法解题。本句在陈述一个事实，故用一般现在时；Each of us 作主语，谓语动词要用单数。

→作副词，意为“各个地”，常放在句末。

e.g. The tickets cost ten yuan each. 这些票每张 10 元。

辨析：each 与 every

each	用于两者或两者以上中的每一个，强调个体，可用作形容词、副词或代词，可作定语、状语、主语和同位语。	Each of the students has a new bike.=The students each have a new bike.=The students have a new bike each.=Each student has a new bike. 每个学生都有一辆新自行车。
every	用于三者或三者以上，强调整体。用作形容词，作定语。	Every student has a new bike. 每个学生都有一辆新自行车。

●every 只能作形容词，不可单独使用。

考题在线 5 There are many flowers and trees on _____ side of the Century Road. [济南]

A. each B. every C. both D. all

点拨：用辨析法解题。both 两者都，后接可数名词复数；all 三者（或三者以上）都；each 每一个；every 每一个。但 each 用于两者或两者以上中的每一个，强调个体，而 every 用于三者或三者以上中的每一个，强调整体。表示道路的每一边（有两边）且强调个体，故选 each。

★Many people don't always see things the same way so they may describe the same person differently.

(in) the same way 用相同的方式

⑥ **way**/weɪ/ *n.* **方式；路线**

e.g. The little cat catches many fish in this way. 小猫用这种方法捉了很多鱼。

What is another way of saying “TV”？ “电视”的另一种说法是什么？

拓展：

way
- 名词，意为“路线；路”，“way to+地点名词”表示“去……的路”。
  - Can you tell me the way to the bank? 你能告诉我去银行的路吗？
- 相关短语
  - by the way顺便说一下
  - get in the way of 挡……的路
  - on the/one's way在路上

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 Change the information you read into a mind map(把你读到的信息转换成思维导图). _____, you can remember it well and think of it later easily. [山西]

A. In this way B. At the same time C. On the other hand

点拨:用语境法解题。In this way 用这种方法; At the same time 同时; On the other hand 另一方面。后面提到能够很好地记住它并轻易想起来,可知横线处表达“用前面提到的方法”。

⑦ **so**/səʊ/ *conj.* 因此,所以 *adv.* 这么,如此

e.g.I heard some noise outside, so I went out of the room to see why.
我听到外面有一些噪音,所以我走出房间去看为什么。

so 用作连词,表示“因此,所以”。

so副词,“这么,如此”

- 用于形容情感或品质的程度,或数量之大,意为“这么,如此”。
  - You are so kind. 你真是太好了。
  - There are so many smartphones in our class.在我们班上有那么多智能手机。
- 用于替代前面陈述的事物,以避免重复,常用于think, believe, do, say等之类的动词之后,意为“如此,这样”。
  - —Will he pass the exam? 他会通过这次考试吗?
    —I don't think so. 我认为不会。
  - He asked me to write to him and I did so.他叫我写信给他,我照办了。
- 用于否定句中以比较人或物,常用于not so...as...结构中,意为“不如……这么……,不像……那样……”。
  - She is not so clever as we think. 她不如我们想象的那么聪明。

考题在线 7 It's not always safe to pay over the Internet, _____ you should be careful. [天津]

A. so B. after C. because D. as soon as

点拨:用逻辑推理法解题。由前面“网上支付不总是安全的”可推知后面意为“所以你应该小心”。故用 so 来连接。

★辨析:different, difference 与 differently

different adj. 不同的;有差异的

difference n. 不同;差异

differently adv. 不同地

⑧ **differently**/ˈdɪfərəntli/ *adv.* 不同地

e.g.Her father does things differently. 她爸爸行事有所不同。

English is different from Chinese. 英语和汉语不同。

There are a few differences between the twins. 这对双胞胎有几处不同。

They behave so differently. You'll never believe they are brothers. 他们举止如此不同。你决不会相信他们是兄弟。

考题在线 8 People in different countries behave _____when they eat dinner. [恩施]

A. difference B. different C. differently

点拨:用词义辨析法解题。difference 用作名词,意为“不同”; different 用作形容词,意为“不同的”; differently 用作副词,意为“不同地”。behave 是

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

动词，需要副词修饰，表示“表现得不一样”。

another 用作形容词，意为“另一；又一”，修饰可数名词单数；
another 用作代词，泛指三者或者三者以上同类事物中的“另一个”。

★**Another woman says...**

⑨ **another**/əˈnʌðə(r)/ *adj.&pron.* 另一；又一

e.g. Would you like another apple? 你还想要一个苹果吗？
（形容词）
I do not like this one; please show me another.
（代词）
我不喜欢这一个，请给我看另一个。

辨析：one...another 与 one...the other...

one...another	表示不定数目中的“一个”与“另一个”。
one...the other...	表示两者中的“一个”与“另一个”。

e.g.I have two daughters. One is a nurse, and the other is a teacher.
我有两个女儿。一个是护士，另一个是教师。

拓展：

another
- one another意为“互相”，相当于each other。 — We should help one another. 我们应该互相帮助。
- “another+基数词+可数名词复数”意为“再有几个……；还有几个……”，相当于“基数词+more+可数名词复数”。 — another five hours =five more hours 另外五个小时

考题在线 9 —I like the coat but not the color. Have you got _____one?
—Yes, I'll show you. [云南]

A. other　　B. others　　C. the other　　D. another

点拨：用语法分析法及语境法解题。other 泛指“别的；其他的”，后面常接可数名词复数；others 意为“其他的人或物”，其后不加名词；the other 指“除去一个以外的另一个”，后接可数名词单数；another 意为“又一个；再一个”，后接可数名词单数。由空格后的 one 可知排除 A、B 两项；由“我喜欢这件上衣，但是不喜欢这个颜色”可知问是否还有其他的，没有将衣服一分为二的意思，故排除 C 项。



★**In the end, the real criminal is a short and heavy old man, and he has short black hair!**

in the end=at last/finally，在句中作状语。其反义短语是 at first。

⑩ **in the end** 最后；终于

e.g. He studied hard and in the end he passed the exam.
他努力学习，最后通过了考试。
……的结尾
We walked to the end of the road. 我们走到了路的尽头。

考题在线 10 The man tried several times（尝试了几次）to start the car, and he succeeded（成功）_____. [安徽]

A. in the past　　B. in the end
C. at first　　D. at once

点拨：用辨析法解题。in the end 最后；in the past 在过去；at first 首先；

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

at once 立刻。四个选项中只有 in the end 可使句意完整、通顺。

e.g. The cinema is at the end of this street. 电影院在这条街的尽头。

at the end of 意为“在……的尽头、结尾”。

考题在线答案 1.artists 2.D 3.D 4.A 5.A 6.A 7.A 8.C 9.D 10.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见303页)

一、根据句意及所给提示填空

1. Alice draws very well. She wants to be an a_____.

2. Mr. Li is _____(put) his HUAWEI phone in his bag.

3. Chinese clay art is famous because the clay pieces are so small but they look very _____(真实的).

4. She wants to become a famous_____(sing) when she grows up. [攀枝花]

5. My sister and I speak English _____(different).

二、根据汉语提示完成句子

6. _____(两名警方画像师)are working hard in their office.

7. Ma Yun is _____(和……谈话) his friends.

8. Can you tell the story_____(相同的方法)?

9. You'd better wear _____(一条牛仔裤) to climb the hill.

10. _____(每张脸) is round.

三、单项选择

11. Each of the boys _____ a small mouth.

A. have B. has C. is D. are

12. She looked everywhere for her book but ____ had to go home without it.

A. at first B. in the end

C. at the last D. in end

13. The brothers like *The Wandering Earth* very much, _____ they go to the cinema again.

A. and B. but C. or D. so

14. —This room is too small. I'd like to ask for _____.

—Sure. We have rooms available here. [武汉]

A. another B. the other

C. one D. it

15. —Excuse me, could you tell me _____?

—Sure. Bus No. 4 will take you right there. [重庆B卷]

A. how can I get to the zoo

B. how I can get to the zoo

C. when can I get to the zoo

D. when I can get to the zoo

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

3a Jack is Bill's best friend.Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. 杰克是比尔最好的朋友。用方框内的单词填空。

looks 看起来　glasses 眼镜　straight 直的　shoes 鞋子　handsome 英俊的

My best friend is Jack. Let me tell you what he _____ like. First of all, he is very tall and _____. He has _____brown hair and he doesn't wear_____. He usually wears jeans/dʒiːnz/, a T-shirt and sports_____. I like him because he is really cool and fun, and he is good at soccer.

我最好的朋友是杰克。让我告诉你他_____什么样。首先，他非常高、非常_____。他留着_____棕色头发并且他不戴_____。他通常穿牛仔裤、T恤衫和运动_____。我喜欢他，因为他真的很酷很有趣，并且他擅长足球。

3b Write a passage about your best friend. These questions may help you. 写一篇关于你最好的朋友的短文。这些问题或许能帮你。

What is your friend's name? 你朋友的名字是什么?

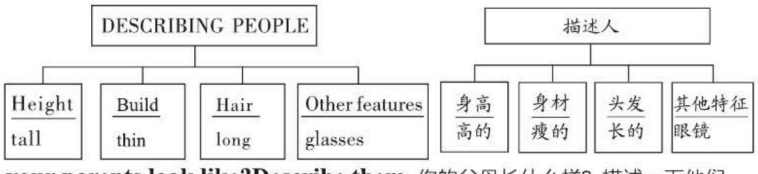
What does he/she look like? 他 / 她长什么样?

What does he/she like to wear? 他 / 她喜欢穿什么?

Why do you like him/her? 你为什么喜欢他 / 她?

Self Check 自我检测

1 Write more words in each box. 在每个方框内写上更多的词汇。



2 What do your parents look like?Describe them. 你的父母长什么样? 描述一下他们。

My dad is tall... 我爸爸是高个子……

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　•考点应用

★First of all, he is very tall and handsome.

first of all 首先

【重点】辨析: first of all 与 at first

first of all	根据时间顺序依次列出一系列的动作。
at first	只能用于表示一段时间，常与稍后的一段时间作比较。相当于 to start/begin with 和 in the beginning。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g.You'll find it difficult at first/to begin with, but later/soon it'll get easier. 起初你将发现它很难，但是不久它就会变得容易些。

考题在线 —Could you tell me how I can improve my English?

—Sure. _____, you could speak it as much as possible. [本溪]

A. After all　　B. In the end

C. By the way　　D. First of all

考题在线答案 D

Ⅲ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作20分

单元话题

假设李华是你的同班同学，请根据以下提示及要求，用英语写一篇题为“My Classmate”的短文。

[百色]

提示：1. 他个子高，长相英俊，成绩优秀，擅长运动；

2. 他乐于助人（举一个例子）；

3. 对他的评价。

要求：1. 文中不能出现真实的姓名及校名；2. 词数80左右。

My Classmate

_____

_____

_____

_____

_____

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 注意按信息全面介绍人物；

2. 正确运用人称，时态多用一般现在时；

3. 要正确使用描述人物外貌特征的形容词和句型，正确使用be动词与have/has。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三步法”描述人物外貌

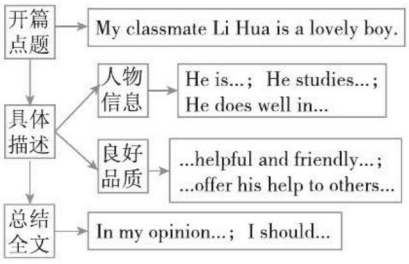
写作思路分三步：

第一步：开门见山，交代要描述的人的姓名、身份。

第二步：描述其长相、性格、喜好等。

第三步：总结（我眼中的……）。评论人物，表达感情。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	lovely, tall, strong, solves, exercise, helpful, friendly, know, call, thankful, moved, excellent
短语	all day, get good grades, does well in, try out, in different ways, be good at, on one's way, get lost, call the police
句式	① be always doing sth. ② It's+*adj.* +for sb. to do sth. ③ find sb. doing sth. ④ He knew+that从句 ⑤ What a/an...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

My Classmate

My classmate Li Hua is a lovely boy. He is very tall and strong. He is good-looking. He studies very hard at school all day and he always gets good grades. He does well in all the subjects. He is always trying out new ideas. He solves problems in many

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

different ways. Also he is good at sports. He thinks it is good for us to exercise more.

Li Hua is very helpful and friendly, too. He always offers his help to others. He is polite to everybody. One day, on his way home from school, he found a little girl crying at the corner. He went up to her and asked her why she was crying. He knew the girl got lost. He called the police and helped the girl find her house. The girl's parents were so thankful and moved. What a kind boy he is!

In my opinion, Li Hua is so excellent. I should learn from him.

名师点评：本文运用了"三步法"描述人物外貌。

①开篇交代人物信息--同学李华是一个非常可爱的男孩儿。
②抓住人物的外貌特征进行描写，并按要求介绍了同学的爱好以及乐于助人的良好品质。
③结尾评论人物、陈述观点和表达情感。
添彩点：运用了一些高级词汇及句型：offer, in my opinion, be always doing..., I think+从句, It is +adj.+for sb. to do sth., what 引导的感叹句等。



Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见303页)

单元知识浓缩

Joe Brown has a very _____[1] job. He's a police _____[2]. Some people see _____[3] and tell Joe what the _____[4] looks like. Then Joe _____[5] a picture of the criminal to help the police to find him.

This job is sometimes difficult. Many people don't see things the same _____[6] so they may _____[7] the same person _____[8]. Also, they don't always _____[9] well. "The criminal is of _____[10] height and young. He has long straight brown hair and big eyes,"says one woman. Another woman says," He is tall and thin, and he has curly blond hair. He's about thirty years old." In the _____[11], the _____[12] criminal is a short and heavy old man, and he has short black hair!

Reading sparks dreams and books fulfill ourselves.
阅读点亮梦想，书香成就人生。

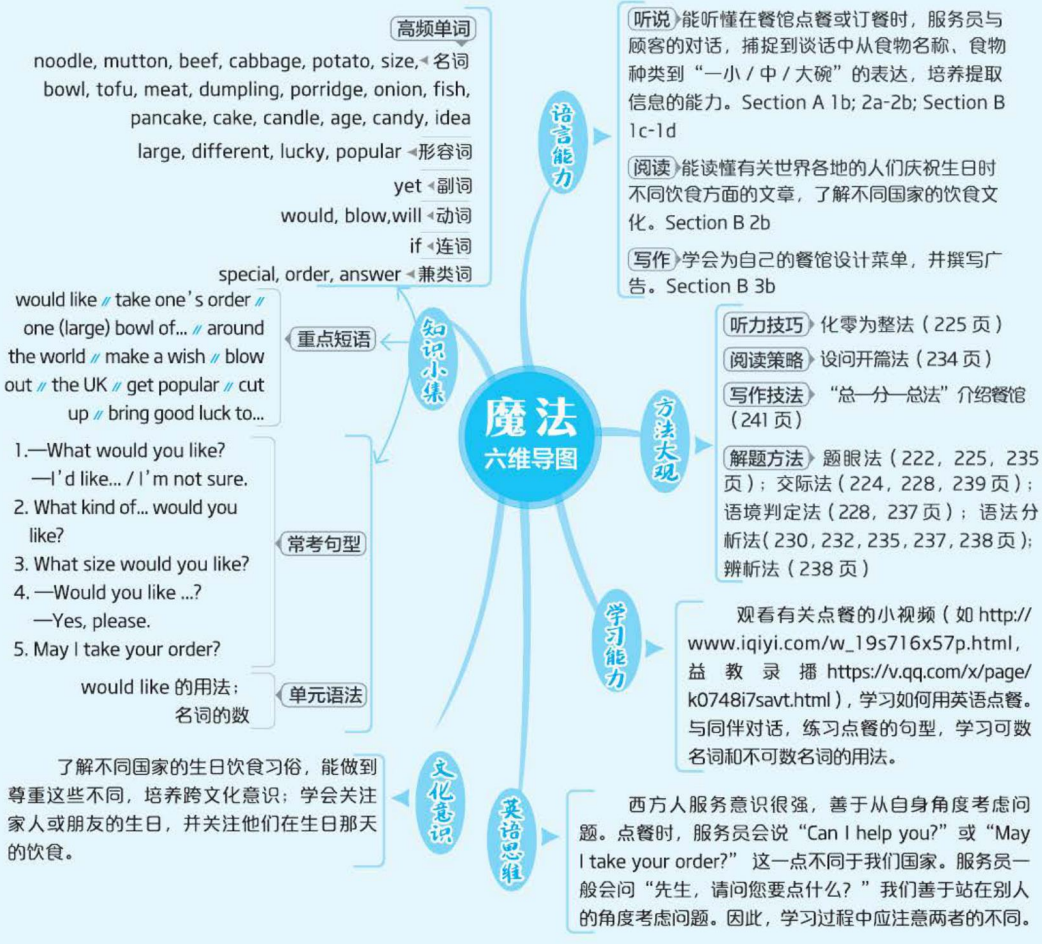


我一定要好好学习，
不然别人会说：看看那个人，
除了帅，一无所有。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 10 I'd like some noodles.

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1.potato *n.* 土豆；马铃薯→ potatoes(复数)

2.bowl *n.* 碗→one(large) bowl of... 一(大)碗……

3.noodle *n.*(常用复数形式)面条→ rice noodles 米线

4.special *n.* 特色菜；特价品 *adj.* 特别的；特殊的 → Special 1 1号特色菜

5.yet *adv.*(常用于否定句或疑问句)还；仍然

6.large *adj.* 大号的；大的→ big/great(近义词) → small/little(反义词)

7.order *n.&v.* 点菜；命令→ take one's order 点菜

8.size *n.* 大小；尺码→ small size 小号→ medium size 中号→ large size 大号

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

9.beef *n.* 牛肉→ beef noodles 牛肉面

10.would *modal v.*（表示意愿）愿意

‖必背短语

11.would like(表示意愿)愿意; 喜欢→want(同义词)

12.take one's order 点菜

‖必背句子

13.—What would you like？您想要什么?

—I'm not sure yet. 我还不确定。

14. May I **take your order**? 可以点菜了吗?

15.—What size would you like? 你要多大碗的?

—Large, please. 请给我大碗的。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus-3c)

‖必背单词

1.meat *n.*（可食用的）肉→ chicken 鸡肉→ fish 鱼肉→ pork 猪肉→ beef 牛肉→ mutton 羊肉

‖必背句子 & 语法

2.—Would you like a large bowl?

你想要大碗的吗?

—Yes, please. 是的，谢谢。

3.—What kind of noodles would you like?

你想要哪种面条?

—I'd like beef noodles, please.

请给我来份牛肉面。

Period 3 Section B (1a-1d)

‖必背单词

1. fish *n.* 鱼；鱼肉→ fishes/fish(复数)鱼→ some fish 一些鱼肉

2. dumpling *n.* 饺子→ make dumplings 包饺子

3. pancake *n.* 烙饼；薄饼

‖必背句子

4. I don't like onions, green tea **or** porridge.

我不喜欢洋葱、绿茶和粥。

Period 4 Section B (2a-2c)

‖必背单词

1. different *adj.* 不同的→ be different from 与……不同

2.age *n.* 年龄→ at the age of 在……岁时

3.blow *v.* 吹→ blows(第三人称单数)→ blowing(现在分词)→ blew(过去式)

4.lucky *adj.* 幸运的→ luck(名词)→ luckily(副词)→ lucky number 幸运数字

5.popular *adj.* 受欢迎的；普遍的→ be popular with 在……中受欢迎

6.world *n.* 世界→ in the world 在世界上

7.answer *n.* 答案→ question（对应词）问题 *v.* 回答 ask →（反义词）问

8.cake *n.* 蛋糕→ birthday cake 生日蛋糕

9.candle *n.* 蜡烛

10.candy *n.* 糖果→ candies（复数）

11.the UK(=the United Kingdom) *n.* 英国

12.idea *n.* 想法；主意→ an idea 一个想法→ have no idea 不知道；没想法

13.if *conj.* 如果

14.will *v.* 将要；会

‖必背短语

15.around the world 世界各地→ all over the world（同义短语）

16.make a wish 许愿

17.blow out 吹灭

18.get popular 受欢迎；流行

19.cut up 切碎

20.bring good luck to... 给……带来好运

必背句子

21.What would people **like to eat** on their birthday? 过生日时人们想吃什么?

Period 5 Section B (3a-Self Check)

‖必背句子

But we **are short of** fish. 但是我们缺少鱼肉。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goals: Order food
语言目标：点餐

1a Match the words with the foods. 将单词与食物配对。

1.mutton/ˈmʌtn/ g 羊肉 g　2.beef/biːf/① _____牛肉_____

3.noodles/ˈnuːdlz/_____面条_____　4.chicken_____鸡肉_____

5.cabbage/ˈkæbɪdʒ/_____卷心菜_____

6.potatoes/pəˈteɪtəʊz/② _____土豆_____

7.tomatoes_____西红柿_____　8.carrots_____胡萝卜_____

—What would/wʊd/ you like? 您想要什么?

—I'm not sure③ yet/jet/.④ Are there any vegetables in the beef noodles? 我还没想好。牛肉面中有蔬菜吗?

—Yes, there are some tomatoes. 是的，有一些西红柿。

—OK, I'd like the beef noodles, please. 好吧，请给我来份牛肉面。

1b Listen and check（√）the noodles that the person orders. 听录音，并在那个人所点的面条前打（√）。

_____Special/ˈspeʃəl/ 1⑤ _____1 号特色面

_____Special 2_____2 号特色面

_____Special 3_____3 号特色面

课文听力 1b

1c Practice the conversation in 1a with your partner. Then make your own conversations. 和你的同伴练习 1a 中的对话，然后编你们自己的对话。

2a Listen and check（√）the names of the foods you hear. 听录音，在你听到的食物的名称前打（√）。

1._____noodles_____面条　2._____beef_____牛肉

3._____mutton_____羊肉　4._____chicken_____鸡肉

5._____tomatoes_____西红柿　6._____cabbage_____卷心菜

7._____potatoes_____土豆　8._____vegetables_____蔬菜

课文听力 2a

2b Listen again. Complete the sentences. 再听一遍录音，完成句子。

Boy:1.I'd like a _____(1)_____ bowl of noodles. 我想要一_____碗面。

2.I'd like _____(2)_____, _____(3)_____ and _____(4)_____ noodles. 我想要_____,_____和_____面。

Girl:1.I'd like a _____(5)_____ bowl. 我想要一_____碗。

2.I'd like _____(6)_____ and _____(7)_____ noodles, please. 请给我来_____和_____面。

2c Ask and answer questions with your partner. Use the information in 2a. 用 2a 中的信息，和你的

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

同伴提问并回答问题。

—What kind of noodles would you like?⑥——你想要哪种面条?

—I'd like beef noodles, please.——请给我来份牛肉面。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

Waitress: Good afternoon. May I take your order/ˈɔ:(r)də(r)/⑧?⑦下午好。你们可以点菜了吗?

Sally: Yes. Are there any vegetables in the beef soup? 可以了。牛肉汤中有蔬菜吗?

Waitress: Yes. There are some tomatoes. 是的。有一些西红柿。

Sally:OK. We'd like one bowl/bəʊl/⑨ of beef soup. 好吧。我们想要一碗牛肉汤。

Waitress: Sure.What size/saɪz/⑩ would you like? 好的。你们想要多大(碗)的?

Sally: Large/lɑ:(r)dʒ/, please. 请来大(碗)的吧。

Tom: We'd also like *gongbao* chicken and some *mapo* tofu/ˈtəʊfu:/ with rice. 我们还想要宫保鸡丁和一些麻婆豆腐盖饭。

Waitress:OK. One large bowl of beef soup, one *gongbao* chicken, and one *mapo* tofu with rice. 好的。一大碗牛肉汤,一份宫保鸡丁和一份麻婆豆腐盖饭。

Tom: Yes, that's right. 对,没错。

课文朗读 2d

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

表示肉类的名词是不可数名词。

fish 鱼肉
chicken 鸡肉
mutton 羊肉
beef 牛肉

★beef

① **beef**/bi:f/ *n.* 牛肉

e.g.Would you like beef or mutton? 你想要牛肉还是羊肉?

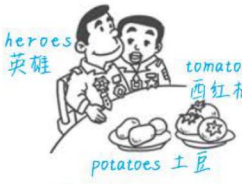
考题在线 1 —Mom, I'm back. Is there anything to eat?

—Sure. Some _____ in the fridge. [遂宁]

A. beef　　B. apple　　C. dumpling　　D. milk

点拨:用题眼法解题。由问句中的 eat 可知要排除 D 项;some 修饰可数名词时,名词要用复数形式,所以排除 B 项和 C 项。

速记小筏:



土豆(potato)和西红柿(tomato)敬英雄(hero)。

★potato　　potato 复数是 potatoes。

② **potato**/pəˈteɪtəʊ/ *n.* 土豆;马铃薯

e.g.He'd like some potatoes. 他想要一些土豆。

考题在线 2 Hurry up! Some _____ and____are on sale in the supermarket. [凉山]

A. tomato; egg　　B. tomatoes; egg

C. tomatoes; eggs　　D. tomato; eggs

★I'm not sure yet.

③交际用语 **I'm not sure.** 是对问题不能给出明确答复的应答语。

e.g.—Will he come tomorrow? 他明天要来吗?

—I'm not sure. 我不太清楚。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展：

sure

- 形容词，“确信”。①be sure of sth. =be sure+that从句 确信……；②be sure to do sth. 一定会做某事
  - He is sure of his success. =He is sure that he will succeed. 他确信他会成功。He is sure to succeed. 他一定会成功。
- 副词，“当然；的确”。常用来回答一般疑问句，意为“当然；的确”，相当于yes或certainly。只是sure在英式英语中较为常用，而在美式英语中常用certainly。
  - —Are you going with us? 你和我们一起去吗？—Sure. 当然。



考题在线 3 —Will you be free tonight?

—_____ Maybe I'll go to visit my uncle.

A. I'm not sure. B. Are you OK?

C. No problem. D. See you later.

点拨：由答语后句“我可能要去看望我叔叔”可知不确定是否有空。

④ **yet**/jet/ *adv.*（常用于否定句或疑问句）还；仍然

敲黑板 易错点，用心记住！

yet（副词）

- 用在否定句中，意为“还；仍然”。
  - He is not yet here. 他还未到。
- 用在疑问句中，意为“已经”。
  - Is everything ready yet? 一切准备就绪了吗？
- 在肯定句中，往往用still代替。
  - He is still at home now. 他现在还在家里。

e.g.He has a good job. It is strange yet true.

他有份好工作。这虽然奇怪却是真实的。

yet 用作并列连词时，意为“然而；但是”。

考题在线 4 He doesn't want to go fishing _____. He needs to do his homework first.

A. still B. already C. yet D. ever

★Special

⑤ **special**/speʃəl/ *n.* 特色菜；特价品 此处作可数名词。

e.g.What's the special in your restaurant? 你们餐馆的特色菜是什么？

It's a special day today. 今天是个特别的日子。

There isn't anything special in the classroom.

这个教室里没什么特别的地方。

special 还可用作形容词，意为“特别的；特殊的；专用的”，修饰不定代词时要放其后。

考题在线 5 —Could you please tell me _____ in today's newspaper?

—Sorry, _____. [黄冈]

A. something special; special nothing

B. special something; special nothing

C. anything special; something special

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

D. something special; nothing special

点拨: 此题考查 special 作为形容词的用法。special 修饰不定代词时需后置；问句表示委婉请求，要用 something。

★What kind of noodles would you like?

⑥ **交际用语 在口语中用来询问某人想要什么样的东西时用 What kind of...would you like?**

e.g. What kind of shoes would you like? 你想要什么样的鞋子?

★May I take your order?

⑦ **交际用语【重点】本句是点餐常用语，用于服务员询问客人是否可以点餐了。**

e.g. —May I take your order? 你可以点餐了吗?

—Yes. I'd like one bowl of beef noodles. 可以了。我想要一碗牛肉面。

类似的还有：Can I help you? /What can I do for you ? 回答一般先说"Yes, please.", 然后说"I'd like..."说明点什么餐。

考题在线 6 —_____?

—Yes, I'd like some beef noodles.

A. May I take your order　　B. May I borrow your ruler

C. What club do you want to join　　D. What size would you like

点拨: 用交际法解题。由答语"是的。我想要一碗牛肉面。"可知问句应是"你可以点餐了吗?"。

★order 的含义



点菜



命令



顺序



订购

⑧ **order** /ɔ:(r)də(r)/ *n.&v.* **点菜；命令**

order
- 名词，"点菜；秩序"
- 常用短语：take one's order 点菜；in order to 为了
- 动词，"点菜；命令"

e.g. He found everything in good order. 他发现一切井然有序。

The officer ordered them to fire. 军官命令他们开火。

I'd like to order some noodles. 我想点些面条。

考题在线 7 —Let's get Laurie a gift for his birthday.

—OK. Shall we _____ a book online for him? [菏泽]

A. afford　　B. order　　C. offer

★We'd like one bowl of beef soup.

⑨ **bowl** /bəʊl/ *n.* 碗

e.g. Mary only eats one bowl of porridge for breakfast. 玛丽早餐只吃一碗粥。

There are two bowls of rice on the table. 桌子上有两碗米饭。

拓展: "不定冠词/数词＋量词＋of＋不可数名词"结构常用来表示不可数名词的数量。

e.g.a bottle of water 一瓶水

a glass of milk 一杯牛奶

two bags of rice 两袋大米

敲黑板 量词除了 bowl 外还有 bottle, glass, cup, bag 等。多练练!

one bowl of... 意为"一碗……"，其后通常接不可数名词，强调容量而不是数量；表示复数概念时，直接把 bowl 变为复数形式即可。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★What size would you like?

⑩交际用语 What size...? 是用来询问物体的大小、尺寸的句型，其中 size 用作名词，意为“大小；尺码”。

在回答大、中、小号时常用以下词：
L=large 大号的
M=medium 中号的
S=small 小号的

e.g.—What size shoes does your father wear? 你爸爸穿多大号的鞋?

—He wears size 8. 他穿 8 号的鞋。

—What size bowl of rice would you like? 你想要多大碗的米饭?

—A large bowl, please. 请来一大碗。

考题在线 8 —Do you have this T-shirt in a small _____?

—I'm afraid not. It only comes in medium. [南京]

A. size B. colour C. material D. taste

点拨：用题眼法解题。size 尺寸；colour 颜色；material 材料；taste 味道；滋味。由答语中 comes in medium 可知此处问的是尺寸大小。

考题在线答案 1.A 2.C 3.A 4.C 5.D 6.A 7.B 8.A

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见303页)

听力技巧

化零为整法（有些听力题的各个问题连起来就可确定听力内容的整体框架。如某些有关食物的听力题，无外乎食物的名称、食物的规格和食物附带的东西等等。在听听力前，仔细审题，把各个题目相关的“点”整合起来，便会对听力内容有个大致的了解，然后顺着题目所呈现出来的思路认真听，就很容易选对答案了。）

课文听力 1b

听力过程

一、听 1b，选择正确答案

1.What would the boy like?

A. Mutton noodles.

B. Beef noodles.

C. Egg noodles.

2.What vegetables are there in the noodles?

A. Tomatoes.

B. Potatoes.

C. Cabbages.

课文听力 2a

二、听 2a，完成表格

Name	Size	Kind of noodles
Boy	3. a ____ bowl	4. chicken, _____ and cabbage
Girl	5. a ____ bowl	6. _____

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见303页)

一、根据句意及图片补全句子

1.I'd like a large bowl of _____, please. 

2.My little brother likes eating _____. 

3.People here like eating _____ a lot. 

4._____ are my favorite vegetables. 

5.I like eating _____ very much. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、根据所给提示填空

6.I'd like some _____（vegetable） noodles.

7.How many _____（碗） of rice can they eat?

8.—May I take your o_____?

—Yes, some mutton, please.

9.The boy doesn't have lunch _____（还）.

10.The _____（特色菜）in this restaurant is only 5 yuan.

三、单项选择

11.—What kind of noodles would you like?

—I'd like some _____ noodles. [丹东]

A. carrots B. beef

C. potatoes D. vegetables

12.—I want to know if it will rain tomorrow.

—_____, but I hope so. It's too dry now.

A. Of course B. I'm not sure

C. No problem D. You're welcome

13.He'd like a hamburger _____ chicken.

A. in B. on

C. for D. with

14.—May I take your order, sir?

—_____ [恩施]

A. Chicken with vegetables and two bowls of rices.

B. Chicken with vegetables and two bowls of rice.

C. Chickens with vegetable and two bowl of rices.

15.There are lots of _____ working in this hospital.

A. men doctors B. men doctor

C. man doctors D. man doctor

四、按要求完成句子

16. I'd like a large bowl of noodles.（对画线部分提问）

_____ would you like ?

17.He'd like tomato and egg noodles.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ _____noodles _____ he like?

18.Do you want a dictionary?（改为同义句）

_____ you _____ a dictionary?

19.I'd like *gongbao* chicken.（改为一般疑问句）

_____ _____ _____ *gongbao* chicken?

20.I'd like a large bowl of noodles.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ would you like?

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus–3c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

I'd=I would She'd=She would

What kind of noodles would you like? 你想要哪种面条?	I'd like beef noodles, please. 请给我来份牛肉面。
What size would you like? 你想要多大（碗）的?	I'd like a large bowl, please. 请给我来份大碗的。
Would you like a large bowl? 你想要大碗的吗?	Yes, please. 是的，谢谢。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Is there any meat in the tomato and egg soup? 在西红柿鸡蛋汤中有一些肉吗?	No, there isn't any./No, there's no meat/mi:t/不,没有。/不,没有肉。

Countable nouns 可数名词	Uncountable nouns 不可数名词	Countable and uncountable nouns 既可数又不可数的名词
bowls 碗, apples 苹果,carrots 胡萝卜, oranges 橙子, strawberries 草莓	beef 牛肉, meat 肉, milk 牛奶, mutton 羊肉, water 水	chicken 鸡/鸡肉, salad 沙拉, ice-cream 冰淇淋,cabbage 卷心菜, cake 蛋糕

3a Complete the conversation below. 完成下面的对话。

1.May I have your order? ____d____你可以点菜了吗? ____d____

2.What kind of noodles would you like? _____你想要哪种面条? _____

3.We have beef, chicken, mutton, cabbage, potato, tomato... _____我们有牛肉,鸡肉,羊肉,卷心菜,土豆,西红柿……_____

4.Yes, there are some carrots._____是的,有一些胡萝卜。_____

5.Sure. What size would you like?_____当然。你想要多大(碗)的? _____

6.We have large, medium and small bowls._____我们有大碗、中碗和小碗。_____

a.What kind of noodles do you have? 你们有哪种面条?

b. Oh, a medium bowl, please. 哦,请来份中碗的吧。

c. OK, I'd like the mutton noodles then. 好的,那么我想要份羊肉面。

d. I'd like some noodles, please. 请给我来些面条吧。

e. What sizes do you have? 你们有多大(碗)的?

f. Are there any vegetables in the mutton noodles? 在羊肉面中有一些蔬菜吗?

3b Write questions and answers using the words in brackets. 用括号中的词写出问题和答案。

1.What kind of noodles would you like? (kind) 你想要哪种面条?(种类)

_____(chicken/beef/tomatoes)_____(鸡肉/牛肉/西红柿)

2. _____(size) _____(medium)_____(大小) _____(中号的)

3. _____(any/cabbage/beef noodles) _____(一些/卷心菜/牛肉面)

_____(no)_____(没有)

3c Work in small groups. Who would like the food below?Write their names on the cards above the food. 小组练习。谁想要下面的食物?把他们的名字写在食物上面的卡片中。

hamburger 汉堡包 potato salad 土豆沙拉 tomato and egg rice 西红柿鸡蛋盖饭
beef and carrot noodles 牛肉胡萝卜面

A:Anna, what would you like to eat? 安娜,你想吃点什么?

B:I'd like beef noodles with carrots. 我想要带有胡萝卜的牛肉面。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 单元语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

would like 的用法



would like 意为“想要；愿意”，相当于 want，但语气更加委婉，表示要求、希望或询问等。would like 可缩写为’d like。在一般疑问句中把 would 提到主语前，否定句在 would 后加 not，其具体用法如下：

考点 1 would like 的基本用法

would like sth. 想要某物
would like to do sth. 想要做某事
would like sb. to do sth. 想要某人做某事

e.g. Li Ming would like a new phone.
李明想要一部新手机。
We all would like to watch the flash mob *My Motherland and Me*.
我们都想看快闪拍的《我和我的祖国》。
Mother would like me to go to college.
妈妈想让我上大学。

考点 2 would like 的疑问句及其答语

Would you like sth.?	“你想要……吗？”，表示征求意见。	肯定回答：Yes, please. 否定回答：No, thanks.
Would you like to do sth.?	“你想做某事吗？”，表示征求意见。	肯定回答：Yes, I’d like/love to. 否定回答：Sorry, but.../I’d love to, but...
What would you like (to do)?	“你想要（做）什么？”，表示询问。	回答：I’d like (to)...

e.g.—Would you like some tea?
你想喝点茶吗？
—Yes, please./No, thanks.
好的，谢谢。/不用，谢谢。
—Would you like to go swimming with me?
你想和我一起去游泳吗？
—I’d love to, but I’m very busy.
我很想去，但我很忙。
—What would you like to do?
你想做什么？
—I’d like to visit Hong Kong-Zhuhai-Macao Bridge. 我想参观港珠澳大桥。

考题在线 1 —Would you like more dumplings, Harry?
—_____. I’m full. [云南]
A. Yes, please　B. No way
C. No, thanks　D. All right
点拨：用语境判定法解题。根据答语后句“我饱了。”可知回答者不需要更多的饺子了，但也要表示感谢。

考题在线 2 —Would you like to watch a movie with me tonight?
—_____, but I have too much homework to do. [南京]
A. I’d love to　B. That’s all right
C. It doesn’t matter　D. No, thanks
点拨：用语境判定法解题。问句是征求意见，由答语的后面得知有太多的作业要做而不能去，所以要用委婉的说法“I’d love to, but...”。

考题在线 3 —Would you like _____ a film with us tonight?
—Sorry, I have to help my mother do housework.
【导学号：8811889】[大庆]
A. see　B. to see
C. seeing　D. to seeing

考点 3 would like 构成的问句常表示委婉语气，故问句中的 some 不用变为 any。

考题在线 4 —There is no salt left. Jim, would you like to get _____?
—OK, Mum. [呼和浩特]
A. it　B. one
C. some　D. any
点拨：用交际法解题。would like 引导的疑问句，

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

表示委婉的请求时，希望得到对方的肯定回答，问句中常用 some，不用 any。

名词的数

考点 4 可数名词

（1）特点：有单复数之分，单数用 a/an 修饰，复数用 some, many,lots of 等修饰。

e.g.a book 一本书　an apple 一个苹果

some actors 一些演员

（2）可数名词变复数的规则变化

一般情况下，在名词词尾加 -s	car–cars book–books
以 -s, -x, -ch, -sh 结尾的可数名词，在词尾加 -es	bus–buses box–boxes peach–peaches dish–dishes
以“辅音字母 +y”结尾的可数名词，变 -y 为 -i 再加 -es	dictionary–dictionaries family–families
以 -f 或 -fe 结尾的可数名词，变 -f 或 -fe 为 -v，再加 -es	knife–knives leaf–leaves
以 -o 结尾的可数名词，词义是无生命的名词加 -s, 有生命的名词加 -es	photo–photos radio–radios piano–pianos zoo–zoos tomato–tomatoes potato–potatoes hero–heroes

（3）特殊形式

①单复数同形的词。

e.g. Chinese 中国人　sheep 绵羊　deer 鹿

②词形发生变化的词。

e.g.child→children 孩子

man→men 男人

woman→women 女人

考题在线 5 Let life be beautiful like summer flowers and death like autumn _____.（树叶）

［扬州］

考题在线 6 I saw some ____ and _____ dancing in the street the day before yesterday.　［绥化］

A. Germen; Englishmen

B. Germans; Englishmans

C. Germans; Englishmen

速记 小筱

名词单数变复数口诀

名词单数变复数，多数直接加 -s。

词尾若是 -s, -x, -sh, -ch, 直接加上 -es.

词尾若是 -f 或 -fe, 先变 -f 或 -fe 为 -v 再加 -es.

若见“辅音字母 -y”，把 -y 变 -i 再加 -es。

词尾字母若是 -o，加 -es 的有两例，

其他不用多考虑，tomato 和 potato 属第一。

-oo 常要变 -ee, foot → feet 是一例；

男人女人 -a 变 -e, man → men/woman → women 又一例。

child 复数 children, 特殊变化特殊记。

中国人（Chinese）、日本人（Japanese）还有绵羊（sheep）和金鱼（goldfish），单数复数均自己。

考点 5 不可数名词

（1）特点：无单复数之分，不能用 a/an 修饰，可以用 some,lots of, much 等修饰。

e.g.some water 一些水　much money 很多钱

（2）用法：作主语时谓语动词用单数。

e.g. Porridge is my favorite. 粥是我最喜欢的。

（3）注意：计量不可数名词时常用“不定冠词或数词 + 量词 +of+ 不可数名词”结构。

e.g.a cup of tea 一杯茶

two boxes of milk 两盒牛奶

考题在线 7 —Are you thirsty?

—Yes, please give us _____.　［南充］

A. three bottle water

B. three bottle of water

C. three bottles of water

D. three bottles of waters

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

点拨：用语法分析法解题。句意：——你们口渴吗？——是的，请给我们三瓶水。water 是不可数名词，不能加 -s 变复数，故排除 D 项；表达一定数量使用表达数量的短语 ...bottle（s） of water，表示“三瓶”用 three bottles。

考题在线答案 1.C 2.A 3.B 4.C 5.leaves 6.C 7.C

Ⅲ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

（答案见304页）

一、单项选择

1. I'd like some _____ and _____. [百色]

A. banana; tomato B. bananas; tomato

C. bananas; tomatoes D. banana; tomatoes

2. —What would you like _____ for your mum on Mother's Day?

—A dress. [南宁]

A. buy B. buying

C. to buy D. buys

3. Would you like _____ orange juice, Sir? [绥化]

A. many B. some C. any

4. —What else do we need to make cold beef?

—_____. [自贡]

A. Two spoons salt

B. Two spoons of salts

C. Two spoons of salt

5.— Would you like to go to Shanghai Disneyland with me in July?

— _____ [宿迁]

A. Yes, I'd like to.

B. It doesn't matter.

C. Have a good time!

D. You're welcome.

二、按要求完成句子

6. There is a potato on the desk.（改为复数疑问句）

_____ _____ _____ _____on the desk？

7. I would like <u>an egg and two pieces of bread</u> for breakfast.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ you like for breakfast?

8. Would you like to play basketball with me？（作肯定回答）

_____,_____ _____ _____.

9. I would like some oranges.（改为一般疑问句）

_____ _____ _____ _____oranges?

10. I want to buy some cakes.（改为同义句）

I _____ _____ _____ buy some cakes.

Period 3 Section B（1a–1d）

Ⅰ. 课文原文、译文

1a Match the words with the pictures. 将单词与图片匹配。

1.____b____meat____b____肉

2._____dumplings/ˈdʌmplɪŋz/_____饺子

3._____porridge/ˈpɒrɪdʒ, ˈpɔːrɪdʒ/_____粥

4._____green tea_____绿茶

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5._____orange juice_____橙汁

6._____soup_____汤

7._____onions/ˈʌnjənz/_____ 洋葱

8._____fish/fɪʃ/①_____鱼肉

9._____pancakes/pænkeɪks/_____烙饼

1b **Circle the things you like in 1a. Put an × next to the things you don't like. Then tell your partner what you like and don't like.** 圈出 1a 中你喜欢的东西。在你不喜欢的东西旁边打 × 。然后告诉你的搭档你喜欢什么，不喜欢什么。

—I like dumplings, fish and orange juice. 我喜欢饺子、鱼肉和橙汁。

—I don't like onions, green tea or② porridge. 我不喜欢洋葱、绿茶和粥。

1c **Listen and complete the food order form.** 听录音，完成食物订单表。

课文听力 1c

ORDER FORM 订单表

Address:15 North Street 地址：北大街 15 号

Telephone number:_____电话号码：_____

Order: 所订食品：

Dishes:_____, fish, _____菜：_____、鱼肉、_____

Dumplings:12 beef and_____饺子：12 个牛肉和_____

Soup:one_____汤：一_____

Drinks:one large _____ and_____ small _____ juices.

饮料：一大_____和_____ 小_____果汁。

1d **Listen again. Check your answers in 1c.** 再听一遍录音，检查 1c 中你的答案。

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见 304 页)

Ⅱ 听力过程

听 1c, 选择正确答案

课文听力 1c

1. What does the woman want to do?

A.To order some clothes.

B.To order some food.

C.To sell some food.

2. What kind of dumplings would the woman like?

A.Beef and onion ones.

B.Mutton and onion ones.

C.Beef and carrot ones.

3. The woman would like some _____, too.

A. tomato soup

B. potato soup

C. apple juice

4. What drinks would the woman like?

A.One small black tea and two small orange juices.

B.Two large green teas and one small orange juice.

C.One large green tea and two small orange juices.

5. How much will the woman pay for all the things?

A. 15 yuan. B. 56 yuan.

C. 65 yuan.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点批注　　•考点应用

★fish

① **fish**/fɪʃ/ *n.* 鱼；鱼肉

fish："鱼肉"，不可数名词。
fish："鱼"，可数名词，复数是 fish/fishes。

e.g. I had fish for dinner. 晚餐我吃的鱼肉。

They caught several fish. 他们捉了几条鱼。

There are many fishes in the sea.

大海里有很多种鱼。

Let's go fishing this weekend.

我们这个周末去钓鱼吧。 v. go fishing 去钓鱼

鱼（可数） 鱼肉（不可数） fish

★I don't like onions, green tea or porridge.

② **or** /ɔ:(r)/ *conj.* 或，或者

【重点 & 难点】or 在此处是并列连词，用于否定句中，相当于肯定句中的 and。

★当句中有两个并列成分时，and/or 放在这两个成分中间；当句中有三个或三个以上并列成分时，and/or 只用在最后两个成分之间，前面的用逗号隔开。

e.g. I don't like chicken or beef. 我不喜欢鸡肉和牛肉。

I like apples, pears and milk. 我喜欢苹果、梨和牛奶。

That woman has no QQ and no WeChat.

=That woman has no QQ or WeChat. 那个女人没有 QQ，也没有微信。

拓展：

or
- 用于选择疑问句中，意为"还是"。
  - —Do you like pop music or rock music? 你喜欢流行音乐还是摇滚音乐？
  - —Pop music. 流行音乐。
- 用于祈使句中，意为"否则"。
  - Hurry up, or you'll be late for class. 快点，否则你将上课迟到。

★在否定句中，如果连接的两个词前都有否定词时，则一般用 and，而不用 or 连接，即 no A and no B=no A or B。

考题在线 1 —I don't like reading _____watching TV. What about you?

—I don't like reading all day, _____ I like watching TV news. [武汉]

A. and; or　　B. and; and　　C. or; and　　D. or; but

点拨：用语法分析法解题。否定句中连接两个并列的成分要用 or，表示"和"；答语中前后是转折的关系，要用 but 连接。

考题在线 2 Be careful! Don't walk on the grass, _____it will "cry". [孝感]

A. and　　B. but　　C. or　　D. so

点拨 and 和（或者不译，表顺接）；but 但是（表转折）；or 或者，否则的话（表选择或转折）；so 因此（表因果）。结合"不要在草地上走"，可知"否则小草会哭的"，可知答案。

考题在线答案 1.D　2.C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

2a What do you do or eat on your birthday? 在你的生日那天，你做什么或吃什么?

2b Read the article about food traditions and complete the chart. 读这篇关于食物传统的文章，完成图表。

Birthday Food Around the World/wɜ:(r)ld/①世界各地的生日食物

What would people like to eat on their birthday? The answer/'ɑ:nsə, 'ænsər/② would be different /'dɪfərənt/③ in different countries. 在生日那天，人们喜欢吃些什么? 在不同的国家答案会是不同的。

课文朗读2b

In many countries, people have birthday cakes/keɪks/ with candles/'kændlz/. The number of④ candles is the person's age/eɪdʒ/⑤.The birthday person must make a wish⑥ and blow/bləʊ/ out the candles.⑦ If/ɪf/ he or she blows out all the candles in one go, the wish will/wɪl/ come true.⑧ In the UK/ju:'keɪ/, people sometimes put a candy/'kændi/ in a birthday cake. The child with the candy is lucky/'lʌki/. 在许多国家，人们吃插着蜡烛的生日蛋糕。蜡烛的数量是过生日人的年龄。过生日的人必须要许个愿并吹灭蜡烛。如果他或她一口气吹灭所有的蜡烛，愿望将会实现。在英国，人们有时候把一个糖果放进生日蛋糕。吃到糖果的孩子是幸运的。

In China, it is getting⑨ popular/'pɒpjʊlə, 'pɑ:pjʊlər/⑩ to have cake on your birthday. But many people still eat very long noodles for their birthday. They never cut up⑪ the noodles because the long noodles are a symbol of long life. In some places, Chinese people also eat eggs on their birthday. They are a symbol of life and good luck. 在中国，在生日那天吃蛋糕正变得很流行。但是很多人仍然吃非常长的面条来过生日。他们从不把面条切碎，因为长面条就是长寿的象征。在一些地方，中国人在他们生日那天也吃鸡蛋。它们是生命和好运的象征。

All of these birthday foods may be different, but the ideas/aɪ'dɪəz/⑫ are the same. They bring good luck to the birthday person. 所有的这些生日食物可能不一样，但是意义却是一样的。它们会给过生日的人带来好运。

Country 国家	Food 食物	Special meaning 特别的意义
UK 英国		
China 中国		

2c Read the article again and answer the questions. 再读一遍这篇文章，回答问题。

1. How can a person make his or her birthday wish come true? 一个人怎样可以让他的或她的生日愿望成为现实?
2. What do people in the UK sometimes put in a birthday cake? 在英国，人们有时候把什么放进生日蛋糕里?
3. Why do people never cut up birthday noodles in China? 在中国人们为什么从不把生日面条切碎?
4. Why do people eat special foods on their birthday? 为什么人们在生日那天要吃特别的食物?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见304页)

阅读策略

设问开篇法(文章用设问句“What would people like to eat on their birthday?”开头,设置了悬念,并开门见山指出文章主题,它是全文中心句,与标题呼应,起到统领全篇的作用。我们在阅读中要注意此类设问,以便抓住文章主题。)

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读2b,选择正确答案

1. What's the passage mainly about? (主旨大意题)

A. Different foods around the world.

B. Birthday food around the world.

C. It mainly tells us what to do on one's birthday.

D. It mainly tells us how to make birthday food.

二、细读文章,完成下列题目

2. If a person _____, his/her birthday wish will come true. (细节理解题)

A. eats all the cake

B. puts candles in the cake

C. puts a candy in a birthday cake

D. blows out all the candles in one go

3. In the UK, people sometimes put _____ in a birthday cake. (细节理解题)

A. a coin B. a candy

C. an egg D. an apple

4. Why do people in China eat eggs on their birthday? (细节理解题)

A. Because they are cheap.

B. Because they like to eat them.

C. Because they are a symbol of long life.

D. Because they are a symbol of life and good luck.

5. Why do people eat special foods on their birthday? (推理判断题)

A. Because they bring good luck to them.

B. Because they have different ideas.

C. Because they are very expensive.

D. Because they are delicious.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★world像sun(太阳),moon(月亮)一样,为独一无二的事物,其前通常要加定冠词the或形容性物主代词,the world/sun/moon。

★Birthday Food Around the World

① **around the world** 世界各地 相当于all over the world,作后置定语。

e.g. We have friends around the world.

我们有世界各地的朋友。

At that time, China was the most powerful country in the world.

在那时,中国是世界上最强大的国家。 在世界上

考题在线1 Chinese learning is popular with people all over _____ world. [海南]

A. a B. / C. the

★The answer would be different in different countries.

② **answer** /ˈɑːnsə/ *n.* 答案 *v.* 回答

e.g. I don't know the answer to this question. 我不知道这个问题的答案。 ……的答案

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The boy can't answer this question. 那个男孩回答不出来这个问题。

He answered with a smile. 他微笑着回答。

Please answer the telephone. 请接电话。

★ answer 作动词
- 及物动词，"回答，答复"，反义词为 ask。
- 不及物动词，"回答"。

考题在线 2 —Someone called（打电话）you just now.

—I know. But I was busy at that moment. When I called back, there was no _____. [黄冈]

A. voice B. sound C. answer D. result

点拨：用题眼法解题。voice 嗓音；sound 声音；answer 回答；答复；result 结果。由第一个人所说的 called you 及第二个人所说的 called back 可知，空格处内容和打电话相关，指没有人接电话。

③ **different** /ˈdɪfərənt/ *adj.* 不同的 反义词 same "相同的"

反义短语
- be different from 与……不同
- the same as 与……相同

e.g.We each have different ideas. 我们每个人都有不同的想法。

拓展：① be different from 与……不同，反义短语是 the same as 与……相同。

e.g.My eating habits are different from yours. 我的饮食习惯与你的不同。

② different 的副词形式是 differently；名词形式是 difference，意为"不同；差异"。

e.g.He does things differently. 他做事很不同。

There are many differences between Chinese culture and the Western culture. 中国文化和西方文化之间有很多不同。

考题在线 3 Many teenagers don't like to talk with their parents. But I am _____ them. I love to share my joy and sorrow with my parents. [烟台]

A. the same as B. different from

C. interested in D. angry with

★The number of candles is the person's age.

④ **the number of...** ……的数量

【易错点】辨析：the number of 与 a number of

the number of……的数量	后跟可数名词复数，作主语时，谓语动词用单数。	The number of the students in our class is 70. 我们班的学生人数是 70。
a number of 许多……	后跟可数名词复数，作主语时，谓语动词用复数。	A number of students are playing basketball. 许多学生正在打篮球。

融黑板 the... 单 a... 复，牢记！

考题在线 4 In our city there _____ a number of cars and the number of them _____ growing larger and larger. [巴中]

A. are; is B. have; is C. is; are

点拨：用语法分析法解题。a number of 修饰名词复数，作主语时谓语动词用复数；the number of 修饰名词复数，作主语时谓语动词用单数。句意：我们城市有许多的小汽车，而且它们的数量越来越多。

⑤ **age** /eɪdʒ/ *n.* 年龄

e.g.What's your age?=How old are you？你多大了？

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

What's sb's age? =How old is sb.?

at the age of "在……岁时"，可转换为 when 引导的时间状语从句。

She could play the piano at the age of 4.

=She could play the piano when she was 4 years old.

她在 4 岁时就会弹钢琴了。

核心素养之文化意识

对比中外文化差异，学习跨文化交际

在我国，人们对于年龄的敏感度（sensitivity）较英美等西方国家要低很多。甚至我国有些地区的人们还颇爱以"老"相称，例如"老张"、"老李"。描述某人是个"五六十岁的老人"，我们不会觉得有什么不妥。

在西方，人们认为年龄是一个秘密（secret），尤其是成年妇女，不希望他人了解自己的真实年龄。谈到"老"时，也不仅仅只用 old, aged 等形容词。人们会用"She's not so young. He's not young any more."来表示。

素养行动：不随便询问别人的年龄，尊重别人（respect others）。

素养行动结果：了解中外文化差异，和别人说话时要讲究得体。

★The birthday person must make a wish and blow out the candles.

⑥ make a wish 许愿

敲黑板 代词作宾语放在两个词的中间，谨记！

e.g.I want to make a wish tonight. 今晚我想许个愿。

My wish is to become a doctor. 我的愿望是成为一名医生。

Give my best wishes to your parents. 把我最美好的祝愿送给你的父母。

make a wish 意为"许愿"。

wish 用作可数名词，意为"心愿；祝愿"。

拓展：

wish *v.* 希望

- wish to do sth. 希望做某事 — I wish to have a good job. 我希望有一份好工作。
- wish+从句 希望…… — I wish I were taller. 我要是个子高一些就好了。
- wish sb./sth. to do sth. 希望某人/某物做某事 — He wished his son to be an artist. 他希望他的儿子成为一名艺术家。
- wish sb. sth. 祝某人…… — I wish her a happy birthday. 我祝她生日快乐。

速记小筏：巧记动副短语及代词位置

动副短语要留心，代词只能放中心。

⑦ blow out the candles 吹灭蜡烛

e.g. The candle is still burning, please blow it out.

蜡烛还在燃烧着，请把它吹灭。

核心素养之文化意识

了解中外节日文化，培养跨文化交际素养

中国人过生日是十分讲究的。在一些习俗（custom）中，中国人过生日时要吃面条（noodles）和鸡蛋。近些年来，生日蛋糕也成为过生日时必不可少的东西，通常是在吃完饭后寿星许愿（make a wish）吹蜡烛，切蛋糕，大家齐唱生日快乐歌并分享蛋糕（share cakes）。

在多数说英语的国家，一般在生日派对（birthday party）上有人捧出点燃生日蜡烛的生日蛋糕时，大家齐声歌唱生日快乐歌（一般要关灯，保持房间黑暗）。生日蛋糕一般是一种装饰得非常漂亮的蛋糕，而且在端上来的时候上面要插上与寿星年龄一样多的蜡烛。寿星要默默地许个愿望，然后吹灭蜡烛。

素养行动：记住家人和朋友的生日，用心为他们准备一份生日礼物（a birthday gift）吧！

素养行动结果：感恩（be grateful to）父母，感恩亲人和朋友。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★If he or she blows out all the candles in one go, the wish will come true.

敲黑板 重点兼难点，结合考题认真领会！

速记小筏：巧记if条件句：if条件句不一般，几个要点记心间：条件句，放在前，逗号要放句中间；条件句，表可能，主句多用将来时。

⑧ 句法分析［重点 & 难点］

本句为含有 if 引导的条件状语从句的主从复合句，主句用一般将来时，if引导的条件状语从句用一般现在时表示将来，即“主将从现”。

e.g. If it rains tomorrow, we'll stay at home.

如果明天下雨，我们将呆在家里。

考题在线 5 You can surf the Internet _____ you want to know about the 2020 World Middle School Games. ［福建 A］

A. until　　B. after　　C. if

点拨:用语境判定法解题。until“直到……为止”；after“在……之后”；if“如果；是否”。分析语境可知“你想了解2020年世界中学运动会”与“你可以上网搜索”是条件关系，故用 if 来引导条件状语从句。

考题在线 6 If I _____ a two-week holiday next year, I will take part in a short study tour to Beijing University. ［黄石］

A. took　　B. take　　C. will take　　D. are taking

点拨:用语法分析法解题。本句是 if 引导的条件状语从句，主句是一般将来时，从句应用一般现在时。句意：如果我明年休两周的假，我将参加北京大学的短期学习。



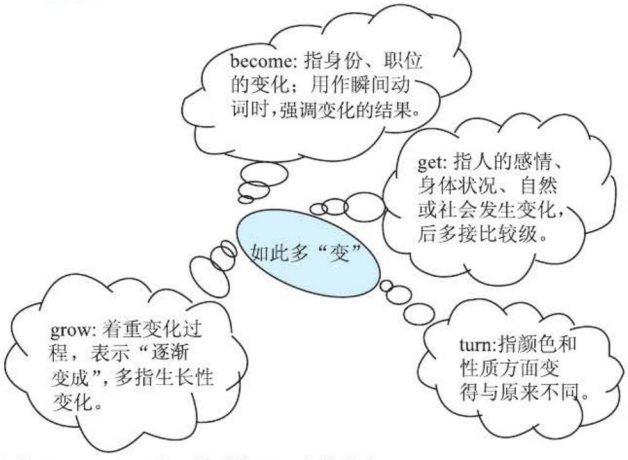
★In China, it is getting popular to...

⑨ get /get/ *v.* 变得

【重点】get 此处用作系动词，意为“变得”，多用于表示感情、气候和环境的变化，后接形容词原级或比较级。

e.g. We get wiser as we grow up. 随着我们的成长，我们变得更明智了。

【难点】辨析: become, get, turn 与 grow



类似的动词还有：become, grow, turn, look, sound, smell, taste, feel 等。

e.g. He became an artist. 他成为了一名艺术家。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The weather gets colder, and the day gets shorter. 天气变得更冷了，白天变得更短了。

His face turned red. 他的脸变红了。

As time went on, he grew more and more impatient.

随着时间长了，他变得越来越没有耐心。

popular 在句中可作表语或定语。get popular 意为“受欢迎，流行”。

考题在线 7 A kind of shared bike which is called Bluegogo is _____ more and more popular in Chengdu. [成都改编]

A. getting B. growing C. turning

点拨:用辨析法解题。句意：一种名叫“小蓝单车”的共享自行车在成都正变得越来越受欢迎。get 指人的感情、身体状况、自然或社会发生变化，后多接比较级；grow 多指生长性变化；turn 指在颜色和性质方面的变化。结合句意可知答案。

be popular with 受……欢迎

⑩ **popular** /ˈpɒpjʊlə/ *adj.* 受欢迎的；普遍的

e.g.This kind of sweater is very popular. 这种毛衣非常流行。

She is a popular teacher in our school. 她是我们学校一位受欢迎的老师。

Popular songs are popular with young people. 流行歌受年轻人的欢迎。

考题在线 8 TFBOYS has a lot of fans. It _____ thousands of young people. [福建]

A. is popular with B. is satisfied with C. is strict with

★They never cut up the noodles...

⑪ **cut up** 切碎

★与 cut 相关的短语
- cut down 砍倒，削减
- cut off 切掉
- cut...into 把……切成
- cut in 插嘴

e.g.—Why do you cut the apple up（cut up the apple）? 你为什么把苹果切碎了?

—I cut it up because I want to make apple salad. 我切碎它是因为我想做苹果沙拉。

代词作宾语，放在两词之间。

考题在线 9 Here is a banana. Please _____. We'll make a banana milkshake. [绥化]

A. cut them up B. cut up it C. cut it up

点拨:用语法分析法解题。cut up 是“动词 + 副词”结构，当宾语是代词时，要放在 cut 和 up 中间；a banana 要用 it 代替。

★All of these birthday foods may be different, but the ideas are the same.

⑫ **idea** /aɪˈdɪə/ *n.* 想法；主意

敲黑板 idea 以元音音素开头，用 an 修饰。

e.g.I have a good idea. 我有一个好主意。

I have an idea that he will come today.

我有一个想法，他今天会来的。

—Let's go out for a walk. 让我们出去散散步吧。

—That's a good idea！ 那是个好主意！

①当别人提出一个好的建议和想法时，我们通常用 That's a good idea！ 或 Good idea！来表示同意。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Mary has no idea about how to learn Chinese well.=Mary doesn't know how to learn Chinese well. 玛丽不知该如何学好汉语。

② I have no idea. 意为"我不知道"。相当于"I don't know."。

考题在线 10 Let's go to the National Mining Park（国家矿山公园）this weekend. I've never been there. [黄石]

—_____! I'd like to go there again.

A. Good job　B. Well done　C. Good idea　D. Not at all

点拨:用交际法解题。Let's... 表示提建议，同意建议的内容时常用"Good idea!"回答。

考题在线答案 1.C 2.C 3.B 4.A 5.C 6.B 7.A 8.A 9.C 10.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见304页)

一、根据句意及所给提示完成句子

1. There are many d_____ countries in the world.
2. —There is a big cake with some c_____.
   —Yes, it's for Jim's birthday.
3. Class begins! Listen carefully and a_____ my questions. [新疆]
4. How_____（幸运的）they are to have such a good teacher! [苏州]
5. The _____（糖果）are from his grandfather.

二、单项选择

6. —Shall we make a cake for Tina as a birthday gift?
   —_____. It will give her a big surprise. [长春]

   A. Good idea　B. It's a pity
   C. You're welcome　D. Never mind

7. To feed her little son, Mrs. Smith has to _____ the vegetables and meat. [本溪]

   A. make up　B. put up
   C. set up　D. cut up

8. —I like country music. It's really exciting. What about you?
   —I prefer electronic music(更喜欢电子音乐). It's becoming more and more _____. [深圳改编]

   A. popular　B. difficult
   C. boring　D. delicious

9. We _____ for a picnic if it _____ rain this Sunday. [铜仁]

   A.go; doesn't　B.will go; won't
   C.will go; doesn't　D.go; won't

10. —What _____ the number of the students in your school?
    —About two thousand. A number of them _____ from the countryside. [泰安]

    A.is; are　B.is; is
    C.are; is　D.are; are

三、根据汉语提示完成句子

11. He wants to travel _____ _____ _____（世界各地）in the future.
12. He could play the piano _____ _____ _____ _____（在……岁时）5.
13. The birthday person can _____ _____ _____（许一个愿）and _____ _____（吹灭）the candles.
14. It _____ _____ _____（受欢迎）to have street dance（街舞）.
15. 制作香蕉奶昔的第二个步骤是将香蕉切碎。
    The second step of making a banana milkshake is_____ _____the bananas. [烟台]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Fill in the blanks in the ad with the words in the box. 用方框中的单词填写广告中的空白处。

order 点菜　bowl 碗　kinds 种类　strawberry 草莓　specials 特色菜

The Ice-cream and Pancake House 冰淇淋和烙饼屋

Would you like to eat ice-cream or pancakes?At our restaurant, we have some great_____. We have different _____ of fruit ice-cream, like _____, banana or orange. Would you like a big _____ for four yuan or a small one for just two yuan? You can also _____ our delicious pancakes. They're only five yuan. 你想吃冰淇淋还是烙饼？在我们饭店里，我们有一些很棒的_____。我们有不同_____的水果冰淇淋，像_____、香蕉或者橙子。你想要大的还是小的？大的售 4 元，小的仅售 2 元。你也可以_____我们的美味的烙饼。它们仅售 5 元。

3b Imagine you have a restaurant. Write the foods and their prices. 假设你有一个饭店，写出食物和它们的价格。

3c Write an ad for your restaurant. These sentence structures may help you. 为你的饭店写一则广告。这些句子结构可能帮到你。

Would you like...? 你想要……？

We have...for... 我们有……

...is very good/delicious.……非常好吃 / 美味。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Put the words you learned in different groups. 把你学过的词填到不同的组里。

Food 食物			Drink 饮料	Other 其他
Meat 肉	Vegetable 蔬菜	Fruit 水果		
				cake 蛋糕

2 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the *there be* structure. 用 *there be* 结构的正确形式完成句子。

1.Customer: Excuse me, _____ _____a fly（苍蝇）in my porridge. 劳驾，在我的粥里_____一只苍蝇。

Waiter:Don't worry（别急）, sir.That spider（蜘蛛）on your bread will soon get him. 先生，别急。你面包上的那只蜘蛛会很快捉住它的。

2.Customer: _____ _____two flies in my fish soup. 在我的鱼汤里_____两只苍蝇。

Waiter: I know.But we are short of fish. 我知道。但是我们鱼肉不够了。

3.Customer: We ordered mutton noodles, but _____ _____ any mutton in the noodles. 我们点了羊肉面，但是在面条里_____任何羊肉。

Waiter: Put on your glasses and you can see the mutton. 戴上你的眼镜，你就会看到羊肉了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3 Write a conversation with the help of the clues. 根据提示，写一组对话。

In a restaurant: 在一家饭店：

Waiter: Ask for the order 服务员：要求顾客点菜

Customer: Ask about what is in the food 顾客：询问食物中的东西

Waiter: Ask for the size of the order 服务员：询问所点的食物的大小份

Customer: Thank the waiter 顾客：感谢服务员

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

单元话题

假如你是“欣欣饺子馆”（Xinxin Dumpling House）的老板，请根据所给信息为你的饺子馆写一则英文广告。90词左右。

1. 饺子品种齐全，个大味美；
2. 现推出两种特价饺子：鸡蛋蔬菜饺子每10个3元；牛肉洋葱饺子每10个5元；
3. 欢迎顾客光临本店或电话订购。地址：欣欣路20号。电话：386-9388。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 审题要全面，构思要精准；
2. 注意时态和主谓一致；
3. 注意可数名词复数的变化；
4. 要掌握好表达方式，恰当运用关联词。

写作技巧（学会方法，巧得高分）

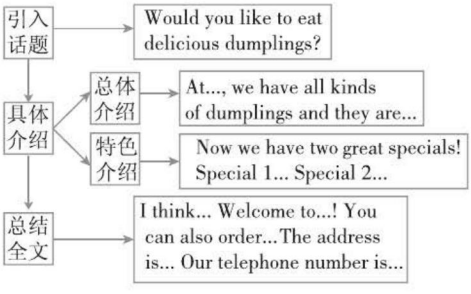
“总—分—总法”介绍餐馆

第一步：用一个主题句，或陈述句或问句进行概括，总领全篇。

第二步：详细介绍餐馆的经营内容及特色。

第三步：用一句话总括全篇，欢迎大家光临，强力推出自己的餐馆。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	restaurant, delicious, specials, vegetables, order, address, telephone
短语	at our restaurant, all kinds of, great specials, on the phone
句子	① Would you like... ② We have all kinds of... ③ Now we have... Special 1... ④ Welcome to... ⑤ You can also order...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Xinxin Dumpling House

Would you like to eat delicious dumplings? ①

At our restaurant, we have all kinds of dumplings and they are all large and delicious. Now we have two great specials! Special 1 has eggs and vegetables, and is just 3 yuan for 10 ②. Special 2 is only 5 yuan for 10, and has beef and onions.

I think you will love our dumplings. Welcome to our restaurant! You can also order our delicious dumplings on the phone! ③ The address is No. 20 Xinxin Road. Our telephone number is 386-9388.

名师点评：本文运用了“总—分—总法”介绍餐馆。结构严谨、语言流畅、信息全面、叙述有条理。

第一：一个问句总领全篇，激发人们的味蕾；

第二：对餐馆的经营内容及特色做了详细介绍；

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

第三：一句话给大家享用美食的信心并介绍两种享用方式—光临和电话订购。添彩点：①恰当运用了 Would you like... ? 句型；②巧妙地运用了价格的表达。③用 You can also... 介绍了可以享用到美味的另一种方式。

及测听试力卷

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见304页)

从方框中选择适当的词完成短文

think, shops, take, because, many, other, a lot, popular, find, and

In England, people like eating fish and chips very much. They usually buy it in fish and chip _____[1]. They put it in paper bags, and _____[2] it home, or to their workplace. But in _____[3] countries, people like American fast food（快餐）_____[4]. In many cities like Moscow, Paris _____[5] even big cities in China, you can _____[6] people eating hamburgers. Chinese food is also very _____[7] in the world. In _____[8] big cities you can find Chinese restaurants. People enjoy Chinese food _____[9] it has different tastes and it is usually very delicious（可口的）. Don't you _____[10] so?

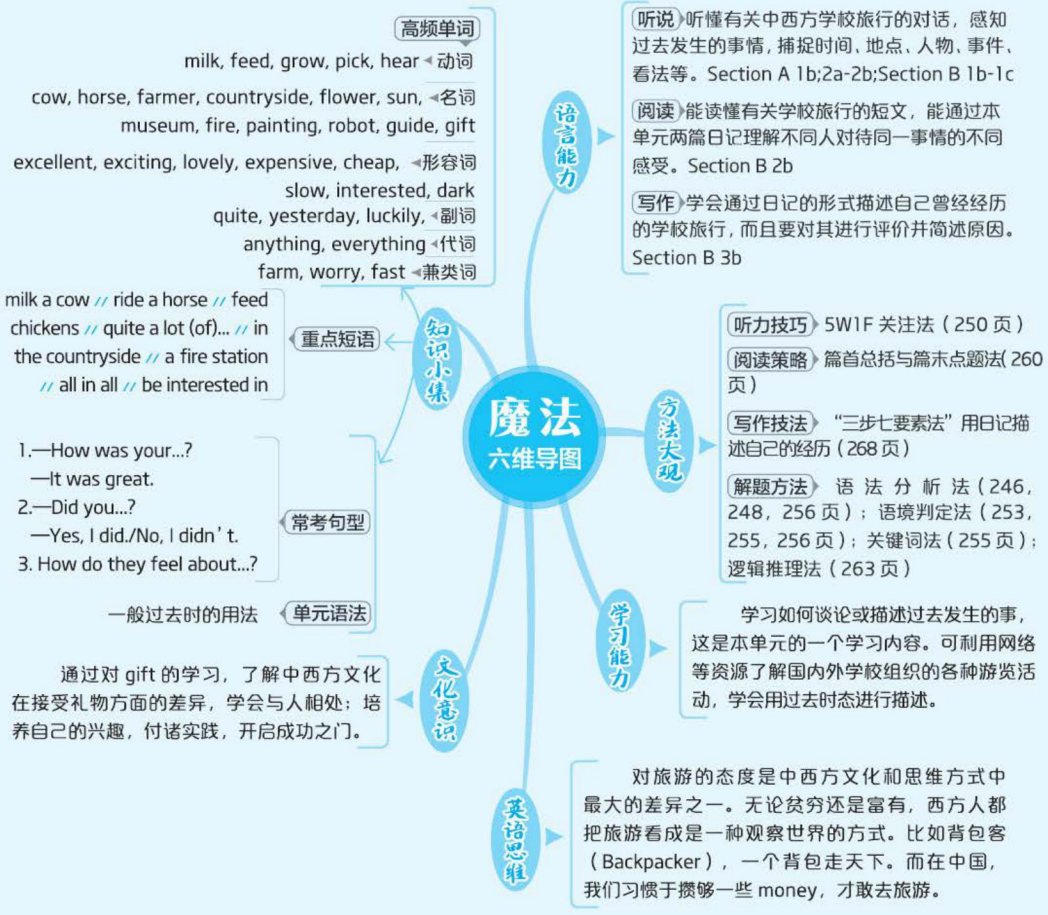
The world makes way for the man who knows where he is going.
如果你明确自己的方向，世界也会为你让路。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 11 How was your school trip?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1.feed *v.* 喂养；饲养→ fed（过去式）→ feeding（现在分词）→ feed on ... 以……为食

2.quite *adv.* 相当；完全→ quiet（形近词，安静的）→ very（同义词）

3.anything *pron.*（常用于否定句或疑问句）任何东西；任何事物→ anything interesting 有趣的事情→ something（常用于肯定句）

4.grow *v.* 种植；生长；发育→ grew（过去式）→ grow up 成长；长大

5.pick *v.* 采；摘→ pick up 拾起；捡起；（为某人）收拾

6.countryside *n.* 乡村；农村→ village（近义词）

7.milk *v.* 挤奶

8.cow *n.* 奶牛

9.farmer *n.* 农民；农场主

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

10.farm *n.* 农场 *v.* 务农；种田

11. horse *n.* 马

12.excellent *adj.* 极好的；优秀的→wonderful(近义词)→be excellent in... 在……方面极好

‖必背短语

13.milk a cow 给奶牛挤奶

14.in the countryside 在乡下；在农村→in town 在城镇→in the city 在城市

15. ride a horse 骑马

Ride the high horse. 趾高气昂。

16. feed chickens 喂鸡

17. quite a lot (of...) 许多

‖必背句子

18.—Did you see any cows? 你看到奶牛了吗?

—Yes, I did. I saw **quite a lot.**

是的，我看到了。我看到了许多(奶牛)。

19.—How was your trip last week?

你上周的旅行怎么样?

—It was excellent. 棒极了。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3b)

‖必背单词

1.worry *v.& n.* 担心；担忧→worries(第三人称单数)→worried(过去式)→worry about 为……担心；为……忧虑

2.luckily *adv.* 幸运地；好运地→luck(名词)→lucky(形容词)→unluckily(反义词,不幸运地)

3.yesterday *adv.* 昨天→today 今天→tomorrow 明天

4.flower *n.* 花→grass (对应词)草

5.sun *n.* 太阳→sunny(形容词)→in the sun 在阳光下

‖必背句子 & 语法

6. —Did you go to the zoo? 你去动物园了吗?

—No, I didn't. I went to a farm.

不，我没有。我去了农场。

7. —Were the strawberries good?

草莓好吃吗?

—Yes, they were./No, they weren't.

是的，它们好吃。/不，它们不好吃。

8.We **had so much fun!**

我们玩得非常愉快!

Period 3 Section B (1a–1d)

‖必背单词

1.painting *n.* 油画；绘画→drawing(近义词)→paint *v.* 绘画→painter *n.* 画家

2. fire *n.* 火；火灾→fire station 消防站→make a fire 生火

3. museum *n.* 博物馆→art/history museum 美术/历史博物馆

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

‖必背短语

1. exciting *adj.* 使人兴奋的；令人激动的→excited *adj.* 兴奋的

2.expensive *adj.* 昂贵的→cheap(反义词)→dear(同义词)

3.cheap *adj.* 便宜的→expensive(反义词)

4.slow *adj.* 缓慢的；迟缓的→slowly(副词)→fast(反义词)

5.gift *n.* 礼物；赠品→present(同义词)

6.interested *adj.* 感兴趣的→interest *n.* 兴趣→interesting *adj.* 有趣的

7.hear *v.* 听到；听见→heard(过去式)→listen(近义词)→hear of/about 听说→hear from sb. 收到某人的来信

8. lovely *adj.* 可爱的→cute(近义词)

9. fast *adv.&adj.* 快地(的)

10. robot *n.* 机器人

11.guide *n.* 导游；向导

12.everything *pron.* 所有事物；一切→Everything has a beginning. 凡事皆有起源。

13.dark *adj.* 黑暗的；昏暗的→bright(反义词)

‖必背短语

14.all in all 总的说来

15.be interested in 对……感兴趣

‖必背句子

16. Then the guide **taught us how to make a model robot.** 然后导游教我们如何制作机器人模型。

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

‖必背句子

The air was **so clean**, and I saw **a lot of flowers.**

空气是如此清新，并且我看到了许多花。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）



I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about past events
语言目标：谈论过去的事情

1a Match the phrases with the pictures. 将短语和图片相匹配。

1.went for a walk ____e____去散步 ____e____

2.milked/mɪlkt/① a cow/kaʊ/ _____挤牛奶 _____

3.rode a horse/hɔ:(r)s/ _____骑马 _____

4.fed/fed/② chickens _____喂鸡 _____

5.talked with a farmer/'fɑ:(r)mə(r)/ _____和一个农场主交谈_____

6.took some photos _____拍了一些照片_____

1b Listen and circle the three things Carol did on her school trip in 1a. 听录音并在 1a 中圈出卡萝尔在她的学校旅行中做的三件事。

—Did you see any cows? 你看到奶牛了吗?
—Yes, I did.I saw quite/kwaɪt/ a lot③. 是的，我看到了。我看到了许多（奶牛）。
—Did you ride a horse? 你骑马了吗?
—No, I didn't. But I milked a cow. 没有，我没骑。但是我挤牛奶了。



1c Ask and answer questions about Carol's/kærəlz/ school trip. 就卡萝尔的学校旅行提问并回答。

A:Did Carol take any photos? 卡萝尔拍照片了吗?

B:Yes, she did. 是的，她拍了。

2a Listen and check(√)the questions you hear. 听录音并在你听到的问题前打（√）。



_____What did the farmer say?_____农场主说了什么?

_____What did you see?_____你看到了什么?

_____Did you learn anything/'enɪθɪŋ/④?_____你学到了什么吗?

_____Did you ask him any questions?_____你问他任何问题了吗?

_____Did you grow/grəʊ/⑤ any apples?_____你们种植苹果了吗?

_____Do they grow apples?_____他们种植苹果吗?

_____Did you eat them?_____你吃它们了吗?

_____Were they good?_____它们好吃吗?

2b Listen again. Circle *T* for true or *F* for false. 再听一遍录音。正确的圈 T，错误的圈 F。

1.The farmer showed Carol around⑥ the farm/fɑ:(r)m/. 农场主领着卡萝尔参观了农场。 T F

2.Carol learned a lot about farming. 卡萝尔学到了很多关于耕种的知识。 T F

3.The farmers grow strawberries from December to June. 农场主们从十二月到六月种草莓。 T F

4.The farmers don't grow apples. 农场主们不种植苹果。 T F

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

5.Carol picked/pɪkt/⑦ some strawberries and took them home. 卡萝尔摘了一些草莓并把它们带回了家。 T F

2c Ask and answer questions about Carol's visit to the farm. 就卡萝尔对农场的参观提问并回答问题。

A:What did Carol do? 卡萝尔做了什么?

B:She picked some strawberries. 她摘了一些草莓。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2d

Peter: Hi, Eric. How was your trip last week?⑧嗨，埃里克。你上周的旅行怎么样?

Eric: It was excellent/'eksələnt/⑨. I visited my grandparents in the countryside/'kʌntrisaɪd/. 棒极了。我看望了住在乡下的祖父母。

Peter: Oh, nice. What did you do? 噢，好极了。你做什么了?

Eric:I went fishing every day.And I fed the chickens with my grandpa.It was so much fun. 我每天去钓鱼。还和我的祖父喂鸡。那真是蛮好玩的。

Peter: Sounds good.How was the weather there? 听上去很好。那儿的天气怎么样?

Eric: It was great, and the air was so clean.I watched the stars at night.They were so beautiful. 好极了，空气很清新。在晚上我观看星星。它们很漂亮。

Peter: Lucky you. 你真幸运。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用



v. 挤奶



n. 牛奶

及物动词"挤……的奶"
不及物动词"挤奶"
名词，不可数

★milked a cow

① **milk**/mɪlk/ *v.* **挤奶**

e.g.I milk the cow to have some milk to drink.
我挤些牛奶来喝。

拓展：和"牛"有关的英语词汇：milk（牛奶） beef（牛肉）
cow（母牛；奶牛） ox（公牛） veal（小牛肉）

考题在线 1 The government of Laiwu provides a bag of _____（牛奶）for each pupil every day. [莱芜]

★fed chickens

② **feed** /fi:d/ *v.* **喂养；饲养**

e.g. My grandma feeds chickens every day. 我奶奶每天都喂鸡。

考题在线 2 Don't give Eddie anything to eat. I _____（喂，喂养）him just now. [镇江]

点拨：用语法分析法解题。feed 意为"饲养；喂养"，由 just now"刚才"可知用其过去式 fed。

feed 用作及物动词，其后常接表示动物的名词作宾语。feed 的过去式为 fed。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展：feed 常用搭配



★I saw quite a lot.

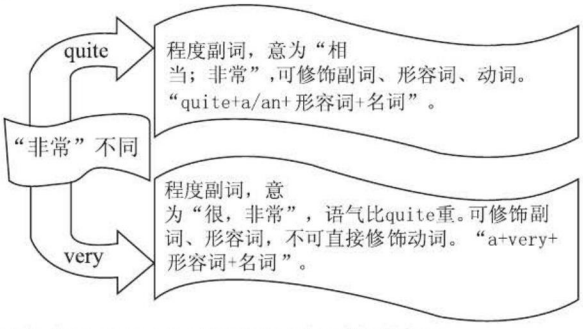
③ **quite a lot 许多**

e.g. Everyone likes the information about the Belt and Road quite a lot.

每个人都非常喜欢关于“一带一路”的这条消息。

quite a lot 意为“相当多”，修饰动词。

辨析：quite 与 very



e.g. It's quite/very necessary to stop school bullying.

阻止校园欺凌很有必要。

My brother thinks Wang Feng sings quite/very well.

我哥哥认为汪峰唱得非常好。

She quite likes swimming. 她非常喜欢游泳。

Tom is a very good boy.

=Tom is quite a good boy.

敲黑板 注意两者的区别!

汤姆是个很好的男孩。

★与 quite 形近的词：quiet 安静的

一语辨异：

The quiet girl quits quite a good job.

这个安静的女孩辞掉了一份相当好的工作。

考题在线 3 —Why do you want him to join us?

—Because he is _____.

A. good a quite player　　B. quite a good player

C. a quite good player　　D. quite good a player

点拨：本题考查 quite 的用法。quite 与形容词连用修饰单数可数名词时，放在不定冠词之前。quite a good player 意为“一位相当好的运动员”。

★Did you learn anything?

④ **anything**/ˈenɪθɪŋ/ *pron.*（**常用于否定句或疑问句**）**任何东西；任何事物**

e.g. Do you know anything about Expo 2019,Beijing?

你知道有关 2019 北京世园会的任何情况吗?

We can't believe anything he says.

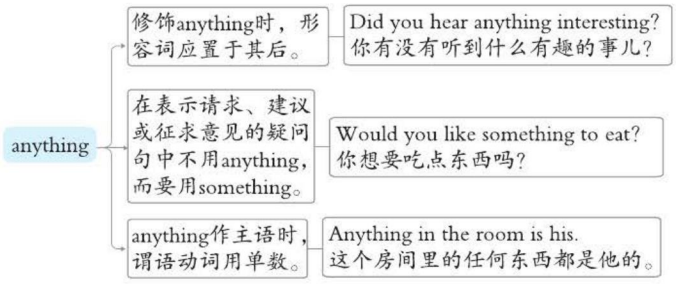
我们无法相信他说的任何事。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

anything 常用于否定句或疑问句中，用来代替 something。

anything 表示“随便哪个东西；随便什么事物”时，一般用于肯定句。

拓展：

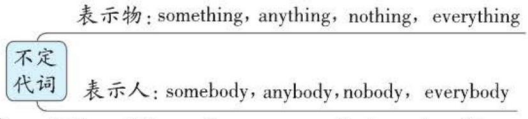


e.g.I want something to drink and anything is OK.

我想要喝点东西，什么都行。

速记小筏：歌诀记复合不定代词的用法：复合代词不一般，修饰成分在后边；如若用来作主语，谓语动词用单三。

拓展：不定代词大集合：



考题在线 4 — Helen, did you do _____ last weekend?

—Yes, I visited my grandparents in the countryside. [湘西]

A. anything special B. something special C. special anything

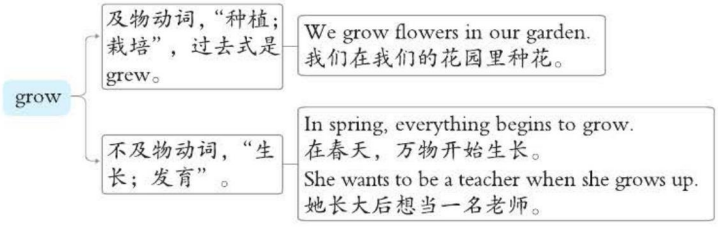
点拨：用语法分析法解题。something 用于肯定句或表示请求、建议或征求意见的疑问句中；anything 用于疑问句或否定句中。本题问句是一般疑问句，不表示请求、建议或征求意见。修饰不定代词的形容词要位于不定代词之后。

考题在线 5 The story *Yu Gong Moves a Mountain* shows us that a_____ is possible if you work hard. [凉山]

点拨：根据语境及首字母提示可知“如果你努力，任何事情皆有可能”。

★Did you grow any apples?

⑤ **grow**/grəʊ/ *v.* **种植；生长；发育**



grow 可作连系动词，有“逐渐变得”的含义，强调变化过程。

e.g. It's growing dark. 天渐渐（变）黑了。

What do you want to be when you grow up? 你长大后想当什么？

长大；成长

★The farmer showed Carol around the farm.

⑥ **show...around** 带……参观

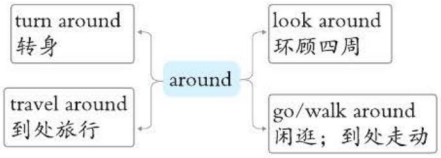
show sb. around... 意为“带某人参观……”。

e.g. Let me show you around the city. 让我带你参观这座城市。

拓展：①与 show 有关的短语：show up 露面；出现 show off 炫耀

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

②与 around 有关的动词短语



★Carol picked some strawberries and took them home.

⑦ **pick** /pɪk/ *v.* 采；摘 → 用作及物动词

e.g. Don't pick flowers in the garden. 不要摘花园里的花。

Pick up a number from one to five. 从一至五中挑选一个数字。

Mr. Smith picked up his hat and went out.

史密斯先生拿起帽子，走了出去。

Pick me up at the hotel. 到旅馆来接我。

考题在线 6 —Look! What's on the ground?

—Oh, it's my sweater. Please_____. [安顺]

A. pick it up　　B. put it on　　C. give it out　　D. take it off

★ pick up
- 挑选
- 捡起；拿起
- 搭载；接某人

★How was your trip last week?

⑧ **句法分析**

本句是一般过去时的特殊疑问句，其结构为"How+was/were+ 主语 + 其他？"意为"……怎么样？"是询问某事具体情况的常用语。常用"It was great！（太棒了！）/It was OK.（还可以。）/It wasn't good.（不好。）/It was not bad.（还不错。）"等来回答。

e.g. —How was your holiday this year? 你今年的假期怎么样?

—Really good. 相当好。

★It was excellent.

⑨ **excellent** /'eksələnt/ *adj.* 极好的；优秀的

e.g. The food is excellent here. 这里的食物很好。

Ma Long is an excellent ping-pong player.

马龙是一名优秀的乒乓球运动员。

He is excellent in math. 他数学非常好。

考题在线 7 Mr. Black's speech is _____. It helps us have a better understanding of life. 【导学号：8811889】[海南改编]

A. shy　　B. terrible　　C. excellent

- excellent 相当于 very good，意为"优秀的；极好的"，通常用于肯定句中，不用于否定句或疑问句中。
- be excellent in... 表示"在……方面极好"。

考题在线答案 1.milk　2.fed　3.B　4.A　5.anything　6.A　7.C

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见304页)

听力技巧

5W1F关注法 在做听力题时，时常会遇到一些有关旅游话题的对话或语篇。此时，我们可用5W1F法进行题目的预测，即关注题目中所出现的when（时间），where（地点），who（人物），what（事件），why（原因）及feelings（感受），这样就可以有的放矢地去听了。

课文听力1b

听力过程

一、听1b，完成下面的短文

Carol had a school trip yesterday. It was great. Carol went to a 1._____ and took some photos. She saw quite a few cows and 2._____. She saw some chickens but she didn't feed them. She didn't 3._____, either. She and her friends went for a walk around the farm and talked with a farmer.

二、听2a，选择正确答案

课文听力2a

4. What did Carol learn from the farmer?

A. About farming.

B. About riding a bike.

C. About growing rice.

5. What did Carol take home?

A. Some apples.

B. Some strawberries.

C. Some grapes.

6. When do the farmers pick the apples?

A. From December to June.

B. Around July.

C. Around September.

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见305页)

一、根据句意及提示补全句子

1. The farmer has more than 500_____（马）on his farm.

2. Would you like to _____（挤奶）cows with your parents?

3. The farmer _____（喂）his chickens about an hour ago.

4. I often go to visit my grandparents in the c_____ with my parents.

5. You can see many animals and plants on the f_____.

二、单项选择

6. Can you help me _____ the pen? It's under your chair. [河北]

A. ask for　　B. look for

C. pick up　　D. put up

7. —Have you visited Shanghai Disneyland?

—Yes. It was wonderful! I took _____ a few photos there. [江苏]

A. very　　B. quite

C. really　　D. hard

8. If something is wrong, fix it if you can. Do not worry. Worry never fixes _____. [无锡]

A. something　　B. everything

C. anything　　D. nothing

9. Peter will _____ you _____ the building and you can meet everyone. [天津]

A. lend; to

B. show; around

C. compare; with

D. brush; off

10. —How was your trip?

—_____. [青海]

A. It was snowy

B. It was great

C. I was tired

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

三、用方框中所给单词的适当形式填空

excellent	grow	cow	pick	farm

11. The milk you drink every day is from _____.
12. His English teacher likes him very much because he is an _____ student.
13. The farmers are talking about _____ together.
14. Don't _____ the flowers in the park.
15. Last year his father _____ some vegetables in their garden.

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3b）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

How was your school trip? 你的学校旅行怎么样?	It was great! 很好！
Did you go to the zoo? 你去动物园了吗?	No, I didn't. I went to a farm. 不，我没去。我去了农场。
Did you see any cows? 你看到奶牛了吗?	Yes, I did. I saw quite a lot. 是的，我看到了。我看到了许多（奶牛）。
Did Carol ride a horse? 卡萝尔骑马了吗?	No, she didn't. But she milked a cow. 不，她没骑。但是她挤牛奶了。
Were the strawberries good? 草莓好吃吗?	Yes, they were./No, they weren't. 是的，它们好吃。/不，它们不好吃。

Regular verbs 规则动词	Irregular verbs 不规则动词
play → played	do → did
visit → visited	is → was
climb → climbed	are → were
study → studied	have → had
worry → worried	eat → ate
stop → stopped	buy → bought

3a Complete Jim's letter on the left and Bill's reply on the right. 完成左边吉姆的信和右边比尔的回信。

Dear Bill, 亲爱的比尔：

How_____（is）your school trip yesterday/ˈjestə(r)deɪ/?_____（Do）you_____（go）to the zoo?_____（Do）you take any photos?_____（Do）you_____（see）any interesting animals? I _____（go）to the zoo last year and it_____（is）a lot of fun. 昨天你们的学校旅行_____怎么样？你们_____动物园了吗？你们照相了吗？你们_____任何有趣的动物了吗？我去年_____动

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

物园，非常有趣。

Jim 吉姆

Dear Jim, 亲爱的吉姆：

My school trip____ (is) great! We____ (have) so much fun ① ! We____ (go) to Green Park.We ____ (climb) the mountains there and____ (see) a lot of flowers/ˈflaʊə(r)z/. We_____ (eat) our lunch under some trees and_____ (play) some games after that.But at about two o'clock, it_____ (get) very cloudy and we_____ (worry/ˈwʌri, ˈwɜːri/ ②) it would rain. 我的学校之旅_____很好！我们_____非常愉快！我们_____格林公园。我们在那儿_____山，还_____很多花。我们在一些树下_____午饭，午饭后，我们_____一些游戏。但是在大约两点钟时，天_____阴了，我们_____天会下雨。

Luckily/ˈlʌkɪli/ ③, it_____ (do not) , and the sun /sʌn/_____ (come) out ④ again!_____幸运的是，天_____，并且太阳又____了！

Bill 比尔

3b Make up a story. Each student adds a sentence. 编故事。每位学生加一个句子。

—Last week I visited my aunt's house.

——上个星期我去拜访了姑姑家。

—The weather was beautiful.

——天气很好。

—We went fishing.

——我们去钓鱼了。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　　•考点应用

fun 作不可数名词，意为"乐趣；快乐"，其前常用 great, much, a lot of 等修饰，用来加强语气。

have fun (in) doing sth.=have a great time doing sth. 意为"很开心/高兴/愉快地做某事"。

★We had so much fun!

① so much fun 那么多乐趣

e.g. There was so much noise in the classroom.

教室里太吵了。　一般用来修饰不可数名词。

There are so many intelligent robots on show.

有那么多的智能机器人正在展出。　常用来修饰可数名词复数。

考题在线 1 There is _____ water in the river. You must be careful.

A.so many　　B.so much　　C.so far　　D.so

点拨:so many "如此多"，修饰可数名词复数；so much "如此多"，修饰不可数名词；so far "到目前为止"；so "那么"，修饰形容词或副词。空格后的 water 是不可数名词，故用 so much 修饰。

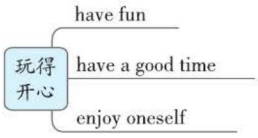
e.g. He's great fun, and his dog is great fun, too.

他是个非常有趣的人，他的狗也非常有趣。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Skating is great fun. 滑冰非常有趣。

拓展：【难点】have fun 意为“玩得开心”，相当于 have a good/great/wonderful time。





e.g. My grandpa often has much fun exercising in the park.

我爷爷经常在公园里锻炼得很开心。

We had a great time playing in the snow. 我们很快乐地在雪地里玩。

Our English teacher often makes the class fun. 我们的英语老师经常把课讲得很有趣。作形容词，意为“有趣的；使人快乐的”。

The kids are all making fun of little Tom's funny hat today. 孩子们都在取笑小汤姆今天的滑稽的帽子。adj. 滑稽的；好笑的

考题在线 2 They had a great time at the party last night.（改为同义句）

They _____ _____ _____ at the party last night.

★But at about two o'clock, it got very cloudy and we worried it would rain.

② **worry**/ˈwʌri/, /ˈwɜːri/ *v.* & *n.* 担心；担忧

- worry+that 从句“担心/担忧……”
- worry+sb. 使担心；使发愁

e.g.I always worried that I couldn't pass the exam.

我总是担心我不能通过考试。

Nothing worries me. 没有什么事使我担心。

I have nothing to worry about.

我没有什么可担心的。不及物动词，与 about 连用

No one wants to have worry. 没有人想有烦恼。

She is full of worries. 她有种种烦恼。

★worry 还可作名词。

- 不可数名词，“忧虑；担心”。
- 可数名词，“令人担忧的事”。

I am worried about the coming exam.

我担心即将到来的考试。adj. 主语多为 sb.“担心的；担忧的”。

It must be ~~worrying~~ for you not to know where he is.

你不知道他的下落一定很着急。adj. 主语多为 sth.“令人担忧的”。

考题在线 3 —Which would you like to read, paper books or e-books?

—My parents only allow me to read paper books. They _____ my eyes. [镇江]

A. talk about　　B. hear about

C. learn about　　D. worry about

点拨：用语境判定法解题。talk about 谈论；hear about 听说，得知；learn about 了解到；worry about 担心。根据答语前半部分“我父母只允许我读纸质书”

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

可知，他们“担心我的眼睛”。句意为“——纸质书或电子书，你想要读哪一个？——我父母只允许我读纸质书。他们担心我的眼睛。”

考题在线 4 — Jackie, I'm going on business. Please look after yourself.
—_____, Dad, I will. [盐城]

A. I hope so　　B. Don't worry
C. I'd love to　　D. Don't mention it

★Luckily, it didn't, and the sun came out again!

③ **luckily** /ˈlʌkɪli/ *adv.* **幸运地；好运地**

e.g.Luckily, we got on the bus in time.
幸运的是，我们及时上了公共汽车。

通常放在句首，表示“幸运的是”，用来修饰整个句子。

辨析: luck, lucky 与 luckily

luck *n.* 运气
↓
lucky *adj.* 幸运的
↓
luckily *adv.* 幸运地

Good luck! 好运！
We are lucky. 我们是幸运的。
Luckily, we have mobile payment. 幸运的是，我们有手机支付。

e.g.—He won the lottery again. 他的彩票又中奖了。
—What a lucky dog！ 真是个幸运儿！
—There was no power at school last night. It was so dark.
昨天晚上学校停电了。漆黑一片。
—Lucky me！ I was not there. 我真幸运！我不在那里。

①a lucky dog 幸运儿
②Lucky you！你真幸运！非正式口语，相当于 You're so lucky！you 还可改为 me, him 等。

考题在线 5 根据句意，用括号里所给单词的适当形式填空。
_____ (lucky), people tried their best to put out the big fire in the forest. [广元]

点拨:句意为“幸运的是，人们尽他们最大努力扑灭了森林大火”。此处应该用副词来修饰整个句子。lucky 的副词形式是 luckily。

★come out 其他含义：盛开；开花；出版；发表。

④ **come out 出来**

e.g.The sun is coming out. 太阳就要出来了。
The flowers come out in spring. 花儿在春天开放。
My new novel will come out this month. 我的新小说将于这个月出版。

考题在线答案 1.B　2.had much fun　3.D　4.B　5.Luckily

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

一般过去时的用法

考点 1 一般过去时的基本用法

一般过去时表示过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态，也表示过去经常或反复发生的动作。



考向 1：【易错点】一般过去时常与表示过去时间的副词或副词短语连用，如 yesterday, the day before yesterday（前天）, last night/week, three days ago, just now（刚才）, a moment ago（刚刚）, in 2012 等。

考题在线 1 — Wendy, how long have you had the Huawei P30 Pro?

— A couple of days. I _____ it last week. [南京]

A. bought　　B. buy

C. will buy　　D. have bought

点拨：用关键词法解题。由答语中的时间状语 last week 可以确定该句用一般过去时。句意为“——温迪，你买华为 P30 Pro 多久了？——几天。我上周买的。”

考向 2：【易错点】表示过去经常或反复发生的动作时，常和 often, always 等表示频率的副词连用。



易错的内容，要理解记忆哦！

考题在线 2 He always _____ to school by bus last month.

A. go　　B. went

C. going　　D. goes

考点 2 一般过去时的构成

本单元主要介绍含有 be 动词的一般过去时和含有实义动词的一般过去时。

考向 1：【重点】含有 be 动词的一般过去时

肯定句	主语 +was/were+ 其他 .
否定句	主语 +was/were+not+ 其他 .
一般疑问句	Was/Were+ 主语 + 其他? 肯定回答：Yes, 主语 +was/were. 否定回答：No, 主语 +wasn't/weren't.

注：am/is→was; are→were

e.g. Their party was very great yesterday.

昨天他们的派对非常棒。

The students weren't at school just now.

刚才学生们不在学校。

—Were you at home last night?

昨天晚上你在家吗？

—Yes, I was./No, I wasn't.

是的，我在家。/ 不，我不在家。

考题在线 3 That actor was a farmer before.（改为否定句）

That actor _____ a farmer before.

考题在线 4 — My feelings for you have not changed.

— But you have changed. You are not as you _____. [扬州]

A. are　　B. were

C. will be　　D. have been

点拨：用语境判定法解题。根据答语的前半部分句意“但是你已经变了”可知，后半部分句意为“你不像你以前那样了”，故用一般过去时。

考向 2：【重点】含有实义动词的一般过去时

肯定句	主语 + 动词过去式 + 其他 .
否定句	主语 +didn't+ 动词原形 + 其他 .
一般疑问句	Did+ 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他? 肯定回答：Yes，主语 +did. 否定回答：No，主语 +didn't.

注：在一般过去时的疑问句中，助动词 did 后面的动词要用原形。

e.g. They listened to music just now.

刚才他们听音乐了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

→They didn't listen to music just now.
刚才他们没听音乐。
→Did they listen to music just now?
刚才他们听音乐了吗?
→Yes, they did./No, they didn't.
是的,他们听了。/不,他们没听。

速记 小筱

一般过去时
句子一般过去时,表示过去发生的事。
谓语动词过去式,过去时间作标志。
疑问句构成有方法,主语前面 did 加。
否定句也不难,主语后面 didn't 添。
句中出现 did/didn't,后面动词要还原。

考题在线 5 She did chores with her parents.(改为一般疑问句) [渝北]
_____ she _____ chores with her parents?

点拨:用语法分析法解题。原句是含有实义动词的一般过去时的句子,故用助动词 did 帮助进行提问,而谓语动词 did 要还原成原形 do。

考题在线 6 He _____ me his name, but I can't remember it now. [河北]
A. tells B. will tell
C. told D. is telling

点拨:用语法分析法及语境判定法解题。tells 用于一般现在时;will tell 用于一般将来时;told 用于一般过去时;is telling 用于现在进行时。根据后半句"但是现在我记不起来了"可知,他告诉过"我"他的名字了,故用一般过去时。

考点 3 动词过去式的构成

考向 1:规则动词过去式的构成

构成规则	原形	过去式
一般在动词原形末尾加 -ed	clean play visit	cleaned played visited
以 e 结尾的动词在词尾加 -d	live practice change	lived practiced changed
以重读闭音节结尾的动词,末尾只有一个辅音字母时,先双写这个辅音字母,再加 -ed	stop plan	stopped planned
结尾是"辅音字母 +y"的动词,先变 y 为 i,再加 -ed	study carry	studied carried

速记 小筱

动词过去式,构成有规律;
一般情况下,词尾加 -ed;
词尾若有 e,直接加上 -d;
以"辅 +y"结尾,变 y 为 i 加 -ed;
一辅重读闭音节,双写辅音加 -ed。

考向 2:不规则变化

不规则变化的动词需要参照课本第 141 页附表特殊记忆。

考题在线 7 —Did you buy anything special?
—Yes, I _____ something for my mother. [常德]
A. bought B. buy C. will buy

考题在线答案 1.A 2.B 3.wasn't 4.B 5.Did; do 6.C 7.A

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见 305 页)

一、单项选择

1. —Where did you go last winter vacation?
—I _____ to London with my family. [昆明]
A. go B. have gone
C. went D. was going

2. Tom _____ the piano every day when he was in primary school. [嘉兴]

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

A. plays　　B. played
C. is playing　　D. has played

3. Beijing and Zhangjiakou _____ applying to host（主办）the 2022 Winter Olympic Games in 2013.　[连云港]
A. begin　　B. began
C. have begun　　D. had begun

4. The teacher is already standing here. Do you know when she_____?　[河北]
A. comes　　B. came
C. is coming　　D. was coming

5. —Great changes have taken place in our hometown over the past years.　[泰州]
—Yeah. Things _____ different when we were young.
A. have been　　B. are
C. will be　　D. were

二、用所给动词的适当形式填空

6. They_____（stay）in Beijing last week.

7. My parents _____（be）both at home yesterday.

8. —Who_____（write）the letter to you?
—My friend did.

9. I _____（visit）my grandparents in Jinan in July, 2014.

10. My father _____（spend）one hundred yuan on his new clothes.　[永州改编]

三、根据汉语提示完成句子

11. 昨天我们去钓鱼了。
We _____ _____yesterday.

12. 他站起来唱了一首歌。
He _____ _____ and sang a song.

13. 你们什么时候在哪儿见的面?
When and where _____ you_____?

14. 汤姆三个小时前就写完了作业。
Tom _____ his homework three hours ago.

15. 上个周末我们玩得很高兴。
We _____ _____ _____ _____last weekend.

Period 3 Section B（1a–1d）

I. 课文原文、译文

1a Match the activities with the pictures. 把活动与图片相匹配。

1. go to the zoo_____去动物园_____
2. visit a museum/mju:'ziəm/① _____参观博物馆_____
3. ride a horse_____骑马_____
4. climb a mountain_____爬山_____
5. visit a fire/'faɪə(r)/② station_____参观消防站_____
6. go fishing_____去钓鱼_____

1b Listen and answer the questions. 听录音，回答问题。

1. How was Jane's trip?_____简的旅行怎么样? _____
2. How was Tony's trip?_____托尼的旅行怎么样? _____

课文听力 1b

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1c **Listen again. What did Jane and Tony do on their last school trip? Check(√)*Tony* or *Jane*.**

再听一遍录音。在他们上一次学校旅行中，简和托尼干了什么？在托尼或者简处打（√）。

	went to the countryside 去乡村	climbed a mountain 爬山	went to an art museum 去艺术博物馆	saw some paintings /ˈpeɪntɪŋz/ 看一些油画	drew pictures 画画
Tony 托尼					
Jane 简					

1d **What was your last school trip like? Discuss it with your partner.** 你上次的学校旅行怎么样？和你的同伴讨论一下。

—I went to... 我去了……
—That sounds... 那听起来……

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞（答案见305页）

Ⅱ听力过程

听 1b，选择正确的答案

课文听力 1b

1. How was Jane's school trip?
A. Great. B. Terrible.
C. Not bad.

2. Where did Jane go?
A. She went to the city.
B. She went to a museum.
C. She went to the countryside.

3. What did Jane do there?
A. She picked strawberries.
B. She climbed a mountain.
C. She went fishing.

4. Where did Tony go?
A. He went to an art museum.
B. He went to the countryside.
C. He went to his uncle's farm.

5. What did Tony do there?
A. Watched a movie. B. Listened to music.
C. Drew pictures.

6. How was Tony's trip?
A. Great. B. Terrible. C. Bad.

Ⅲ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

★visit a museum

① **museum**/mjuːˈziəm/ *n.* 博物馆 → 用作可数名词

e.g. He works in a history museum. 他在历史博物馆工作。

拓展：与 museum 相关的短语：

the Palace Museum 故宫　　the art museum 美术馆

the natural science museum 自然科学博物馆　　the history museum 历史博物馆

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★**visit a fire station**

② **fire**/faɪə(r)/*n.* 火；火灾

fire	不可数名词	火	Don't play with fire. 不要玩火。
	可数名词	炉火；灶火	Sam had lit a fire to welcome us home.

与 fire 有关的短语：
be on fire 着火
make a fire 生火
put out the fire 灭火

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

2a **Do the following words describe good things or bad things? Put a √ for good and an × for bad. Leave a blank if they can mean both.** 下面单词是描述好事情还是坏事情？描述好事情打√，描述坏事情打 ×。如果它们两者都能描述则留空白。

_____interesting_____有趣的
_____lovely/ˈlʌvli/① _____可爱的
_____exciting/ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/③ _____使人兴奋的
_____cool_____酷的；凉爽的
_____lucky_____幸运的
_____expensive/ɪkˈspensɪv/④ _____昂贵的
_____delicious_____美味的
_____cheap/tʃiːp/_____便宜的
_____difficult_____困难的
_____slow/sləʊ/② _____缓慢的
_____boring_____无聊的
_____hot_____热的
_____large_____大的
_____terrible_____糟糕的
_____great_____棒的
_____fast/fɑːst/⑤ _____快地（的）

2b **Read Helen's and Jim's diary entries and answer the questions.** 读海伦和吉姆的日记记录并回答问题。

课文朗读 2b

1. Did Helen and Jim go on the same trip? 海伦和吉姆去的是同一次旅行吗？
2. How do they feel about the trip? 他们觉得旅行怎么样？

June 15th 六月十五日

Today I went on a school trip. We visited the science museum and it was really interesting. We got there so fast by train. We saw some farms and villages along the way. At the museum, I learned a lot about robots/ˈrəʊbɒts/, /ˈrəʊbɑːts/. I didn't know they could play chess with us. It was so cool! Then the guide/gaɪd/ taught us how to make a model robot. I took a lot of great photos, too. After that, I went to the gift/gɪft/ ⑥ shop and bought some lovely gifts for my parents. They weren't expensive. All in all⑦, it was an exciting day. 今天我参加了学校郊游。我们参观了科学博物馆，它真有趣。我们乘火车很快就到了那里。沿途中我们看到了一些农场和村庄。在博物馆里，我学到了很多关于机器人的知识。我不知道它们能和我们下国际象棋。太酷了！然后向导教我们如何制作机器人模型。我也拍了很多很棒的照片。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

在那之后，我去了礼品店，给我的父母买了一些可爱的礼物。它们不贵。总之，这是令人兴奋的一天。

June 15th 六日十五日

I think today's school trip was terrible. We took the train to the museum. It was so hot on the slow train. The museum was big and boring. Everything/'evriθɪŋ/ ⑧ was about robots and I'm not interested/'ɪntrəstɪd/ in ⑨ that. The rooms were really dark/dɑ:(r)k/ and it was difficult to take photos ⑩, so I didn't take any. There were also too many ⑪ people and I couldn't really see or hear /hɪə, hɪr/ ⑫ the guide. The things in the gift shop were so expensive. I didn't like the trip at all ⑬. 我认为今天的学校旅行很糟糕。我们乘火车到了博物馆。慢车上非常热。博物馆又大又无聊。一切都是关于机器人的，我对那个不感兴趣。房间十分昏暗，很难拍照，因此我没拍照。人也非常多，我确实看不见向导，也听不见向导的话。礼品店里的东西很贵。我一点儿也不喜欢这次旅行。

2c Complete the chart. How do Helen and Jim describe these things? 完成表格。海伦和吉姆是怎样描述这些事情的?

	Helen 海伦	Jim 吉姆
the trip 旅行		
the train 火车		
the museum 博物馆		
the gift shop and gifts 礼品店和礼物		

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 20分

(答案见305页)

阅读策略

篇首总括与篇末点题法 阅读时我们会发现有些文章是首尾呼应的，即篇首总括全文内容，如本部分中的“学校郊游”——school trip，在展开详细介绍后，在篇末用一句概括性的语言进行点题，与开头相呼应，以便给读者留下更加深刻的印象。阅读时抓住开头和结尾便抓住了文章主旨。

阅读过程

拓展阅读

一、速读 2b，选择正确答案

1. What are the two diaries mainly about?

(主旨大意题)

A. A museum. B. A school.

C. A school trip. D. A gift shop.

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. What does Helen think of her train?

(细节理解题)

A. Slow. B. Fast.

C. Hot. D. Dirty.

3. From the diary, we can know Helen _____.

(推理判断法)

A. thought the trip was boring

B. found the trip was terrible

C. didn't like her trip at all

D. liked her trip very much

4. Jim wasn't interested in _____.

(细节理解题)

A. trips B. taking photos

C. robots D. going shopping

5. What did Jim think of the trip?

(细节理解题)

A. Terrible. B. Excellent.

C. Interesting. D. Not bad.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

★lovely

① **lovely**/ˈlʌvli/*adj.* 可爱的

敲黑板 凡以 -ly 结尾，却是形容词！

e.g. What a lovely baby! 多么可爱的婴儿啊！

拓展：lovely 是由名词 love 加后缀 -ly 构成的形容词。类似的词还有：

friend 朋友	friendly 友好的
week 星期	weekly 每周的

考题在线 1 Suzy is a cute girl, and we all make friends with her. The underlined part "cute" means_____. [梧州]

A.humorous B. stupid C. lovely D. lazy

点拨:lovely 与 cute 都有"可爱的"之意。



★slow

② **slow**/sləʊ/*adj.* 缓慢的；迟缓的 adj. 反义词为 fast。

e.g. This train is really slow, but that one is fast.

这列火车真的很慢，但那列很快。

辨析：slow 与 slowly 都可用作副词，但用法不同。

slow	可用于口语中；不可用于句首；可与 how 连用；常和 go, drive 或 pass 连用且位于其后。	How slow the time passes! 时间过得真慢啊！ I told the driver to go slow. 我告诉司机慢慢开车。
slowly	比较常用，可置于句首或动词之后（或前）修饰动词。	Slowly he ate. 他慢慢地吃。 She is working slowly. 她在慢慢地工作。 He slowly opened the door. 他慢慢地打开了门。

fast（反义词）
↑
slow(adj.)
↓
slowly（副词）

考题在线 2 Drivers should drive _____ when they are passing by a school. [德州]

A. terribly B. quickly C. slowly D. freely

★exciting

③ **exciting**/ɪkˈsaɪtɪŋ/*adj.* 使人兴奋的；令人激动的

e.g. What exciting news it is! 多么令人激动的消息啊！

辨析：exciting 与 excited

- exciting："使人兴奋的"，常作定语或表语，作表语时，主语通常是物，强调事物所拥有的特征。
- excited："兴奋的"，常作表语，主语通常是人，强调人的情绪。

一语辨异：

I'm excited at the exciting news.
这个令人兴奋的消息令我感到兴奋。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

拓展：类似 exciting 与 excited 的词还有：

interesting 有趣的	interested 感兴趣的
surprising 令人吃惊的	surprised 惊讶的
boring 令人厌倦的	bored 厌倦的
tiring 令人困倦的	tired 疲倦的

考题在线 3 We are _____ about the _____ news that Beijing will hold the Winter Olympics in 2022. [龙东]

A. excited; exciting B. exciting; excited C. excited; excite

★expensive

④ **expensive**/ɪkˈspensɪv/ *adj.* 昂贵的

expensive 用作形容词，意为“昂贵的”，其反义词为 cheap“便宜的”。

e.g. I can't buy this big house. It's too expensive.
我不能买这个大房子。它太贵了。

敲黑板 东西分“贵”“贱”，价格有“高”“低”！

辨析：expensive 与 high

expensive	表示“昂贵的；花钱多的”；反义词 cheap 表示“廉价的；便宜的”，其主语必须是货物或物品本身。
high	表示价格“高”，反义词 low 表示价格“低”，其主语为 price。

e.g. This car is expensive, but that one is cheap.
这辆小汽车昂贵，但那辆便宜。

The price of this watch is very high. 这块手表的价格非常高。

考题在线 4 —Do you like this new kind of mobile phone, madam?
—Yes. But it's too _____, and I can't afford it. [襄阳]

A. popular B. lovely C. cheap D. expensive

考题在线 5 The price of the sweater is very _____. I can't afford it.

A. expensive B. cheap C. high D. low

点拨：表示价格 (price) 的高和低分别用 high 和 low，不能用 expensive 和 cheap。由后面“我买不起。”可知毛衣的价格非常“高”。

★fast

⑤ **fast**/fɑːst/ *adv.* & *adj.* 快地 (的)

fast 用作副词时，反义词是 slowly/slow；用作形容词时反义词是 slow。

- fast
  - 副词，“快地”。Deng Chao is running so fast. 邓超跑得很快。
  - 形容词，“快的”。He is the world's fastest runner. 他是世界上最快的赛跑运动员。

辨析：fast 与 quickly (见 Unit 4 Period 4 考点 1)

e.g. Li Ming can run very fast. 李明能跑得很快。

He had breakfast quickly and then went to school.
他快速吃完早饭去上学了。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 根据所给句子，填入一个适当的单词，使句意完整。

Look! How _____ Mark is running! He must win the race. [吉林]

点拨：用逻辑推理法解题。由后面“他一定能赢得比赛”可知前面是感叹马克跑得快。强调跑得快要用副词 fast。

★After that, I went to the gift shop...

⑥ **gift**/gɪft/*n.* 礼物；赠品 可数名词，同义词为 present。

e.g. Thanks for your gift. 谢谢你的礼物。

考题在线 7 This bike is a g_____（礼物）from my uncle. [安徽]

核心素养之文化意识

学习中西方文化，学会与人相处

在中国，互送礼物是表达情意的方式之一。人们接受礼物时往往并不喜形于色，且不当面打开礼物，认为这样做非常不礼貌(*impolite*)。不同的是西方人会当面打开别人赠送的礼物，并且会赞叹一番，对方也许未必在乎你送的是什么，出于礼节他会表示谢意，至少表面上会表现出浓厚的兴趣(*interest*)，以免伤害你的感情。

不管在哪个国家，礼物都是送的人精心准备的，都是尊重(*respect*)、在意(*care*)别人的一种表现。收到礼物的人也会真诚地道谢。

素养行动：节假日为亲人朋友精心准备一份礼物吧，DIY 更好！

素养行动结果：增进亲人朋友之间的关系(relationship)。

★All in all, it was an exciting day.

⑦ **all in all 总的说来**

辨析：all in all, in all, after all 与 above all

all in all	意为“总的说来”，常用于句首。
in all	意为“总共，合计”，既可放在句首，也可放在句末。
after all	意为“毕竟，终究”，可位于句首、句中或句末。
above all	意为“首先；最重要的”，常位于句首或句中作插入语。

e.g. All in all, we had a good time. 总的说来，我们过得很愉快。

There are fifty students in all. 总共有 50 名学生。

After all, we like 5G network better. 毕竟，我们更喜欢 5G 网络。

Above all, tell me quickly what I should do. 首先，快点告诉我该做什么。

There is no royal road to learning. 学问无坦途。

考题在线 8 —How was your party?

—_____, it was pleasant.

A. In all B. At all C. After all D. All in all

点拨：问句句意为“你们的派对怎么样？”结合答语中的“它令人愉快”可知 All in all“总的说来”符合句意。

★Everything was about robots and I'm not interested in that.

⑧ **everything**/'evriθɪŋ/*pron.* 所有事物；一切

敲黑板 everything 作主语时视为第三人称单数。

e.g. Don't worry. Everything goes well.

不要担心。一切进展顺利。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

联想记忆：
everything 所有事物；一切
something 某事；某物
anything 任何事物
nothing 没有什么

拓展：everything 是由“every + thing”构成，类似的单词有：everybody 人人 / 每个人 everyday 每日的 everywhere 到处；各个地方

考题在线 9 Tom! You're no longer a 3-year-old kid. I can cook dinner for you, but don't expect me to do _____ for you. Go and tidy your room! [无锡]

A. everything　　B. something　　C. anything　　D. nothing

⑨ **be interested in 对……感兴趣** 相当于 show/take an interest in。

e.g. She is interested in singing.

=She shows/takes an interest in singing.

她对唱歌感兴趣。

辨析：interested 与 interesting

interested	“感兴趣的”，表示人的主观感受。	作表语或定语
interesting	“有趣的；引起兴趣的”，表示事物的特征。	常作表语

一语辨异：
I'm interested in reading. I think it is interesting to read some interesting stories in my free time.
我对读书感兴趣。我觉得在空闲时读些有趣的故事很有趣。

考题在线 10 —Have you read the book *Harry Potter*?

—Sure. Eric is also _____ it and we become friends because of that. [东营]

A. proud of　　B. afraid of

C. serious about　　D. interested in

核心素养之学习能力

培养兴趣，开启成功之门

伟大的科学家爱因斯坦有句名言：“兴趣是最好的老师。(Interest is the best teacher.)”。孔子亦云：“知之者不如好之者，好之者不如乐之者。”一个人一旦对某事物有了浓厚的兴趣，就会主动去求知(learn)、去探索(explore)、去实践(practice)，并在求知、探索、实践中拥有愉快的情绪和体验。古往今来，许多成功人士，他们的事业往往萌生于青少年时期的兴趣，他们沿着兴趣开拓的道路走下去，从而找到了自己事业成功的路径。

素养行动：培养自己的兴趣(interest)，并把它付诸实践(put it into practice)吧。

素养行动结果：勤奋努力(work hard)，实现你的梦想(achieve your dream)!

★ **The rooms were really dark and it was difficult to take photos, so I didn't take any.**

⑩ **it was difficult to take photos 拍照很困难**

当动词不定式(短语)较长且作主语时，通常用“It is + 形容词 +to do sth.”的句型，意为“做某事……”。其中 It 是形式主语，代替后面的动词不定式(短语)。

e.g. It is important to learn Chinese. 学好中文很重要。

拓展：

“It is + 形容词 + for sb. +to do sth.”意为“对某人来说做某事……”，其中形容词是说明事情性质、特征的词。

“It is + 形容词 +of sb. +to do sth.”意为“某人做某事真是太……了”，其中形容词是表示人的性格、品质、特征的词。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. It is easy for me to go to school by bike.
对我来说骑自行车上学是很容易的。→ 说明事情的特征

It is kind of you to help me.
你能帮我真是太好了。→ 形容人好

考题在线 11 Nowadays, it's convenient and cheap for us _____ a shared-bicycle. [昆明]

A. ride B. to ride C. flying D. to fly

★**There were also too many people and I couldn't really see or hear the guide.**

⑪ **too many 用法**

(见本书 Unit 4 Period 4 考点 1)

⑫ **hear**/hɪə/, /hɪr/ *v.* **听到；听见**

e.g. She can't hear anything. 她什么也听不到。

I'm sorry to hear that you can't come. 听说你不能来，我很遗憾。
(不定代词；that 从句)

辨析：listen 与 hear

(见本书 Unit 4 Period 1 考点 6)

拓展：①【难点】hear 用作感官动词，其后跟动词作宾语补足语时，动词常用 do 或 doing 形式。

- hear
  - hear sb. do sth. 听见某人做某事：I often hear him practise playing the piano in the morning. 我经常听到他在早晨练习弹钢琴。
  - hear sb. doing sth. 听见某人正在做某事：Can you hear a girl singing a song? 你能听到一个女孩正在唱歌吗？

②与 hear 相关的短语：

hear about 听到关于……（的消息） hear from 收到……的来信

hear of 听到有关……的消息 hear sb. out 听某人把话说完

考题在线 12 —Can you hear someone _____ in the classroom?

—It is Mary. [威海]

A. sing B. sings C. singing D. sang

点拨：由后面“那是玛丽。”可知在问是否能听到有人“正在”唱歌。hear sb. doing sth. 意为“听见某人正在做某事”，表示动作正在进行。

★**I didn't like the trip at all.**

⑬ **not at all 一点儿也不**

e.g. Yesterday Mr. Brown wasn't busy at all. 昨天布朗先生一点儿也不忙。

I don't like eating meat at all. 我一点儿也不喜欢吃肉。

- hear 用作及物动词时，后接名词、代词或 that 从句。
- hear 的过去式是 heard。



hear sb. doing sth.



hear sb. do sth.

not at all 意为“根本不；完全不；一点儿也不”。在句子中，not 和 be 动词 / 助动词连用使句子成为否定句。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

拓展：【难点】not at all 常用于下列场合中：

not at all 的用法：
- 用来回答感谢，意为“不用谢；不客气”。
- 用来回答道歉，意为“没关系”。
- 用来表示否定，意为“一点也不”。

e.g. —Thank you very much. 非常感谢。

—Not at all. 不客气。

—I'm sorry. I'm late. 很抱歉。我迟到了。

—Not at all. 没关系。

—Are you busy? 你很忙吗?

—Not at all. 一点也不忙。

Live and learn.
活到老，学到老。

考题在线 13 —It's a little cold. Would you mind closing the window?

—_____. I will do it right away. [云南]

A. Forget it　B. No, you can't　C. Not at all　D. Of course

考题在线答案 1.C 2.C 3.A 4.D 5.C 6.fast 7.gift 8.D 9.A 10.D 11.B 12.C 13.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见305页)

一、根据所给提示完成句子

1. I'd like to buy some birthday _____ (礼物) for my two sons.

2. The _____ (机器人) look very funny.

3. The room is a little _____ (黑暗的). Would you please turn on the lights?

4. The ____ (导游) come from different places.

5. The computer is too _____ (昂贵的), so I can't afford it.

二、用所给词的适当形式填空

6. The boy runs very _____(fast) and I can't catch him.

7. The Smiths are old and _____(slowly). You should wait for them.

8. Her shoes were really _____(cheap). They only cost seven dollars. [武汉]

9. Miss Han will buy a _____(love)gift for her mother on Mother's Day.

10. Last class, I _____ (hear) they would like to talk about "the Belt and Road(一带一路)".

三、单项选择

11. Not only Chinese kids but also western kids _____ *Journey to the West*(《西游记》). [抚顺]

A. are famous for　B. are afraid of

C. are worried about　D. are interested in

12. At present, children mean _____ to most parents in China. [河南]

A. everything　B. nothing

C. anything　D. something

13. There are _____ trees on the hill.

A. too many　B. too much

C. many too　D. much too

14. —Did you watch the first match of the Russian World Cup?

—Of course! We were so _____ to watch the _____ match. [乌鲁木齐]

A. exciting; excited　B. excited; excited

C. exciting; exciting　D. excited; exciting

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

15. It is important _____ people _____ good manners. [雅安]

A. for; to learn　　B. of; to learn

C. for; learn　　D. of; learn

四、根据汉语意思完成英语句子，每空一词

16. 你对英语感兴趣吗?

_____ you _____ _____ English?

17. 你能告诉我如何制作机器人吗?

Can you tell me _____ _____ _____ a robot?

18. 上个周末我们参观了博物馆。

We _____ _____ _____ last weekend.

19. 总之，这对兄弟非常喜欢共享单车。

_____ _____ _____, the brothers like shared bikes very much.

20. 他一点也不喜欢弹钢琴。

He _____ like playing the piano _____ _____.

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Look at the pictures of Bob's school trip. Complete his diary entry. 看鲍勃的学校旅行的图片。完成他的日记记录。

June 23rd 六月二十三日

Yesterday my school visited the zoo. It was really _____. We went there by bus. At the zoo, I saw a lot of _____ and I took some photos. My classmates and I also went to the _____ and bought some _____. It was a great day. 昨天我的学校参观了动物园。它的确_____。我们乘公共汽车去了那儿。在动物园里，我看到了很多_____，并且拍了一些照片。我和我的同班同学们也去了_____并买了一些_____。真是美好的一天。

3b Linda is Bob's classmate. Complete her diary entry. 琳达是鲍勃的同班同学。完成她的日记记录。

June 23rd 六月二十三日

My school went to the zoo yesterday. The trip was _____. At the zoo, I_____but I didn't like them. I also went to_____with my classmates, but I didn't buy anything because_____. It was a boring day. 昨天我的学校去了动物园。这次旅行是_____。在动物园里，我_____但是我不喜欢它们。我也和我的同班同学们去了_____，但是我什么也没买因为_____。真是无聊的一天。

3c Now write a diary entry for your own school trip. Explain if you liked it or didn't like it and why. 现在写一则你自己学校旅行的日记记录。说明你是否喜欢它以及为什么。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Write more verbs and their past forms in each group. 在每组中写出更多的动词和它们的过去式。

climb→climbed　　arrive→arrived

study→studied　　stop→stopped　get→got

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2 **Complete the conversations with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.** 用方框中动词的正确形式完成对话。

have 有	do 做	swim 游泳	go 去	be 是	see 看见	feed 喂养

1. A: I went to the countryside this summer. 今年夏天我去了乡村。
   B: Really? How _____ the trip? 真的吗？旅行怎么样?
   A: It _____ great! 棒极了!
   B: What _____ you _____ there? 你在那儿_____了什么?
   A: I _____ the chickens and _____ in a river. 我_____了鸡，并且在河里_____。
2. A: _____ you _____ a nice weekend? 你_____一个愉快的周末吗?
   B: Yes, I did. 是的。
   A: _____ you _____ anywhere? 你_____哪儿了吗?
   B: Yes, I _____ to the mountains. The air _____ so clean, and I _____ a lot of flowers. 是的，我_____大山。空气_____很清新，并且我_____了很多花。

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

单元话题

上周日(6月3日)天气晴朗，你和你的同班同学们参观了天安门广场(Tian'anmen Square)、故宫(the Palace Museum)和长城(the Great Wall)，你们拍照留念，玩得很开心。请根据提示写一篇日记。要求：格式正确，语句通顺。词数：80词左右。

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 写英文日记首先注意日期格式，日期常在正文左上方，天气在正文右上方。

2. 写日记时常用一般过去时。人称要用第一人称。

3. 要注意交代清楚事情发生的时间、地点、经过及感受。

写作技法（学会方法，巧得高分）

“三步七要素法”用日记描述自己的经历

三步包括：

第一步：总体概括什么时候(when)和谁(who)去了哪儿(where)。

第二步：细节和具体活动，包括如何去的(how)以及天气(weather)如何，做了一些什么(what)。

第三步：总结感受(feelings)。

七要素包括：

when; who; where; how; weather; what; feelings

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	vacation, visit, weather, happy, excited, hope, wonderful
短语	last Saturday/Sunday afternoon, last spring/summer/..., arrive at/get to, with my father/classmates/..., take photos
句子	① I went to... ② We had much fun... ③ How happy we were!

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Sunday, June 3rd Sunny

Last Sunday, I went to Beijing with my classmates.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

The weather was great and we took the train there. We visited many places in Beijing. First, ① we visited Tian'anmen Square and the Palace Museum. I took many photos. Then ① we went to the Great Wall. There were many people. At last, ① we ate in a restaurant. The food was delicious, and the people were friendly. We had great fun ② in Beijing.

名师点评：本文运用"三步七要素法"写作，内容全面、结构严谨、叙事有条理。

第一步，总体概括了什么时候和谁去了哪儿。

第二步，介绍了具体的细节和活动。

第三步，总结了自己的感受。

添彩点：①用表示顺序的词 first, then, at last 等把一天的活动连接起来，叙事有条不紊。

② have great fun 的使用把作者的感情表达得淋漓尽致。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

(答案见305页)

单元知识浓缩

根据所给提示完成短文。

Last Sunday, it was sunny. I went to visit my uncle who lives in the _____[1](乡村)far away from my home. So I took the _____[2](快的)train. When I got there, my uncle _____ me _____[3](带……参观)the farm. It was very big. I helped him to _____[4](挤奶)the cows and I also _____[5](喂养) the chickens. In the afternoon, I _____[6](去钓鱼)along the river. I didn't get back until (直到……为止) it got _____[7](黑暗的). _____[8](总的说来), it was an _____[9](极好的) day.

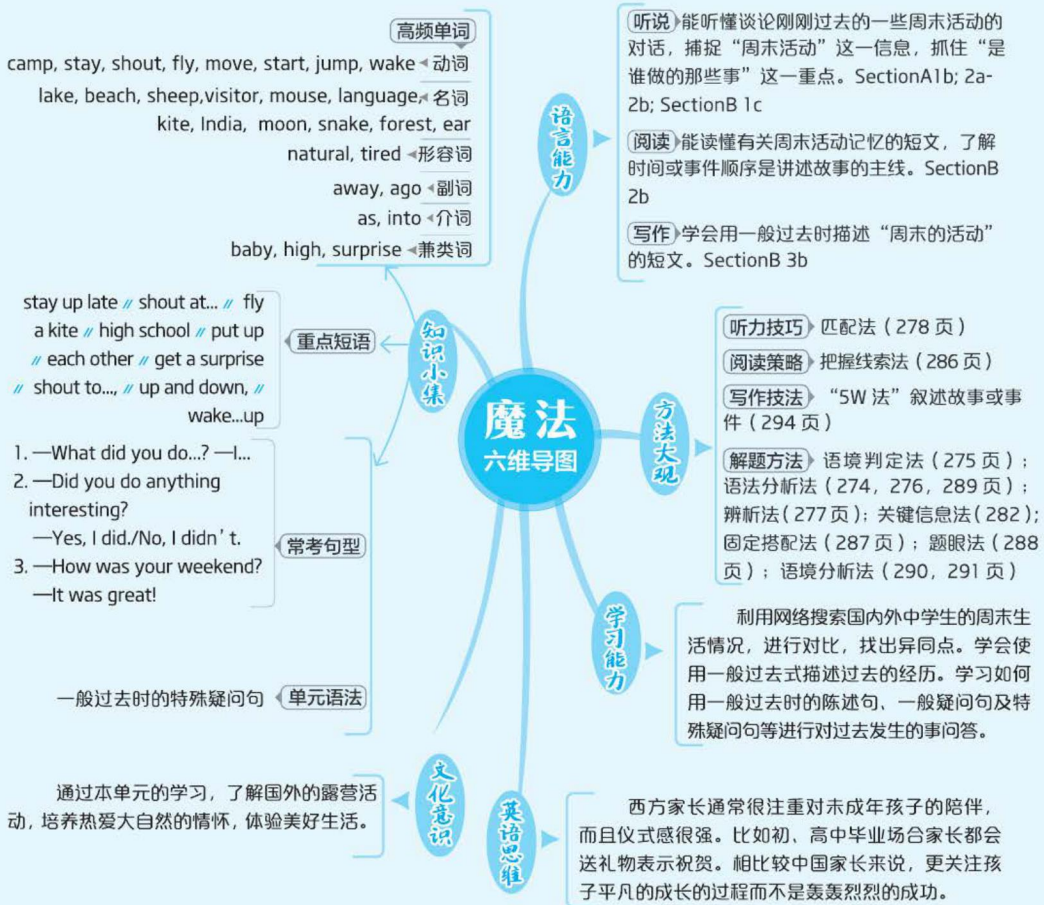
As every thread of gold is valuable, so every moment of time.
一寸光阴一寸金。



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 12 What did you do last weekend?

词汇表听写



记忆大师

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

必背单词

1. **camp** *v.* 扎营；搭帐篷→camping（现在分词）→go camping 去野营→summer camp 夏令营
2. **sheep** *n.* 羊；绵羊→sheep（复数）→goat 山羊
3. **lake** *n.* 湖；湖泊→by the lake 在湖边
4. **beach** *n.* 海滩；沙滩→beaches（复数）→go to the beach 去海滩
5. **as** *prep.* 作为；当作→as a student 作为一名学生
6. **natural** *adj.* 自然的→nature *n.* 自然
7. **visitor** *n.* 游客；访问者→visit *v.* 拜访；参观
8. **tired** *adj.* 疲倦的；疲劳的→feel tired 感觉疲倦的
9. **stay** *v.* 停留；待

必背句子

10. **—What did you do** last weekend, Lucy?
上周末你干什么了，露西?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

—Well, on Saturday morning, **I played badminton.**

噢，在周六上午，我打羽毛球了。

11. **—Who visited** her grandma? 谁看望了她的奶奶?

—Becky did. 贝姬（看望了她的奶奶）。

12. **I stayed up late to watch** the soccer game.

我熬夜看足球比赛了。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

必背单词

1. **away** *adv.* 离开；远离→be away from 远离
2. **mouse** *n.* 老鼠；耗子→mice（复数）→When the cat is away,the mice will play. 山中无老虎，猴子称霸王。
3. **baby** *adj.* 幼小的→baby monkeys 小猴子

   n. 婴儿→babies（复数）
4. **shout** *v.* 呼叫；喊叫
5. **language** *n.* 语言→learn a language 学习一门语言→mother language 母语

必背短语

6. run away 跑开
7. shout at ... 冲……大声叫嚷

必背句子 & 语法

8. **..., that's why it's important to learn** a second language.……这就是为什么多学一门语言重要啦。
9. —What did you do last weekend?

   上周末你干了什么?

   —I did my homework./We went boating.

   我做我的家庭作业了。/我们去划船了。

Period 3 Section B (1a–1e)

必背单词

1. **fly** *v.* 飞→flew（过去式）→flies（第三人称单数）
2. **kite** *n.* 风筝→fly a kite 放风筝→make kites 制作风筝

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

必背单词

1. **into** *prep.* 到……里面；进入→go into 进入……
2. **India** *n.* 印度→Indian 印度人
3. **surprise** *n.* 惊奇；惊讶 *v.* 使吃惊→to one's surprise 令某人惊奇的是→surprising *adj.* 令人惊奇的→surprised *adj.* 惊奇的→be surprised to do sth. 做某事感到吃惊
4. **start** *v.* 开始；着手→begin（同义词）→start to do sth./start doing sth. 开始做某事
5. **jump** *v.* 跳；跃→jump up and down 跳上跳下
6. **wake** *v.* 弄醒；醒→waking（现在分词）→woke（过去式）→awake (*adj.*) 醒着的
7. **high** *adj. & adv.* 高的（地）→height *n.* 身高；高度
8. **ago** *adv.* 以前→long time ago 很久以前→before（近义词）
9. **move** *v.* 移动→move away 搬走
10. **forest** *n.* 森林→in the forest 在森林里
11. **moon** *n.* 月亮→full moon 满月→in the moon 在月光下

必背短语

12. put up 搭起；举起
13. shout to ... 对……大声喊叫
14. up and down 上上下下；起伏
15. wake ... up 把……弄醒
16. high school 中学
17. get a surprise 吃惊
18. each other 互相；彼此

必背句子

19. But I was **so** tired **that** I went to sleep early.

    但是我太累了，所以早早就睡着了。
20. He also told me **it was important not to go near a snake.**

    他还告诉我重要的是不要靠近蛇。

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

必背句子

What an interesting job they have!

他们的工作多么有趣啊!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

Language Goal: Talk about past events

语言目标：谈论过去的事情

1a Match the activities with the pictures [a—f]. 把活动与图片 [a—f] 相匹配。

1. did my homework ___a___ 做我的家庭作业 ___a___
2. went to the cinema _____ 去看电影 _____
3. went boating① _____ 去划船 _____
4. camped/kæmpt/② by the lake/leɪk/ _____ 在湖边野营_____
5. went to the beach/biːtʃ/ _____ 去海滩 _____
6. played badminton/ˈbædmɪntən/ _____ 打羽毛球_____

—What did you do last weekend④, Lucy/ˈluːsi/?③ 上周末你干什么了，露西?

—Well, on Saturday morning, I played badminton. 噢，在周六上午，我打羽毛球了。

1b Listen and write the day, *morning*, *afternoon* or *night* below each picture. 听录音，在每张图片下面写一天中的上午、下午或晚上。

课文听力 1b

1c Role-play. Student A is Lucy. Student B asks Lucy about her weekend. 分角色表演。学生 A 当露西，学生 B 询问露西有关她周末的情况。

B: What did you do last weekend, Lucy? 上个周末你干什么了，露西?

A: Well, on Saturday morning, I played badminton . 噢，在周六上午，我打羽毛球了。

2a Listen and underline the words you hear. 听录音，在你所听到的单词下面画线。

课文听力 2a

1. ___B___ I visited my (aunt/grandma). ___B___ 我看望了我的（姑姑 / 祖母）。
2. _____ I did (my homework/sports). _____ 我做（我的家庭作业 / 运动）了。
3. _____ I studied for the (English/math) test. _____ 我为（英语 / 数学）测验学习了。
4. _____ I went to a (farm/beach). _____ 我去（农场 / 海滩）了。
5. _____ I fed some (sheep/ʃiːp/⑤ / cows)._____ 我喂了一些（绵羊 / 奶牛）。

2b Listen again. Write C for Carol, *J* for Jack or *B* for Becky next to the statements in 2a. 再听一遍录音。在 2a 中陈述的旁边，是卡萝尔的写 C，是杰克的写 J，是贝姬的写 B。

2c Student A asks questions with *who*, *what* or *where* and Student B answers. Then change roles. 学生 A 用 who, what 或 where 提问，学生 B 回答。然后变换角色。

—Who visited her grandma? 谁看望了她祖母?

—Becky did.⑥ 贝姬看望了。

2d Role-play the conversation. 分角色表演对话。

课文朗读 2d

Paul: Hi, Lisa. How was your weekend? 嗨，莉萨。你周末过得怎么样?

Lisa: Great, thanks. 太棒了，谢谢。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Paul: What did you do? 你干了什么?

Lisa: I worked as/æz, əz/⑦ a guide at the Natural/'nætʃərəl/ History Museum. 我在自然历史博物馆里当导游了。

Paul: Really?⑧ How interesting!⑨真的吗? 多么有趣啊!

Lisa: Yeah, it was fun. They have a butterfly/'bʌtə(r)flaɪ/ house with⑩ over 200 kinds of butterflies!I told the visitors/'vɪzɪtə(r)z/ about them and their living habits⑪. Did you have a good weekend? 是的,很有趣。他们有一所有 200 多种蝴蝶的蝴蝶房!我向游客讲述它们和它们的生活习性。你的周末过得愉快吗?

Paul: Yeah, it was good, but I'm kind of tired/'taɪə(r)d/⑫ now. I stayed/steɪd/⑬ up⑭ late to watch the soccer game. 是的,很好,但是现在我有点累了。我熬夜看足球比赛了。

Ⅱ. 考点精讲点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点应用 •考点批注

★went boating

① **go boating 意为"去划船"。**



"go + doing"形式表示"去做某事",常用于表达从事某一体育活动或休闲活动。

e.g. It is interesting for children to go boating in the park.

对孩子们来说去公园划船是很有趣的。

★camped by the lake

② **camp**/kæmp/*v.* **扎营;搭帐篷**

e.g. Because of the rain, we can't go camping today.

因为下雨,今天我们不能去野营了。

Let's go back to the camp. It's getting dark.

让我们回营地吧。天黑下来了。

Did you go to the summer camp last year?

去年你参加夏令营了吗?

camp 的用法总结
- 作动词,"扎营;搭帐篷"。
  go camping 去野营
  camp out = camp 野营
- 作名词,"营地;度假营"。
  summer camp 夏令营
  winter camp 冬令营

考题在线 1 写出空缺处单词的正确形式,只写一词。

He went _____ (野营) with us and taught us how to put up a tent.

[苏州]

点拨:camp 意为"野营"。由于空格处只能填一词,要和 went 构成短语,went camping,意为"去野营"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

素养行动：背起帐篷，与家人、朋友结伴，到野外找个合适的地方安营扎寨，体验一番露营生活，真正依偎在大自然的怀抱里吧。

素养行动结果：与自然和谐相处（harmony with nature），与自然零距离接触。

核心素养之文化意识

走进自然，热爱生活

说到露营，国内热衷于这项活动方式的人并不多。在国外，露营是很普遍(common)很受欢迎的(popular)家庭活动。大部分家庭会选择野营车(camper)旅行；另一种方式则主要为年轻人所喜爱，只带一些简单的东西，随时随地就搭起一顶帐篷(tent)。露营总是能与日常普通的家居生活拉开距离，能最大程度地亲近大自然的草木土地，更能自由自在地还原并感受人类生活起初的原始本色。露营经历往往使人觉得更加刺激和难忘。

★What did you do last weekend, Lucy?

③句法分析

【重点】本句是一般过去时的特殊疑问句，由特殊疑问词 What 引导，一般用来询问他人在过去干了什么，结构为“What + did + 主语 +do+ 表示过去的时间状语?”，其中 do 为动词原形。注意回答时动词用过去式。

e.g. —What did you do last night? 你昨晚做什么了?

—I watched *Operation Red Sea*. 我看《红海行动》了。

敲黑板 前有助动词帮助提问，谓语动词用原形!

考题在线 2 句型转换

He cut the watermelon into four pieces.(改为一般疑问句) [绥化]

_____ he _____ the watermelon into four pieces?

点拨:用语法分析法解题。由原句中的主语 He 和谓语动词 cut 可知，句子是一般过去时，因此要借助于 did 进行提问，谓语动词要用原形。

④last weekend 上周末

e.g. He went to the beach last Sunday. 上周末他去海滩了。

“last + 表示时间的词（如 night, weekend, month, year, Sunday, week 等）”构成表示过去的时间状语，其前通常省略 at, on, in 等介词。

★I fed some (sheep/cows)

敲黑板 sheep 的复数形式依然是 sheep!

⑤sheep/ʃiːp/ *n.* 羊；绵羊

e.g. How many sheep are there on the farm? 农场上有多少只绵羊?

拓展：常见的单复数同形的名词：

Chinese 中国人 Japanese 日本人 fish 鱼 deer 鹿

考题在线 3 My uncle keeps many _____ on the farm. And I often help him feed them.

A. cow B. horse C. pig D. sheep



one sheep 一只绵羊



many sheep 许多绵羊

★Becky did.

⑥句法分析

【难点】本句是一个省略句，用 did 代替了上句中的行为动作，完整回答应是“Becky visited her grandma.”，该结构是为了避免重复上句中的行为动作。英语中常用 do 的适当形式 (do, does, did) 来代替上文出现的动作。

e.g. —My mother likes the talk show *The Reader*.

我妈妈喜欢脱口秀节目《朗读者》。

—So does my mother. 我妈妈也是。

敲黑板 时态也要与上句保持一致哦!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考题在线 4 —Who got to the station on time?

—I _____! In fact, I arrived there 5 minutes earlier. [兰州改编]

A. was B. got C. did D. do

★I worked as a guide at the Natural History Museum.

⑦ **work as 从事……工作** as 后接职业名词。

e.g. Her son is working as a math teacher. 她的儿子是一位数学老师。

My uncle works for the government. 我叔叔在为政府工作。

The famous actor is working on his new movie.

这位著名的演员正在拍他的新电影。

The math problem is too difficult. I can't work it out.

这道数学题太难了。我算不出来。

- work for 为……工作
- work on 从事；忙于
- work sth. out 算出；解决

考题在线 5 Xiongan New Area will help _____ big problems in Beijing, such as traffic jams. [济宁]

A. set out B. check out C. work out D. give out

e.g. He works as an actor. 他是一名演员。

As a student, you should study hard for our motherland.

作为一名学生，你应当为我们的祖国而努力学习。

as 用作介词，意思是"作为；当作"。

辨析：as 与 like

as	实际的身份或地位。 He spoke as a teacher. 他作为老师发言。
like	与……相似；以与……相类似的方式。 He spoke like a teacher. 他讲话很像是老师。

拓展：【难点】 as 还可以作连词，其用法为：

- as
  - "当……时"，引导时间状语从句。 We sing as we walk. 我们边走边唱。
  - "因为；由于"，引导原因状语从句。 I can't go with you as I have too much homework to do today. 我不能和你一起去，因为今天我有许多的家庭作业要做。
  - "照……方式"，引导比较或方式状语从句。 Please do as your teacher says. 请按照你老师所说的话去做。

No one can call back yesterday.
昨日不复来。

考题在线 6 _____ a teacher, John thinks that his main duty is to help the students to become better learners.

A. As B. By C. About D. For

点拨：用语境判定法解题。As 作为，当作；By 被，通过；About 关于；For 为了。由"帮助学生成为更好的学习者"可知前面是"作为一名教师"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★Really?

⑧交际用语口语中“Really？”常用于在听到对方的话语后表示感兴趣或惊讶，意思是“真的吗？”或“是吗？”。

e.g. —Tom doesn't want to be a teacher. 汤姆不想成为一名教师。

—Really? 真的吗?

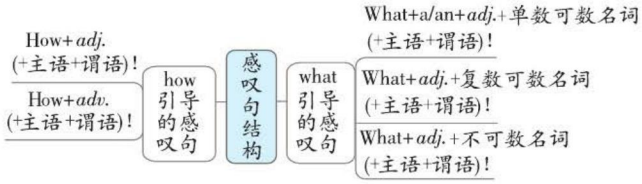
★How interesting!

⑨【句法分析】该句为一个省略了主语和谓语的感叹句，其完整句子应为“How interesting it was!”。

知识微课

拓展：【重点】感叹句的结构：

敲黑板 how修饰形容词；what修饰名词！



考题在线7 _____ exciting it is! Our country put her first home-made aircraft carrier(国产航空母舰) in the water on April 26 in Dalian.[东营]

A. How　　B. What　　C. How an　　D. What an

考题在线8 _____ special classes we had! We have learned a lot about paper cutting.　　[青岛]

A. What　　B. What a　　C. How a　　D. How

点拨:用语法分析法解题。句意为“我们上了多么特殊的课啊！我们已学会很多有关剪纸的知识”。分析句子结构可知主谓部分是we had，感叹部分中心词是复数名词classes，因此应用What来修饰。

★They have a butterfly house with over 200 kinds of butterflies!

介词短语with glasses作后置定语，修饰前面的名词girl。

⑩ **with 带有；具有**

e.g. The girl with glasses is my cousin. 戴眼镜的这个女孩是我表妹。

(with其他用法见本书Unit 5 Period 4 考点7)

考题在线9 I think tea will taste better _____ some milk in it.[广东]

A. for　　B. with　　C. from　　D. at

★I told the visitors about them and their living habits.

living此处是动词live(活，居住，过日子)的动词-ing形式，作定语。

⑪ **living habits 生活习惯**

e.g. You have to think of your living habits. 你不得不考虑一下你的生活习惯。

living
- 【难点】形容词，意为“活着的”，all living things 所有生物。
  - Is the fish still living? 鱼还活着吗?
  - They didn't find any living things on the moon. 他们在月球上没有发现任何活着的东西。
- 名词，“生计；谋生”，make a living 谋生。
  - He made a living by writing. 他靠写作谋生。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

★..., but I'm kind of tired now.

⑫ **tired**/ˈtaɪə(r)d/ *adj.* 疲倦的

e.g. If you are tired, you'd better stop to have a rest.

如果你累了，你最好停下来休息一下。

【易错点】辨析：tired 与 tiring

tired	疲倦的；厌烦	用来描述人
tiring	令人困倦的	用来描述事或物

考题在线 10 It was a _____ day and she felt very _____. [河源]

A. tiring; tired B. tiring; tiring C. tired; tiring D. tired; tired

e.g. I'm tired of the boring show. 我对这无聊的演出感到厌烦。

对……感到厌烦

★I stayed up late to watch the soccer game.

⑬ **stay up** 深夜不睡；熬夜

stay up late 意为"熬夜；深夜不睡"。

e.g. Many students want to stay up to watch the show.

许多学生想熬夜看这个节目。

考题在线 11 My parents _____ to see *In the Name of People*(《人民的名义》) last weekend. [黄石]

A. picked up B. stayed up C. set up D. took up

点拨：用辨析法解题。pick up "捡起"；stay up "熬夜"；set up "建立；创建"；take up "开始（从事于）"。由"看《人民的名义》"可知 stay up 符合语境。句意为"上周末我的父母熬夜看《人民的名义》"。

⑭ **stay**/steɪ/ *v.* 停留 后常接介词短语表示停留的地点。

e.g. It's raining outside, so we have to stay at home.

外面正在下雨，因此我们不得不呆在家里。

拓展：① stay 可以作连系动词，意为"继续是，保持"，其后常接形容词作表语。

e.g. The weather will stay fine for several days. 天气将持续晴朗几天。

② stay 可以作名词，意为"停留；逗留（时间）"。

e.g. During my stay in Beijing, I had a good time.

在北京逗留期间我玩得很高兴。

★与 stay 相关的短语：
- stay in 呆在室内
- stay away from 离开
- stay out 呆在户外
- stay at home 呆在家里

核心素养之良好习惯

科学休息，学会生活

现在，越来越多的青少年养成了熬夜(stay up)的坏习惯(bad habits)，可能正在熬夜的你们暂时没有感觉到太大的变化，但是久而久之，熬夜就会对身体产生巨大的危害(great harm)。熬夜会导致免疫力下降，熬夜时会产生疲劳(tiredness)，精神不佳的状况，还会导致失眠，影响身高、使记忆力下降、视力下降、脾气暴躁等。

素养行动：养成良好的作息习惯，早睡早起(go to bed early and get up early)，和熬夜说再见！

素养行动结果：培养健康的生活方式(have a healthy lifestyle)，精力充沛地迎接每一天！

考题在线答案 1.camping 2.Did; cut 3.D 4.C 5.C 6.A 7.A 8.A 9.B 10.A 11.B

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

☞(答案见305页)

听力技巧

匹配法 有些听力题是关于对所发生的事情进行描述的，其中会涉及人物、时间、地点、事件和感受等。题目的设置往往是把人物和其他相关内容相匹配，即某人在某个时间或某个地点做了什么，有什么样的感受。所以认真审题很关键，可以先对题目和选项的内容进行梳理，做到心中有数，然后在听的过程中把相关的内容匹配起来，选出正确的答案。

听力过程

课文听力1b

一、听 1b，完成下面表格

Lucy's weekend	in the morning	in the afternoon	at night
on Saturday	played badminton	1. _____	went to the cinema
on Sunday	2. _____	by the lake	3. _____	did her homework

二、听 2a，选择正确的答案

课文听力2a

4. Becky _____ last weekend.

A. visited her grandma

B. stayed at home

C. went to the farm

5. What did Carol do last weekend?

A. Did her homework.

B. Studied for the English test.

C. Went to the cinema.

6. Jack _____ last weekend.

A. stayed at home and did his homework

B. visited his grandpa and went fishing

C. went to a farm and fed some cows

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础 20分

☞(答案见305页)

一、根据句意及所给提示填空

1. Bob and his friend went _____ (boat) last Sunday.

2. —We went to different _____(海滩) with our parents.

—R_____? Wonderful!

3. Many v_____ went to Qingdao to spend their vacations in summer.

4. Many children like going c_____ during their summer vacations.

5. Do you want to visit the _____(nature) History Museum?

二、单项选择

6. Li Ming didn't visit Hong Kong-Zhuhai-Macao Bridge (港珠澳大桥) yesterday, but I _____.

A. visited B. visit C. did D. didn't

7. Mr. Green works _____ a cleaner in the school dining hall.

A. for B. as C. of D. by

8. —How many _____ can you see in the picture?

—Two. [广安]

A. dog B. child C. sheeps D. sheep

9. —Tom, what's wrong with you? You look tired.

—Oh, I _____ late to watch a football game last night. I slept for only two hours. [荆门]

A. gave up B. looked up

C. set up D. stayed up

10. _____ smart the driverless car (无人驾驶汽车)is! I really want to have one. [广东]

A. What B. What a

C. What an D. How

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

三、按照要求完成句子

11. He went to Shanghai last week.（改为一般疑问句）

_____ he _____ to Shanghai last week?

12. A boy watched the movie *Amazing China*《厉害了，我的国》). The boy has big eyes.（合并为一句）

A boy _____ _____ _____ watched the movie *Amazing China*.

13. 杰克的生活习惯不健康，他经常感到疲惫不堪。（完成相应的英语句子）

Jack's _____ _____ aren't healthy, and he often feels _____.

14. My grandparents often watch TV after dinner.（用 yesterday 改写句子）

My grandparents _____ TV after dinner _____.

15. Jack went to <u>the beach</u> with his classmates last weekend.（对画线部分提问）

_____ _____ Jack _____ with his classmates last weekend ?

Period 2 Section A（Grammar Focus-3c）

I. 课文原文、译文

Grammar Focus 语法聚焦

What did you do last weekend? 上周末你干了什么?	I did my homework./We went boating. 我做我的家庭作业了。/ 我们去划船了。
Who visited her grandma? 谁看望了她祖母?	Becky did. 贝姬看望了。
Where did she go last weekend? 上周末她去哪儿了?	She went to a farm. 她去了一个农场。
Who did she go with? 她和谁去的?	She went with her classmates. 她和她的同班同学们去的。

3a **Fill in the blanks with *who*, *what*, *when*, *where* or *how*.** 用 who, what, when, where 或 how 填空。

1 **A:** _____ did you do last weekend? 上个周末你干_____了?

B: I played badminton on Saturday. 我周六打羽毛球了。

A: Sounds fun! _____ did you play with? 听起来很有趣！你和_____打的?

B: I played with my father. He's really good! 我和我爸爸打的。他真的很好!

2 **A:** _____ was your weekend? 你的周末是_____?

B: It was great! I had so much fun! 很好！我玩得很开心!

A: _____ did you go? 你去_____了?

B: The weather was beautiful, so I went to the beach with my parents. 天气很好，所以我和我的父母去海滩了。

3 **A:** _____ did Jim lose? 吉姆丢_____了?

B: He lost his keys. He often loses things. 他丢了他的钥匙。他经常丢东西。

A: That's too bad. _____ did he lose them? 那太糟糕了。他_____丢了它们?

B: I heard it was yesterday. 我听说是昨天。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3b Complete the passage with the correct forms of the words in the box. 用方框中单词的正确形式完成这段文章。

say 说　be 是　climb 爬　see 看见　run away/əˈweɪ/① 跑开

A family of mice were in the kitchen on Saturday morning when they _____ a big cat. Baby /ˈbeɪbi/ Mouse/maʊs/ _____ afraid and _____ onto his father's back. Father Mouse shouted /ʃaʊtɪd/② at the cat, "Woof/wʊf/, woof!" The cat quickly _____. "Wow, Dad, you're good!" _____ Baby Mouse. "Well, son, that's why it's important to learn a second language /ˈlæŋgwɪdʒ/,"③ answered Father Mouse. 在星期六的早上，老鼠一家正在厨房，在那时，他们_____了一只大猫。小老鼠_____害怕就_____了他爸爸的背上。老鼠爸爸冲着猫大声吼叫："汪汪，汪汪！"猫迅速_____。"哇，爸爸，你好厉害！"小老鼠_____。"所以嘛，儿子，这就是为什么多学一门语言重要啦。"老鼠爸爸回答。

3c Think of two things you did last weekend. Draw pictures of them. Your classmates guess what you did. 想一想上个周末你做的两件事。把它们画下来。你的同班同学们猜一猜你干了什么。

You went to the mountains! 你去爬山了！

Ⅱ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注　•考点应用

★run away

敲黑板 run away 是不及物动词短语，其后不能跟宾语。

① **run away 逃走；跑开**

e.g. He ran away from school. 他逃学了。

Don't go away. I have a question to ask you.

别走开。我有个问题要问你。

Who will look after these children when I'm away? 我走了之后，谁来照看这些孩子？

away 是副词，常与 run, go, walk, drive, ride 等动词搭配。

away 作 be 动词的表语。

注意："be away from+ 某地 +for + 一段时间"，表示"离开某地一段时间"，而 leave 是瞬间动词，不能表示离开一段时间。

e.g. He was away from school for two weeks last year.

去年他离开了学校两周。

He left here last week. 他上周离开了这里。

away 构成的短语：
- go away 走开
- give away 分发
- take away 拿走
- put away 把……收起来；放好
- stay away from 离开

考题在线 1 A true friend will never _____ from you when you're in trouble. [重庆 A]

A. take away　B. run away　C. put off　D. get off

点拨：take away 拿走；run away 跑开；离开；put off 推迟；get off 动身。句意为"当你处于困境时，一位真正的朋友从来不会从你身边离开"。

★Father Mouse shouted at the cat, "Woof, woof!"

② **shout**/ʃaʊt/ *v.* **呼叫；喊叫**

e.g. There is no need to shout. 没必要喊叫。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

【重点】辨析：shout at 与 shout to

shout at	冲……大声叫嚷；吼（非善意）
shout to	对……大声喊叫；无恶意（多因距离远）

e.g. Shouting to me is OK, but shouting at me isn't OK. 向我呼喊可以，但冲我大喊大叫不行。

拓展：shout 可作名词，表示“呼喊；喊叫声”。

e.g. I heard a distant shout. 我听到了远处的一声喊叫。

考题在线 2 He was so angry that he shouted _____ everyone.

A. at　　B. to　　C. for　　D. with

点拨：根据前面“他如此生气”可知后面的喊叫是非善意的。



shout at

★..., that's why it's important to learn a second language...

③【句法分析】**That's why...** 意为“那就是……的原因。”**why** 引导表语从句，**why** 后跟的是结果。

e.g. That's why he got angry with me.

那就是他对我生气的原因。强调结果



shout to

拓展：【难点】That's because. . . 意为“那是因为……”，because 后接的是原因。

e.g. That's because he didn't understand me.

那是因为他没有理解我。强调原因

考题在线答案 1.B　2.A

Ⅲ. 单元语法沙龙　夺取中考语法满分

一般过去时的特殊疑问句

考点 1 特殊疑问词

常用的特殊疑问词有 what, who, whose, which, when, where, why, how 等；还有 what 与其他名词构成的短语，如 what color, what size 等，以及 how 与其他形容词构成的短语，如 how many, how old, how much, how far, how long 等。

考点 2 一般过去时的特殊疑问句的构成

考向 1：特殊疑问词作主语或特殊疑问词加名词作主语时，疑问句的构成为：特殊疑问词（＋名词）＋谓语动词的过去式＋其他?

e.g. Who went camping yesterday?

昨天谁去露营了?

Whose bike was broken just now?

刚才谁的自行车坏了?

考向 2：特殊疑问词作其他成分时，特殊疑问句的构成为：

①特殊疑问词＋was/were＋主语＋形容词＋其他?

敲黑板 这是含有 be 动词的一般过去时的特殊疑问句!

e.g. Why was your mother worried yesterday?

昨天你妈妈为什么担心?

②特殊疑问词＋did＋主语＋动词原形＋其他?

敲黑板 这是含有实义动词的一般过去时的特殊疑问句!

e.g. What did he listen to last night?

昨天晚上他听什么了?

③特殊疑问词＋情态动词过去式＋主语＋动词原形＋其他?

敲黑板 这是含有情态动词的一般过去时的特殊疑问句!

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

e.g. Where could they go? 他们能去哪里?

考题在线 1 —_____ did you stop playing?

—Because I was tired. [北京]

A. How B. Why C. When D. Where

点拨: 由答语“因为我累了。”可知问句是问原因。特殊疑问词 why 用于对原因提问。

考题在线 2 —You had a study tour last week. _____ did you stay in Changsha?

—For three days. [湘西]

A. How soon B. How long

C. How far

点拨: 用关键信息法解题。根据答语“For three days.”可知，问句询问“多长时间”。

考点 3 一般过去时和一般现在时的区别

	一般过去时	一般现在时
含义	表示过去某个时间发生的动作或存在的状态。	表示现阶段经常发生的动作或存在的状态；表示习惯、能力等；表示永恒的真理。
时间标志词	yesterday, last weekend, last night, last Saturday, in 2010	often, usually, sometimes, always, every day, every weekend
陈述句	谓语动词全部用过去式。	主语是第三人称单数时，谓语动词用第三人称单数形式。
一般疑问句	be(was, were)/did 开头	be(am, is, are)/do/does 开头
特殊疑问句	特殊疑问词 +was/were+ 主语 + 其他? 特殊疑问词 + did + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?	特殊疑问词 +am/is/are+ 主语 + 其他? 特殊疑问词 + do/does + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他?

考题在线 3 —Jerry, have you ever been to the Great Wall?

—Yes. I _____ there with my parents last year. [天津]

A. go B. went

C. will go D. have gone

考题在线 4 Li Lei is interested in English and he _____(watch) BBC News every day. [兰州]

考题在线答案 1.B 2.B 3.B 4.watches

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练 夺取中考语法满分

(答案见306页)

一、单项选择

1. —_____ they last year?

—They were in America.

A. How were B. How was

C. Where were D. Where was

2. —Did they have great fun in Shanghai?

—_____. They wanted to go there again.

A. Yes, they do B. Yes, they did

C. No, they didn't D. Yes, they were

3. —Excuse me, sir. This is a non-smoking(禁烟的) room.

—Oh, sorry. I _____ the sign(标志).

A. don't see B. didn't see

C. won't see D. doesn't see

4. —Who cleaned the classroom yesterday?

—Linda _____! She was on duty yesterday.

A. was B. does C. did D. do

5. —Are you going anywhere?

—I _____ about visiting my sister, but I have changed my mind. [河南]

A. think B. have thought

C. will think D. thought

二、对画线部分提问

6. His trip to the Great Wall was excellent.

_____ _____ his trip to the Great Wall?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

7. Jack had an English exam yesterday.
_____ _____ Jack _____ an English exam?

8. They went to the mountains last week.
_____ _____ they _____ last week?

9. Ann went shopping with her sister.
_____ _____ Ann _____ shopping with?

10. He visited his uncle last Sunday.
_____ _____ he _____ last Sunday?

Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）

I. 课文原文、译文

1a Here are some things that Sally and Jim did yesterday. Match the activities with the pictures. 这是萨莉和吉姆昨天做的一些事情。将活动与图片相匹配。

1. _____ sang and played the guitar_____唱歌并弹吉他
2. _____ studied for a test_____为一个测验学习
3. _____ had dinner with friends_____和朋友们吃饭
4. _____ went to the library_____去图书馆
5. _____ flew/flu:/ a kite/kaɪt/① _____放风筝
6. _____ swam in a swimming pool _____在游泳池里游泳

1b Do you think the activities in 1a are fun? Draw a happy face ☺ or an unhappy face ☹ under each picture. 你认为 1a 中的这些活动有趣吗？在每幅图片下画上笑脸☺或哭脸☹。

1c Listen. What did Sally and Jim do last weekend? Complete the chart.
听录音。上个周末萨莉和吉姆干了什么？完成图表。

课文听力 1c

Sally 萨莉	Jim 吉姆
did her homework 做她的家庭作业	_____
_____	_____
_____	_____

1d Make a conversation with a partner. Talk about what Sally and Jim did last weekend. 和一个搭档编对话。谈论萨莉和吉姆上个周末做的事。

—Who went to the library? 谁去了图书馆？
—Sally did. 萨莉去了。

1e Make a conversation. Ask what your partner did last weekend. 编对话。询问你的搭档上个周末做了什么事情。

—Did you do anything interesting② last weekend? 上个周末你做有趣的事了吗？
—Not really, but I visited my sister. 事实上没有，但我去看望了我姐姐。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀 稳拿中考听力 20分

(答案见306页)

听力过程

听 1c，选择正确的答案

课文听力 1c

1. Where was Sally last Saturday?

A. In the school.

B. At home.

C. On a farm.

2. What did Sally do on Saturday?

A. Studied for a test. B. Washed her clothes.

C. Did her sister's homework.

3. The boy _____ on Saturday morning.

A. had dinner with friends

B. sang and played the guitar

C. stayed at home

4. When did the boy fly a kite in the park?

A. On Saturday afternoon.

B. On Saturday night.

C. On Sunday afternoon.

5. The boy's Monday morning wasn't fun because _____.

A. he didn't do his homework

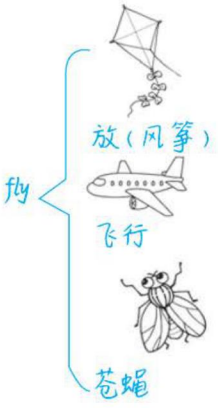
B. he was late for school

C. he went out with his friends

Ⅲ. 考点精讲 点拨 稳拿中考基础 20分

•考点批注 •考点应用

fly 此处用作及物动词，意为"放飞（风筝等）"，其过去式为 flew. fly a kite 相当于 fly kites，意为"放风筝"。



★flew a kite

① fly a kite 放风筝

e.g. Some children are flying kites in the park. 一些孩子正在公园里放风筝。

My father helped me to fly the model plane.

我的父亲帮助我操纵飞机模型。

拓展：(1)fly 还可用作不及物动词，意为"乘飞机；飞；飞逝"。fly to... 意为"飞到……"，也可意为"乘飞机去……"，相当于 go to...by plane/air。

e.g. This kind of birds flies to the south in winter. 这种鸟在冬天飞到南方。

(2)fly 还可用作名词，意为"苍蝇"，其复数形式为 flies。

e.g. There is a fly flying in the room. 房间里有一只苍蝇在飞。

考题在线 1 根据句意及汉语提示，写出单词的正确形式，填一词。

They are going to _____（放）a kite next Sunday. [桂林]

★Did you do anything interesting last weekend?

② anything interesting 有趣的事

形容词修饰不定代词时应后置，在句中作后置定语。

e.g. He told us something interesting.

他告诉了我们一些有趣的事情。

This isn't anything important. 这并不是什么重要的东西。

拓展：【难点】anything 的其他用法

（见本书 Unit 11 Period 1 考点 4）

考题在线 2 —Is there _____ in today's newspaper?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

—No. I think everything in it is boring. [安顺]

A. interesting anything B. somebody interesting

C. interesting something D. anything interesting

考题在线答案 1.fly 2.D

Period 4 Section B（2a–2c）

课时导入

I. 课文原文、译文

2a What kinds of animals are people sometimes afraid of? Why? Make a list. 人们有时候害怕哪几种动物？为什么？列一张清单。

2b Read about Lisa's weekend and answer the questions. 读一读关于莉萨的周末的文章并回答问题。

A Weekend to Remember 一个难忘的周末

课文朗读 2b

My sister finished high/haɪ/① school two weeks ago/əˈgəʊ/②. As a special gift, our parents took us to India. Last weekend was interesting but scary.

我姐姐两周前中学毕业了。作为一份特殊的礼物，我们的爸妈带着我们去了印度。上个周末是有趣的但又是恐怖的。

We went camping in a small village in India/ˈɪndiə/. First, we took a long bus ride③ to a lake in the countryside. There we put up④ our tents/tents/ and made a fire to keep us warm⑤ and cook food on. On the first night, we just sat under the moon/muːn/ and told each other⑥ stories. But I was so tired that⑦ I went to sleep early.

我们在印度的一个小村庄野营。首先，我们乘公共汽车走了很远的路，到了乡村的一个湖泊。在那里我们搭起帐篷，生火取暖并做饭。在头一天夜里，我们只是坐在月亮下，互相讲故事。但是我太累了，所以早早睡着了。

The next morning, my sister and I got a terrible surprise/sə(r)ˈpraɪz/⑧. When we looked out of⑨ our tent, we saw a big snake/sneɪk/ sleeping⑩ near the fire. I was so scared/skeəd, skerd/⑪ that I couldn't move/muːv/. We shouted to our parents to let them know⑫ about the danger. My dad started /ˈstɑː(r)tɪd/⑬ to jump/dʒʌmp/ up and down in their tent. This woke/wəʊk/⑭ the snake up and it moved into/ˈɪntuː/ the forest/ˈfɒrɪst, ˈfɔːrɪst/ near the lake. My dad told me later that snakes don't have ears/ɪəz/ but can feel things moving. He also told me it was important not to go near a snake. This was a very useful lesson for me.

第二天早上，姐姐和我吃了一惊。当我们往我们的帐篷外面看时，我们看见一条大蛇在篝火附近睡觉。我是那么害怕，一动都不敢动。我们向父母大喊，以便让他们知道这个危险。我爸爸开始在他们的帐篷里上下蹦跳。这弄醒了那条蛇，它爬到湖边的森林里去了。后来我爸爸告诉我蛇没有耳朵，但是能感到东西的移动。他还告诉我重要的是不要靠近蛇。这对我来说是一堂非常有用的一课。

1. How was Lisa's weekend? 莉萨的周末怎么样？

2. Where did Lisa and her family go last weekend? 上个周末莉萨和她的家人去哪里了？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. How did Lisa feel when she saw the snake? 当莉萨看见蛇时，她感觉怎么样?

4. What did Lisa and her sister do? 莉萨和她的姐姐做什么了?

5. What did their parents do? Why did they do that? 她们的父母做什么了? 他们为什么那样做?

6. What lesson did Lisa learn from the weekend? 莉萨从那个周末吸取到了什么教训?

2c Put the phrases in order according to the passage. Then use them to retell the story. 根据这篇文章，把这些短语按顺序排列。然后运用它们复述这个故事。

_____ snake went into the forest 蛇爬进了森林

_____ put up our tents and cooked food 搭起我们的帐篷并做饭

_____ learned a useful lesson 吸取了一次有用的教训

_____ saw a snake and shouted to parents for help 看到了一条蛇，向父母大声求救

_____ snakes can't hear but can feel things moving 蛇听不见但能感到东西移动

_____ my dad jumped up and down in his tent 我爸爸在他的帐篷里上下蹦跳

__1__ took a bus to a small village in India 乘公共汽车到了印度的一个小村庄

_____ told stories under the moon, then went to sleep 在月亮下讲故事，然后去睡觉

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练 专攻中考阅读 20分

☞（答案见306页）

阅读策略

把握线索法（记叙文的线索是贯穿全文始终的一条脉络，体现了材料之间的内在联系，它把所有材料联结成一个有机体。抓住了线索，就能理顺文章的内容，掌握文章的结构，理解文章的中心思想。叙述线索可以有多种，如时间线索、事件线索、人物线索、地点线索、见闻线索、情感线索等。）

拓展阅读

阅读过程

一、速读 2b，选择正确的答案

1. What's the passage mainly about?（主旨大意题）

A. How to wake up snakes.

B. A weekend to remember.

C. A good place to travel to.

D. A happy trip.

二、细读文章，完成下列题目

2. How was Lisa's trip?（细节理解题）

A. Interesting but scary.

B. Exciting and interesting.

C. Difficult but interesting.

D. Boring but relaxing.

3. ⊙ How did Lisa feel when she saw the snake?（细节理解题）

A. Sad. B. Scared.

C. Happy. D. Angry.

4. ⊙ Why did Lisa's dad jump up and down in their tent?（细节理解题）

A. To play with the snake.

B. To let his daughters be happy.

C. To keep himself and his wife warm.

D. To wake the snake up and make it run away.

5. ⊙ From the weekend Lisa learned that _____.（推理判断题）

A. shouting at snakes is good

B. snakes can feel quiet things

C. it was important not to go near a snake

D. snakes have ears and they can hear well

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

•考点应用 •考点批注

My sister finished high school two weeks ago.

① **high**/haɪ/*adj.* & *adv.* 高的（地）

e.g. Are you in high school or primary school? 你上中学还是小学?

The height of the mountain is 4000 meters. 山的高度是 4000 米。

The kites are flying high in the sky. 风筝在空中高高地飞。

high 此处用作形容词，意为“高的”。high school 意为“中学”。high 的名词形式是 height。

high 还可作副词，主要修饰动词，意为“高地”。

考题在线 1 Mount Tai is 1545 meters h_____ above sea level. [济宁]

② **ago**/əˈgəʊ/ *adv.* 以前

e.g. I watched the program *Legal Report* a few days ago.

几天前我看了《今日说法》节目。

ago 是一般过去时的时间状语，可作为判断时态的依据。常用于“一段时间 +ago”的结构中，表示“多长时间以前”。

辨析：ago 与 before

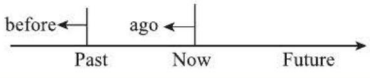
ago	在现在以前	以现在为基准	与一般过去时连用	不可单独作状语
before	在过去以前	以过去为基准	常与完成时或一般过去时连用	可单独作状语

e.g. There wasn't a high-speed railway station here two years ago. 两年前这里没有高铁站。

He said we had met before. 他说我们以前见过面。

速记 小筏：立足现在看以前，ago 地位不可撼；若是过去看以前，before 出来挑重担。

图解助记：before 与 ago



First, we took a long bus ride to a lake in the countryside.

③ **ride**/raɪd/*n.* 旅行；短途旅程

e.g. Would you like to go for a ride? 你想去兜风吗?

He often takes a ride when he is free. 当他有空时，他经常去兜风。

I learnt to ride a horse when I was a child. 当我是个孩子的时候就学骑马了。

ride 用作动词表示“骑（马）；乘坐”。

考题在线 2 China has seen a trend(潮流) of _____ shared bikes since last year. [盐城]

A. ride B. riding C. take D. taking

点拨：用固定搭配法解题。介词 of 后接动词的 -ing 形式，故排除 A、C 两项；ride“骑；乘”，take“乘坐”，由后面的“shared bikes”可知要用 riding 与之搭配。句意为“自从去年以来，中国已经见证了骑行共享单车的潮流”。

ride 在此处用作可数名词，意为“（乘车的）旅行；短途旅程”。

There we put up our tents and made a fire to keep us warm...

④ **put up** 搭起；举起

e.g. It's going to rain. Let's put up the tent. 天快要下雨了。我们把帐篷搭起来吧。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

This is our new picture. Let's put it up on the wall.

这是我们的新照片。让我们把它贴到墙上吧。

考题在线 3 —How beautiful the mountain is! I'd like to _____ a tent there.

—You'd better not. [自贡]

A. put on B. put off C. put up

考题在线 4 A primary school in England has _____ signs at its three entrances (入口), saying: Greet your child with a smile, not a mobile. [临沂]

A. put into B. put off C. put on D. put up

点拨:用题眼法解题。由题眼 signs 可知此处表示"张贴指示牌",应用 put up。句意为"英国的一所小学在它的三个入口处已经张贴了指示牌,上面写着:笑迎你的孩子,而不是盯着你的手机"。

put up 此处意为"搭起";put up 还可意为"举起;张贴;建造"。put 的过去式是 put。

注意:put up 是"动词+副词"的结构,当宾语是代词时,要放在 put 和 up 中间。

★ put 的相关短语

- put on 穿上(衣服)
- put down 着陆;写下
- put away 放好;把……收起来

⑤ "keep +宾语+宾语补足语"用法

(见本书 Unit 4 Period 5 考点 1)

★ **On the first night, we just sat under the moon and told each other stories.**

⑥ **each other 互相;彼此**

e.g. The two cousins talk to each other by e-mail.

这两个堂兄弟通过电子邮件相互交谈。

考题在线 5 当我们有不同意见时,应该相互理解。(完成译句) [重庆 A]

When we have different ideas, we should understand _____ _____.

each other 相当于 one another。英语中 each other 为代词,在句中作动词或介词的宾语。

★ **But I was so tired that I went to sleep early.**

⑦ **so...that... 如此……以至于……**

【重点】【难点】【易错点】so...that... 同义结构转换和辨析

that 后跟的是句子! 敲黑板

so...that...	如此……以至于……(that 后接从句)	She is so young that she can't go to school. 她太小了,以至于不能去上学。
too...to...	太……而不能……(to 后接动词原形)	She is too young to go to school. 她太小了而不能去上学。
not...enough to...	不够……去……(to 后接动词原形)	She is not old enough to go to school. 她还不够大,不能去上学。

e.g. He got up early so that he could catch the bus.

他起得很早,以便能赶上公共汽车。

Sun Li is such an excellent actress that people like her very much.

孙俪是一位如此优秀的女演员,以至于人们非常喜欢她。

①so that 意为"以便;为了",引导目的状语从句。

②"如此……以至于……"的另外一种表达方式是"such + a/an + n. +that +从句"。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

考题在线 6 —What do you think of the new movie *Wandering Earth*（《流浪地球》）?

【导学号: 8811889】[黄冈]

—It's _____ wonderful _____ I really like it.

A. so; that　　B. such; that　　C. too; to　　D. enough; to

点拨:用语法分析法解题。句意为"——你认为新电影《流浪地球》怎么样? ——它是如此精彩以至于我真的很喜欢它"。由第二个空格后是句子可知，此处应填 that；wonderful 是形容词，其后没有名词，故用 so 修饰。

考题在线 7 Tina was so young that she couldn't dress herself.（同义句转换）

Tina wasn't _____ _____ to dress herself.



★The next morning, my sister and I got a terrible surprise.

⑧ **surprise**/sə(r)'praɪz/ *n.* 惊奇；惊讶

e.g. What a nice surprise it is! 真是让人惊喜!

【重点】【易错点】辨析: surprise, surprised 与 surprising

surprise	*n.*	惊讶	get a surprise 吃惊 give sb. a surprise 给某人一个惊喜 to one's surprise 令某人惊讶的是
	v.	使吃惊	surprise sb. 使某人感到意外
surprised	*adj.*	(人)惊讶的	be surprised at sth. (人)对某事/物感到惊讶 feel/be surprised to do sth. (人)做某事很惊讶
surprising	*adj.*	(物)令人吃惊的	surprising + *n.* 令人吃惊的事物

e.g. I got a surprise when I saw him. 当我看到他时我吃了一惊。

Bill looked at him in surprise. 比尔惊讶地看着他。

The news surprised us. 这条消息使我们吃惊。

We are surprised at the surprising news. 我们对这则惊人的新闻感到惊讶。

考题在线 8 根据所给中文完成句子翻译

令我们惊讶的是，吉姆在比赛结束前最后两分钟进了一个球。

_____, Jim scored a goal in the last two minutes before the game was over.　　[盘锦]

考题在线 9 My parents were very _____ at my _____ grades(分数) in the final exam.　　[鞍山]

A. surprised; surprised　　B. surprising; surprising

C. surprised; surprising　　D. surprising; surprised

Never put off till tomorrow what you can do today.
今日事今日毕。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

★When we looked out of our tent, we saw a big snake sleeping near the fire.

look out of 意为“向……外看”，其中 out of 表示“从……里面向外”，反义词是 into。

⑨ look out of 向……外看

e.g. Please don't look out of the window in class. 上课期间请不要往窗外看。

I'm looking into the house. 我正往房子里看。

拓展：① look out 还可意为“当心；小心”。

e.g. Look out! Here comes the car. 小心！小汽车来了。

考题在线 10 —_____! Something is falling down from the tall building.

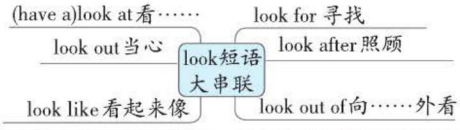
—Dear me! It's too dangerous. [广东]

A. Look out　　B. Help yourself

C. What a pity　　D. Shut up

点拨:用语境分析法解题。Look out “小心”；Help yourself“请自便”；What a pity“多么遗憾”；Shut up“住口，闭嘴”。由“有物体从高楼上落下来。”和“天呐！太危险了。”可知应当“小心”。

② look 短语大串联



⑩ saw a big snake sleeping 看见一条大蛇正在篝火附近睡觉

see sb. /sth. doing sth. 意为“看见某人/某物正在做某事”，表示看到动作正在发生；see sb. /sth. do sth. 意为“看见某人/某物做某事”，表示看见做某事的全过程。

e.g. I saw her playing basketball on the playground.

我看见她正在操场上打篮球。

I saw him go into the shop. 我看见他进商店了。

拓展：像 see 这样的感官动词还有 hear, watch, feel 等，它们都可以跟 do 或 doing 连用意思却不同。

考题在线 11 I saw Tom _____ his key in the lock, turn it and open the door. [徐州]

A. put　　B. putting　　C. puts　　D. to put

点拨:由并列动词 turn 和 open 可知用“see sb. do sth.”结构。

★I was so scared that I couldn't move.

⑪ scared/skeəd/ *adj.* 惊慌的

e.g. She is scared of staying at home alone. 她不敢一个人呆在家里。

一语辨异：

Don't scare the scared children by telling such scary stories.
别讲这么恐怖的故事吓唬害怕的孩子们。

【重点】【易错点】辨析：scare, scared 与 scary



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

拓展：scared 的常用结构

be scared of sth. /doing sth.	害怕某物 / 做某事
be scared to do sth.	害怕做某事

e.g. Tom was scared of swimming.

= Tom was scared to swim. 汤姆害怕游泳。

★We shouted to our parents to let them know about the danger.

⑫ **let them know 让他们知道**

e.g. Let him come here at once. 让他立刻到这儿来。

Let him not come in.=Don't let him come in. 别让他进来。

拓展：make, have 等使役动词后面也跟不带 to 的动词不定式作宾语补足语。

e.g. What makes you think I'm a farmer? 是什么使你认为我是一个农民?

I will have my brother repair the radio for you.

我将让我的哥哥给你修理收音机。

let sb. do sth. 意为"让某人做某事"，其中 let 为使役动词，其后需接省略 to 的动词不定式作宾语补足语。其否定式可表示为 let sb. not do sth. 或 don't let sb. do sth. 意为"不让某人做某事"。

★My dad started to jump up and down in their tent.

⑬ **start**/stɑ:(r)t/ *v.* **开始**

e.g. She started to feel scared. 她开始感到恐惧。

start 及近义词 begin 的用法

start/begin to do sth. 或 start/begin doing sth.	开始做某事	Finish your work before you start to play. 在你开始玩之前先完成工作。
start/begin with sth.	以某事开始	Let's start with easy things. 咱们从简单的事情开始。
start / begin sth.	创办某物	He started a newspaper. 他创办了一份报纸。

拓展：start 可作名词，表示"开始；开端"。

e.g. a good start 一个良好的开端

★This woke the snake up and it moved into the forest near the lake.

⑭ **wake**/weɪk/ *v.* **醒；弄醒**

【**重点**】wake 可用作及物动词，也可用作不及物动词，意为"弄醒；醒"，其过去式是 woke。

wake up	醒来
wake up sb. /wake sb. up	把某人叫醒（当 sb. 为代词时，只能用 wake sb. up 结构）

考题在线 12 _____, Bill! It's time to go to school. [巴中]

A. Wake up B. Look up C. Make up

点拨:用语境分析法解题。Wake up 醒来；Look up 查阅；Make up 编造。由后面"是该去上学的时间了。"可知对方在叫醒比尔。

一语辨异：

Don't wake him up. He will wake up in an hour.

别叫醒他。他一小时后就会醒。

考题在线答案 1. high 2. B 3. C 4.D 5.each other 6. A 7. old enough 8. To our surprise 9. C 10. A 11. A 12. A

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见306页)

一、根据句意及所给提示完成句子

1. Mr. Wang isn't here anymore. He m_____ to his son's city last year.

2. —When did you finish your homework?
—About two hours _____(以前).

3. Tigers and lions live in _____(森林).

4. The mountain is so _____(高的).

5. It's dark here. So everyone feels _____ (scary).

二、单项选择

6. China plans to let tourists _____ the Xisha Islands in the South China Sea this year.
A. visit B. visits
C. visiting D. visited

7. My host family tried to cook _____ for me when I studied in New Zealand. [孝感]
A. different something
B. different anything
C. something different
D. anything different

8. Families usually _____ new pictures of flowers or fish before Spring Festival. [海南]
A. give up B. put up C. set up

9. —Where is Mike?
—I saw him _____ with Mr. Smith in the hallways just now. [内江]
A. to talk B. talking
C. talked D. talks

10. —How do you like the movie *Kung Fu Panda 3*?
—It is _____ exciting _____ I'd like to see it again. [咸宁]
A. so; that B. such; that
C. enough; to D. too; to

三、根据汉语完成句子

11. 我们坐了很久的公共汽车到那片森林。
We _____ a _____ _____ _____ to the _____.

12. 天气很冷，所以他们坐在一起互相取暖。
It's cold, so they are sitting together to _____ _____ _____ _____.

13. 昨天我们很吃惊，因为这些孩子一直跳上跳下。
We _____ _____ _____ yesterday, because the children _____ _____ and _____ all the time.

14. 我爸爸今天早上六点叫醒了我，然后我们开始跑步。
My dad _____ me _____ at six this morning and then we _____ _____ _____.

15. 当我乘火车时，我喜欢往车窗外看。
When I take a train, I like to _____ _____ _____ the window.



爱学习的孩子，美呀！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Section B（3a–Self Check）

I. 课文原文、译文

3a Look at the pictures and complete the passage. 看图画，完成这篇文章。

I had a busy weekend. On Saturday morning, I cleaned my room. In the afternoon, I _____. It was a little difficult. On Saturday night, I stayed at home and _____ cook dinner. On Sunday morning, I _____. I read a book about history. Then in the afternoon, I _____ with my friends. On Sunday night, I _____. I saw an interesting talk show. 我过了一个繁忙的周末。星期六上午，我打扫了我的房间。下午，我 _____。它有一点儿难。星期六晚上，我呆在家里，并且 _____ 做晚饭。星期日上午，我 _____。我读了一本关于历史的书。然后在下午，我和我的朋友们 _____。星期日晚上，我 _____。我看了一个有趣的脱口秀。

3b Write about what you did last weekend. 写一写你上个周末做的事。

Self Check 自我检测

1 Complete the phrases. Then use some of them in the past forms to write a story. 完成短语。然后运用它们中的一些词的过去式写一个故事。

_____ out with friends 和朋友外出 _____ for a walk 散步 _____ apples 苹果 _____ photos 照片	fly a _____ 放一个 _____ milk a _____ 为 _____ 挤奶
	camp _____ the lake 野营 _____ 湖 study _____ a test 学习 _____ 一次测验

2 Complete the conversation. 完成对话。

A: I had a school trip last week. 上周我进行了一次学校旅游。

B: Really. _____(go)? 真的。_____(去)?

A: I visited the fire station. 我参观了消防站。

B: _____(go with)?_____(和……去)?

A: I went with my classmates. 我和我的同班同学们去的。

B: _____(do)?_____(做)?

A: We watched the firefighters work. What an interesting job they have! 我们观看了消防员工作。他们的工作多么有趣啊!

B: _____(learn anything)?_____(学到一些东西)?

A: Sure. We learned how to call the fire station and what to do when there is a fire. 当然了。我们学习了如何呼叫消防站，学习了当发生火灾时该做什么。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Ⅱ. 写作一课一法 夺取中考写作 20分

单元话题

假如你参加了学校组织的“走近乡村(Get Close to the Countryside)”寒假社会实践活动。请根据要求，向某英语网站投稿，分享活动经历。 [重庆B卷]

要求：

1. 80–120词，可适当发挥，开头已给出，不计入总词数；

2. 文中不能出现自己的姓名和所在学校的名称。

参考信息：

过程：住农家；认识农作物；摘蔬菜；亲近牛羊；……

收获：体验生活；增长见识；感受变化；……

……

Have you ever got close to the countryside and had a special experience?Let me share mine!

审题指导（把握中心，得方向分）

1. 注意人称和时态。

2. 在叙述故事时，首先要选好叙述的角度，是第一人称还是第三人称，从谁的角度来叙述故事，一旦选定不要更改。

3. 时态上，一般选择过去时，选定后全篇一般都用过去的时态。

写作技巧（学会方法，巧得高分）

“5W法”叙述故事或事件



5W图示

当写作话题是叙述故事或事件时，可从人物(Who)、事件(What)、时间(When)、地点(Where)和原因(Why)等方面详述，即可使用“5W法”。

写作模板（学会套路，得基本分）



经典词句（妙用句式，得出彩分）

单词	share,during, joined, lived, saw, work, plants, fed, learned, felt, realized, save, hope
短语	got close to, come from, learn about, picked up, in the countryside
句子	① Do you know...? ② Besides, we learned about... ③ We realized... ④ We really hope...

范文赏析（书写工整，得印象分）

Have you ever got close to the countryside and had a special experience? Let me share mine!

During the winter vacation, my classmates and I joined in the school activity “Get Close to the Countryside”.

We lived in the farmers' homes. We saw many things. Do you know where vegetables come from? We got the answer when working with the farmers. Besides, we learned about other plants and some farm animals. We also picked up vegetables and fed the cows.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

I share this because I want to tell you that we lived the life in the countryside, learned something that we couldn't get from books before, and felt the wonderful changes of the countryside. We realized how hard the farmers worked and decided to save food. We were happy to see the farmers' life was getting better and better.

We really hope we'll have another activity like that this summer vacation!

名师点评：本文运用"5W法"叙述事件。
①开篇交代所要介绍之事——"走近乡村"寒假社会实践活动。
②正确运用一般过去时，讲述了事情的经过，包括时间、地点、人物、事件及作者分享自己经历的原因等。
③结尾写出自己的期望、表达情感。
添彩点：运用了一些高级词汇及句型：come from, besides, learn about, I share this because..., We realized how hard..., We really hope... 等。



Ⅲ. 课时针对训练 稳拿中考基础20分

(答案见306页)

单元知识浓缩

根据提示完成短文

Seven days _____[1](以前), I _____[2](飞) to Beijing for vacation. I was kind of _____[3](害怕的) of travelling alone. So on the first night, I _____[4](熬夜) late.

After an hour's bus _____[5](短途旅程), I was kind of _____[6](疲劳的). Then I saw so many people here and there and people had to _____[7](对……大声喊叫) each other _____[8](使 得) themselves heard. _____[9](What/How) a _____[10](令人吃惊的) scene(情景)! I said to myself that it was _____[11](正常的) because there were many _____[12](游客；来访者) in Beijing every day. This must be(一定是) a special vacation to remember.

Nothing is impossible to a willing heart.
心之所愿，无事不成。/ 有志者事竟成。



世界对于我没有不可能

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

参考答案及点拨

Unit 1 Can you play the guitar?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.the music club 2.B 3.C

二、4.C 5.B 6.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.sing 2.guitar 3.swimming

4.dances 5.drawing

二、6.B 点拨:表示“弹奏某种乐器”时,乐器类名词前加the;can是情态动词,后跟动词原形。故选B。

7.C 点拨:由答语“好的。《我和你》很棒。”可知问句和音乐有关;答语不是Yes或No,故不是一般疑问句。选C。

8.B 点拨:用固定搭配法解题。want to do sth.是固定搭配,意为“想要做某事”。

9.D

10. A 点拨:说某种语言用动词speak。

三、11.Can; play chess; he can 12.What club; join 13.is good at 14.tell stories

15.What club;a sports club

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.C 点拨:由句中并列连词but可知前后是转折关系,前后内容应该意思相反,故选C。

2.D 点拨:否定句中用or表示“也不”。

3.A 点拨:情态动词can后跟动词原形。

4.B 点拨:用could提问的句子,在回答时要用can。

5.C 点拨:用前后照应法解题。由答语后句“他去了上海。”可推知那个男孩“一定不是托尼”。表示否定的猜测用can't。

二、6.No; can't 7.Can; play; Yes; can

8.can't; or 9.What can; do

10.What club can; join

Period 3 Section B (1a–1f)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.B 2.B 3.A 4.C 二、5.B 6.C

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.D

二、2.C 3.B 4.C 5.D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.center 2.Today 3.people 4.teaches

5.Students'

二、6. D 点拨:help sb. with... 是固定搭配,意为“帮助某人……”。

7.B 点拨:本句是肯定句,且空格在句中,故用also表示“也”。

8.D 点拨:need sb. to do sth. 是固定用法,意为“需要某人做某事”,故选D。

9.A

10. B 点拨:用关键信息法解题。由前面的关键信息can't go shopping可知busy“忙碌的”符合语境。

三、11.call me at 12.have time

13.make friends 14.on the weekend

15.is good with

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1.have time 2.be good with 3.talk to

4.people 5.stories 6.make friends 7.club

8.dance 9.also 10.Today

Unit 2 What time do you go to school?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1. get up 2. six forty 3. get dressed

二、4.C 5.B 6.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.A 点拨:由后句“我们必须准时。”可知前句意为“上课不要迟到!”,be late for是固定短语,意为“迟到”。故选A。

2.D 3.A

4. C 点拨:用关键信息法解题。由关键信息goes out of the teachers' office可知,老师应该是“站起来”,故up符合语境。

5. B 点拨:用语法分析法解题。句意为“大多数村民在六月十八日上午九点钟参加了龙舟赛”。9:00 a.m.表示某一具体时刻,故用介词at;the morning of June 18是具体某一天的上午,用介词on。故选B。

6.B 点拨:用语境分析法解题。由“他是第一个到那里的”可知,李明去学校很早,故early符合语境。选B。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

7.B

8.B 点拨：用词义辨析法及常识法解题。因为是学生，所以早上 8 点“去上学”，故排除 A、C 两项；go to the school 去学校但不是去学习，故排除。

9.C

10.C 点拨：how many 后跟可数名词复数；tooth 是可数名词，复数形式是 teeth。故选 C。

二、11.o'clock 12.exercises 13.funny

14.usually 15.brushes

三、16.at the radio station 17.time for learning

18.at night 19.from Monday to Friday

20.gets up; goes to work

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.C

2.D 点拨：用语境分析法解题。由答语“大约在晚上 7 点钟。”可知询问的是时间点，故用 what time 提问。

3.A 点拨：用语境分析法及词义辨析法解题。答语中“下周五”和“在下午 6 点”都是时间，所以要用 when 或 what time 提问，故排除 B、C、D；故选 A。

4.A 5.D

二、6.What time 点拨：对时间点提问用 what time。

7.When does; exercise 点拨：对“在周末”提问用 when；主语是第三人称单数，要借助于 does 进行提问，实义动词用原形。

8.What time; come

9.goes; at 7:00 10.never tells

Period 3 Section B (1a–1e)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.B 2.B 3.B 4.B 5.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. half past five 2. Three quarters 3. does his homework 4. is running 5. taking a walk; cleaning

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.A 二、2.B 3.D 4.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1. quickly 2. either 3. tastes 4. lots

5. Sometimes

二、6.C 7.A

8.B 点拨：用固定短语法解题。work 是不可数名词，lots of 是固定短语，相当于 a lot of，可修饰不可数名词，故选 B。

9.B

10.A 点拨：用语法分析法解题。either...or... 连接两个并列主语时，谓语动词要与它临近的主语保持一致，故选 A。

三、11. get up early 12. Either; or

13.much time for 14.is good for 15.do our homework

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1.usually 2.gets up 3.half 4.brushes her teeth

5.takes a shower 6.gets dressed 7.When

8.go to school 9.seven fifteen 10.be late for 11.so

12.early 13.does homework 14.either 15.or

16.best 17.job 18.interesting 19.lots of 20.life

Unit 3 How do you get to school?

Period 1 Section A(1a–2e)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.takes the train 2.walk 3.rides his bike

二、4.C 三、5.A 6.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.bike 2.minutes 3.eighty 4.subway 5.far

二、6.A

7.C

8.B 点拨：用语法分析法解题。get 是不及物动词，后面可直接跟地点副词；如果接名词则需先加介词 to 再接名词。由空格后的 work 是名词可知选 B。

9.C 点拨：用固定句式法解题。It takes sb. + 时间 +to do sth. 是固定句型，意为“做某事花费某人多长时间”，故选 C。

10.B 点拨：用语法分析法解题。hundred 前有具体数字时，用单数；表示概数时用 hundreds of。空格前没有具体数字，所以用 hundreds of 表示“数百”，故选 B。

三、11.go; by bus 12.by bike 13.How do

14.How far 15.How long does

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.D 点拨：用题眼法解题。由题眼“大约 1200 公里”可知询问“距离”，how far 意为“多远”，用于提问距离。故选 D。

2.C 点拨：用辨析法解题。use 使用；have 有；take 花费，主语通常是物或形式主语 it；spend 花费，主语通常是人。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

由句子的主语是 it，可知本句的谓语动词应该用 take，表示“花费”。故选 C。

3.B 4.A 5.C

二、6.rides her/a/the bike 7.How does; go

8.Does; go; No; doesn't 9.How far is it

10.How long

Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.B 2.C 3.C 4.A 5.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. bus stop/station 2. taking the subway

3. How; get to 4. think of 5. how far he lives

Period 4 Section B (2a–2d)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.C 二、2.B 3.D 4.C 5.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.dream 2.cross 3.between 4.river 5.afraid

二、6.to read 7.stops 8.years 9.villager 10.boats

三、11.C 点拨：用语法分析法解题。there be 和 have/has 不能同时出现在一个句子中，故排除 A、D；there be 句型遵循“就近原则”，句中和 be 靠近的是 a teacher，是单数，因此 be 动词应用 is。故选 C。

12.C 点拨：考查固定句式和介词的用法。“It is + 形容词 + of/for sb. + to do sth.”是固定句式，其中 it 是形式主语，真正的主语是后面的动词不定式；句中的形容词 important 不是用来说明人的性格特征的，应用介词 for，所以选 C。

13.B 点拨：用语境判定法解题。由答语“是的，她们都对别人很友好”可知，问句侧重于问性格、品质方面的相像，应用 be like，故选 B。

14.C 点拨：句意为“你什么时候动身去学校？”leave for... 意为“动身去……”。

15.C 点拨：用语法分析法解题。由空格前的 A 以及其后的 woman 可知需要一个形容词作定语；65-year-old 是复合形容词，其构成形式是：数词 + 名词 + 形容词，中间加连字符，名词必须用单数形式。故选 C。

Period 5 Section B(3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1.the school bus 2.walk 3.ride bikes

4.take the subway 5. kilometers 6. leaves for

7.bus stop 8.takes 9.takes 10.lives 11.drives

12.every day 13.rivers 14.boat 15.go on a ropeway

Unit 4 Don't eat in class.

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.rules 2.run 3.in the classroom 4.listen to music 5.can't hear

二、6.C 7.B 8.B 9.C 10.A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.arrives 2.rules 3.quietly

4.fight 5.outside

二、6.B 点拨：用交际法解题。句意：——不要把纸扔在地上。——抱歉，我将不会（这样做）了。故选 B。

7.C

8.A 点拨：用辨析法解题。wear 意为“穿，穿着”，表示穿的状态；put on 意为“穿上”，指穿的动作；表示“穿着”还可以用 have... on 或 be in，但不能用 have in；dress 后面的宾语是人。句意为“我今天穿了夹克衫，但他说在学校我们必须穿校服。”，故本题选 A。

9.C 点拨：用辨析法解题。bring“带来”；take“拿走”；get“得到”；buy“买”。根据句意可知选 C。

10.A

三、11.Don't arrive/ be late for 点拨：否定祈使句结构为：“Don't + 动词原形 + 其他.”；arrive/be late for 意为“迟到”。

12.fights with;in class 13.listening to

14.follow; dining hall 15.Can I watch

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

Ⅲ. 单元语法专练

1.A 2.C 3.A

4.A 点拨：用语境判定法解题。由后一句“有人在睡觉”可知要求对方“不要制造”噪音；let sb. not do sth. 是固定结构，故选 A。

5.D 6.C 7.A

8.B 点拨：mustn't 禁止；needn't 没必要；may not 不可以；can't 不可能。由 must 引导的一般疑问句的否定回答用 needn't，意为“没必要”。故选 B。

9.D

10.B 点拨：鲍勃不能去远足是因为“不得不”在家帮忙做家务，此处指客观上的需要，且主语是第三人称单数，故选 B。

Period 3 Section B（1a–1d）

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.C 2.A 3.A 4.B 5.C

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.C 二、2.B 3.C 4.A 5.D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.relax 2.Remember 3.dirty

4.noisy 5.more

二、6.A 点拨：读书、读报要用动词 read，这是固定搭配。

7. C 点拨：用语境判定法解题。too 常用在肯定句句尾；also 常用在肯定句句中；either 常用在否定句句尾；as well 意为“也”。第一个人说自己的妈妈做早饭从来没起晚过，并问第二个人的妈妈的情况；由第二个人说的“中国的母亲为我们孩子们做得太多了”可知，第二个人的妈妈做早饭也没起晚过。否定句句尾用 either。故选 C。

8.B 点拨：用辨析法及语法分析法解题。forget 意为“忘记”；leave 意为“忘；留”，常与表示地点的介词短语连用，故选 B。

9.C 点拨：people 是集体名词，故用 too many 修饰；noise 此处用作不可数名词，要用 too much 修饰；much too 修饰形容词。故选 C。

10.D 点拨：用交际法解题。对于对方要进行的一些活动，如考试、比赛等要表示祝福，祝对方“好运”。故选 D。

三、11.follow the rules 12.make the bed

13.how you feel 14.in the kitchen

15.are strict with

Period 5 Section B(3a–Self Check)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1.make 2.leave 3.can't 4.more 5.noisy

6.must 7.relax 8.read 9.before 10.terrible

11.feel 12.strict 13.remember 14.follow 15.luck

Unit 5 Why do you like pandas?

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.B 2.A 3.B

二、4.kind of interesting 5.really scary 6.Australia

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.smart 2.south 3.Africa 4.sleeps 5.elephants

二、6.A 点拨：be kind to sb.“对某人是友好的”；kind of “有点儿”。句意为“李老师对我们是友好的，但是有时他有点儿严肃”。

7.C 点拨：用语法分析法解题。be from 相当于 come from，be from 构成疑问句时，be 动词提前；come from 构成疑问句时，借助助动词 do/does，本题主语是 these tigers，所以只能选 C。

8.C

9.A 点拨：用语境判定法解题。结合语境可知，“害怕上学迟到”和“工作日总是起床很早”是因果关系，故选 A。

10.B 点拨：用语法分析法解题。前一句中主语为人，故形容词应使用 -ed 形式；后一句中形容词修饰不定代词 anything，故用 scary。

三、11.Let's 12.kind of 13.do；come from

14.Why do you 15.Why don't you ride

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.A 2.A

3.D 点拨：用语境判断法解题。上句句意为“我真的感到累了”。A 项意为“你真幸运！”；B 项意为“你最好更加努力工作。”；C 项意为“祝贺！”；D 项意为“为什么不去休息一下呢？”，由句意可知，对方累了应该建议对方休息一下，故选 D。

4.D 点拨：用逻辑推理法解题。由于他从不帮妈妈做家务，说明他很懒。

5.D

二、6.How 7.Who 8.Why 9.Where 10.What

Period 3 Section B(1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.B 2.C 3.A 4.C 5.B

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.D 二、2.A 3.B 4.A 5.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.water 2.places 3.kill

4.forgot 5.over

二、6.B 点拨：用语境判定法解题。由前句“老虎处于危险的境地。”可知我们应该“拯救”它们。save 意为“拯救”。

7.B 点拨：one of 后接复数名词作主语时，谓语动词用单数形式。

8.D 点拨：用语境判定法解题。look for “寻找”；cut in “插嘴”；think about “思考；考虑”；cut down “砍倒；砍掉”。由后句“它们对我们有好处。”可知句意为“不要砍伐树木”。

9. D 点拨：用语境判定法解题。由答语中“I won't”可知书未还，所以用固定搭配 forget to do sth.“忘记去做某事”。故选 D。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

10.A 点拨：用语法分析法和逻辑推理法解题。made of“由……制成的”，在句中作定语；be made of“由……制成”，在句中作谓语；be made in“在……制造”。第一句话中 He has a coat 是完整的一句话，后面的内容修饰 coat，故排除 C、D 两项；由第二句话中的 China 是地名，且句中缺少谓语可知应填 is made in。

三、11.the symbol of 12.are in great danger
13.for a long time 14.lose their home 15.get lost

四、16.made of silk 17.over 18.from Abing
19.with a long history 20.Remember to

Period 5 Section B(3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1.let's 2.animals 3.elephants 4.Because 5.friendly
6.from 7.Yes, they are 8.danger 9.kill 10.to save
11.tigers 12.Why 13.kind of 14.scary 15.sleep
16.all day 17.places 18.forget 19.cut down
20.trees

Unit 6 I'm watching TV.

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.watching TV; interesting
2.washing the dishes; listening to

二、3.B 4.C 5.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.use 2.newspaper 3.just
4.does; cleaning 5.washes; is washing

二、6.B 点拨：根据下文“好主意！但是现在正上映什么电影？”，可以推测空格所在句应为“去看电影怎么样？”，go to the movies 意为“去看电影”。

7.C 点拨：用辨析法解题。dictionary“字典”；magazine“杂志”；newspaper“报纸”；guidebook“旅游指南”。句意为“《纽约时报》是一份受欢迎的日报。”，故选 C。

8.A 点拨：用固定短语法解题。句意为“当我走进房间时，格林先生正在打电话。”，表示“在打电话”用 on the phone。故选 A。

9.B 10.C

三、11.Look; are using 12.is making soup
13.want to eat out 14.Not/Nothing much
15.go to the movies

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.is making 点拨：用关键词法解题。由关键词 now 可知句子用现在进行时，make 的现在分词是 making。

2.is running 点拨：注意以重读闭音节结尾且末尾只有一个辅音字母的动词，变现在分词形式时双写辅音字母再加 -ing。

3.reading

4.are eating 点拨：用语法分析法解题。Look! 用于引起对方的注意，句子应用现在进行时；the Browns 意为“布朗夫妇或布朗一家人”，是复数，故填 are eating。

5.is knocking

二、6.A 点拨：now 是现在进行时的时间标志词。
7.D 8.C

9.C 点拨：用联系上下文法解题。由后一句句意“那儿的衣服非常便宜。”可知这个服装店正在大减价。所以选 C。

10.C 点拨：用关键词法解题。根据关键词 not now 可知要用现在进行时态。句意为“——萨姆，我们去看电影吧，有一场新电影叫《复仇者联盟 3》。——现在不行。我在帮助我的弟弟戴维学英语”。故选 C。

三、11.Are; doing 12.is eating 13.isn't talking
14.Who is cooking 15.What's; doing

Period 3 Section B(1a–1e)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.B 2.A 3.B 4.C 5.C 6.A

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.A 二、2.B 3.D 4.C 5.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.states 2.still 3.race 4.delicious 5.young

二、6.studying 点拨：用关键词法解题。由句中关键词 now 可知用现在进行时。

7.to get 8.children 9.American 10.misses

三、11.B 点拨：用语境判定法解题。由前句“我今天很忙”可知，后句意为“其他任何一天都行”。any other day 是“其他任何一天”之意。故选 B。

12. A 点拨：用联系上下文法解题。just“仅仅，只是”；even“甚至”；still“仍然”；hardly“几乎不”。由答语后句“它已经被添加到《牛津英语词典》里了。”可知“称它为 *jiaozi* 就可以”，故选 A。

13. B 点拨：用辨析法解题。any 意为“任何”，在否定句和一般疑问句中代替 some；some 意为“一些”，常

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

用于肯定句中。问句是一般疑问句，空格处应填 any；答语意为“是的，你可以拿走你喜欢的任何一本。”，空格处应填 any。故选 B。

14.C 点拨：用语法分析法解题。other 表示“其他的”，后必须要接名词；another 用于三个或更多的人或物，泛指三者或三者以上同类事物中的“另一个”；the other 表示两者中“另一个”或“剩余的那个”。街道有两条边，一边上只有大树，则另一边是不同的花儿，故选 C。

15.A 点拨：wish to do sth. 表示“希望做某事”；wish sb.... 表示“希望某人……”，且后半句的主语是 we，所以第二个空填 wish。故选 A。

四、16.isn't talking 17.Are; your
18.Who; waiting 19.is playing 20.to see

Period 5 Section B(3a–Self Check)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1.studying 2.at 3.making 4.watching 5.races
6.other 7.host 8.reading 9.talking 10.to
11.misses 12.wishes

Unit 7 It's raining!

Period 1 Section A(1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.B 2.A 3.C 4.A

二、5.sunny; playing basketball
6.cooking; computer games

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.back 2.cooking 3.weather 4.problems
5.park

二、6.not to swim 7.sunny 8.cloudy 9.bad
10.rain

三、11.D 点拨：用题眼法解题。由答语可知问句应是询问天气状况的用语。“What's the weather like in...？”和“How's the weather in...？”可用于询问天气状况，故选 D。

12.B 点拨：用交际法解题。“How's everything going in the hospital...?”询问在医院的情况，故只有 B 项符合题意。

13.D 点拨：用交际法解题。上一句意为“今年暑假我父母会带我去上海迪斯尼乐园。”，所以本句要祝对方玩得高兴。

14.B 点拨：用交际法解题。因所找的人不在，所以接电话的人可以给对方带个口信，故选 B。

15.B 点拨：问句是一般疑问句，所以应作肯定回答或否定回答，故排除 A、C 两项；由答语后句“但是我要先喝杯水。”可知答应了，故选 B。句意：——请把垃圾倒了好吗？——当然，没问题。但是我要先喝杯水。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3b)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.C 2.D 3.A

4.B 点拨：用前后联系法解题。由第二句“Please take an umbrella with you, Annie.”可知，现在正在下雨，故选 B。

5.C 点拨：用题眼法解题。由 now 可知要用现在进行时，排除 A、B 项，再根据主语 Everybody 可知选 C。

二、6.How is 7.It's
8.What's; like
9.What are; doing
10.Who is 点拨：who 作主语时看作第三人称单数。

Period 3 Section B(1a–1e)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.B 2.C 3.C 4.A 5.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1.dry 2.warm 3.cold 4.hot 5.cool

Period 4 Section B(2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.A 二、2.B 3.D 4.C 5.D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.visiting 2.summer 3.countries
4.mountain 5.sitting

二、6.D

7.B 点拨：用固定搭配法解题。have a great time doing sth. 是固定用法，故选 B。

8.A

9.D 点拨：用语法分析法解题。反意疑问句的规则是：前肯定，后否定；前否定，后肯定。前句中 nothing 表示否定，所以后面简短的问句用肯定形式，且根据 had 可知句子的时态为一般过去时，后面用助动词 did。故选 D。

10.C 点拨：用语境判定法解题。前两句句意：约翰，我可以用一下你的电话吗？我的坏了。work 用于否定结构，表示某一物件“坏掉了”。

三、11.taking a vacation/on a vacation; Canada
12.just right for 13.studies hard; soon
14.am happy to 15.to call; working

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1.spring 2.windy 3.rains 4.summer
5.hot 6.cool 7.rains heavily 8.to visit
9.warm 10.sunny 11.vacation 12.winter
13.snows 14.making a snowman 15.go skating

Unit 8 Is there a post office near here?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.restaurant 2.post office; hospital
二、3.A 4.C 5.C 6.A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.restaurant 2.near 3.pays
4.hospital 5.behind

二、6. D 点拨：用语法分析法解题。由空格后的 help 可知主语应是复数，四个选项中只有 police 是集体名词，用作复数，故选 D。

7. D 点拨：分析语境可知比赛在日本和波兰之间展开，between...and... 意为“在……和……之间”，故选 D。

8.A

9.A 点拨：用语法分析法解题。there be 和 have 不能同时出现在一个句子中，故排除 B 项；句子主语“a book sale”是单数，故 be 动词应用 is。故选 A。

10.D

三、11.across from 12.pay phone; near
13.Excuse me; Where is
14.far from
15.How can; help

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1. C 点拨：用语境判定法及语法分析法解题。由答语第二句可推知需用肯定回答形式。“Is there...?”的肯定回答是“Yes, there is.”。故选 C。

2. C 3.C

4.C 点拨：用交际法解题。由答语中“哦，它在中央公园附近。”可知问“……在哪儿？”，故选 C。

5.C 点拨：用语法分析法解题。there be 句型遵循“就近原则”，和 be 动词靠近的主语是 a teacher，是单数形式，因此 be 动词应用 is。故选 C。

二、6.are 7.there is 8.is 9.There are
10.Is there 点拨：用语法分析法解题。本句是 there be 句型的一般疑问句，milk 和 apples 是并列主语，且 milk 离 be 动词近，故 be 动词用 is。

三、11.Are there
12.Are there any
13.No; there isn't
14.are some women teachers 15.Where is

Period 3 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.C 2.A 3.B 4.A 5.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1. Go along 2. turn right
3. on her left
4. across from
5. at the first crossing

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.A

二、2.D 3.D 4.C 5.B

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.monkeys 2.free
3.easily 点拨：修饰动词 find 用副词 easily。
4.money 5.climbed

二、6.C 点拨：句意：——吉姆正在干什么？——他正在看一些男孩们在操场上打篮球。watch sb. doing sth. 观看某人正在做某事。故选 C。

7.B

8.C 点拨：用固定句式法解题。句意：我花了整个下午的时间购物，为了（买）一份生日礼物。spend+some time+(in) doing sth. 花费一些时间做某事；介词 for 在这里意为“为了”，表示目的。

9.B 点拨：用题眼法解题。enjoy 后接动词的 -ing 形式，故选 B。

10.B 点拨：用语境判定法解题。根据答语“你总是起床这么早吗？”可知，答语回答起床早的目的，要用动词不定式作目的状语，故选 B。

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1.There is 2.in the town 3.far from 4.easily
5.get to 6.along 7.Street 8.turn right
9.between 10.post office 11.police station
12.quiet 13.exercise 14.climb 15.free

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 9 What does he look like?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.tall; curly hair　二、2.A　3.C　4.B　5.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.tall　2.straight　3.heavy　4.tonight

5.cinemas

二、6.heavily　点拨：修饰动词 rains 要用副词。

7.glasses　8.later　9.height

10.thinner　点拨："the + 形容词比较级，the + 形容词比较级"表示"越……，越……"。

三、11.B　点拨：句意为"她留着短发，中等身高。"，"留着短发"应使用"has short hair"，"中等身高"应使用"is of medium height"，故选 B。

12.C　点拨：语法分析法。由答语前句是选择了问句中 meat 和 fish 中的一个可知，问句是选择疑问句，用 or 连接两个名词。meat 是不可数名词，不能用 many 修饰；因为不需要买肉，可知冰箱里还有一些，要用 a little 表示"一些"。故选 C。

13.B　点拨：根据答语"它又小又矮。"可知问句对它的样子提问，应用"What does it look like？"。

14.C

15.D　点拨：语法分析法。问句意为"周六上午你打算做什么？"是一般将来时；答语也要用一般将来时，由于是按计划要做的事，所以用现在进行时表将来。故选 D。

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3d)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.B　点拨：look like... 意为"看起来像……"，后跟名词；look"看起来"是连系动词，其后跟形容词。

2.B　3.C　4.B　5.A

二、6.big　7.straight　8.tall

9.short　10.young

三、11.is；is　12.of medium height

13.What does；look like　14.looks like

15.beautiful long curly black　点拨：当名词前有多个形容词修饰时，这些形容词通常遵循一定的规则。助记口诀：限观大形龄色国材。

Period 3 Section B（1a–1e）

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.B　2.C　3.C　4.A　5.A

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.A　二、2.B　3.D　4.C　5.D

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.artist　2.putting　3.real　4.singer　5.differently

二、6.Two police artists　7.talking to

8.the same way　9.a pair of jeans　10.Each face

三、11.B　点拨：each of + 复数名词（或代词）作主语，谓语动词用单数。

12.B　13.D

14.A　点拨：语境判定法。根据句意可知：说话人嫌这个房间太小了，想要换另外一间，表示"三者或三者以上的另一个……"，应用 another。故选 A。

15.B　点拨：语法分析法。由答语"4 路公交车可以带你到那里"可知，从句中问的是"我怎么到动物园"，故排除 C、D 两项；宾语从句要用陈述语序，故选 B。

Period 5 Section B(3a–Self Check)

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

1.interesting　2.artist　3.crimes　4.criminal

5.draws　6.way　7.describe　8.differently

9.remember　10.medium　11.end　12.real

Unit 10 I'd like some noodles.

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.B　2.A　二、3.large　4.potato　5.medium

6.beef and tomato

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.noodles　2.beef

3.potatoes　点拨：空格前没有限定词，故填可数名词 potato 的复数形式。

4.Cabbages　点拨：由 be 动词 are 可知主语是复数，故填 Cabbages。

5.tomatoes

二、6.vegetable　点拨：名词作定语用单数形式。

7.bowls　点拨：how many 后跟可数名词的复数形式。

8.order　点拨：交际法。由答语"是的，请来一些羊肉。"可知问句询问是否可以点菜了。take one's order 意为"点菜"。

9.yet

10.special　点拨：主谓一致法。由 be 动词 is 可知主语是单数，故填 special。

三、11.B　点拨：语法分析法。根据空格后的 noodles，可

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

知此处缺少定语，名词作定语通常用单数，只有 beef 符合，故选 B。句意：——你想要什么种类的面条？——我想要一些牛肉面。

12.B 点拨：语境判定法。由空格后“但是我希望如此”可知，“我”不确定明天是否会下雨。

13.D 点拨：with 表示“有；带有”。

14.B

15.A 点拨：此题考查名词修饰名词的用法，一般情况下作定语的名词用单数形式，但是 man, woman 作定语修饰复数名词时要变成复数形式 men, women。

四、16.What 17.What kind of; would

18.Would; like 19.Would you like

20.What size bowl of noodles

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3c)

Ⅲ. 单元语法专练

一、1.C 点拨：语法分析法。句意：我想要一些香蕉和西红柿。banana 和 tomato 都是可数名词，前面的修饰词 some“一些”决定了用其复数形式。故选 C。

2.C

3.B 点拨：语法分析法。many 后接可数名词复数；some 后接可数名词复数或不可数名词，常用于肯定句或提出请求的疑问句；any 后接可数名词复数或不可数名词，常用于否定句或疑问句中。句中的 juice 为不可数名词，故排除选项 A。本句 Would you like... 为委婉客气地提出请求，名词前应使用 some，故选 B。

4.C 点拨：语法分析法。salt 是不可数名词，没有复数形式，排除选项 B；“两汤匙盐”用 two spoons of salt 表示，故选 C。

5.A 点拨：A 项意为“是的，我想”；B 项意为“没有关系”；C 项意为“祝你玩得愉快”；D 项意为“不客气”。问句意为“七月你想与我一起去上海迪斯尼乐园吗？”可知用“Yes, I'd like to.”回答符合逻辑。

二、6.Are there any potatoes 7.What would

8.Yes; I'd love to 9.Would you like some

10.would like to

Period 3 Section B (1a–1d)

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. C

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.B 二、2.D 3.B 4.D 5.A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.different

2.candles 点拨：题眼法。candle 是可数名词，空格前的 some 决定了用其复数形式。

3. answer 点拨：由句意及常识可知，课堂上应注意认真听讲并回答问题。第二句是祈使句，and 连接两个并列的成分，故此处应填动词原形 answer。

4. lucky

5. candies 点拨：candy 意为“糖果”，是可数名词，be 动词 are 决定了填其复数形式 candies。

二、6.A 点拨：用交际法解题。Good idea. 意为“好主意”。It's a pity. 意为“真是遗憾”。You're welcome. 意为“不用谢”。Never mind. 意为“不要紧”。问句意为“我们做个蛋糕作为蒂娜的生日礼物好吗？”由答语后句“那会给她一个大大的惊喜。”可知觉得对方的建议好，故选 A。

7.D 点拨：语境判定法。make up 编造；put up 举起，张贴；set up 建立；cut up 切碎。由前文“为了喂养她的儿子”可知，史密斯夫人必须切碎蔬菜和肉。

8.A 点拨：关键词法。由关键词 prefer“更喜欢”可推知，电子音乐变得越来越“流行”。

9.C 点拨：语法分析法。考查 if 引导的条件状语从句。if 引导的条件状语从句的时态，在一般情况下，如果主句用一般将来时，从句用一般现在时表将来。句意为“如果这个周日不下雨我们将去野餐。”可知选 C。

10.A 点拨：辨析法。the number of 表示“……的数量”，后接复数名词作主语时，谓语动词只能用单数；a number of 表示“许多；大量”，后接复数名词作主语时，谓语动词用复数，故选 A。

三、11.around the world 12.at the age of

13.make a wish; blow out

14.is getting popular

15.cutting up

Period 5 Section B (3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1.shops 2.take 3.other 4.a lot

5.and 6.find 7.popular 8.many

9.because 10.think

Unit 11 How was your school trip?

Period 1 Section A (1a–2d)

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.farm 2.milked a cow 3.ride a horse

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、4.A 5.B 6.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.horses 2.milk 3.fed 4.countryside 5.farm

二、6.C 点拨：用语境判定法解题。ask for 请求；look for 寻找；pick up 拾起；put up 举起，张贴。根据第二句句意“它在你的椅子底下”可知，问句句意为“你能帮我把钢笔捡起来吗？”，故选 C。

7.B

8.C 点拨：never 使句子成为否定句，anything 用于否定句中。句意为“担心从来不会改变任何事情”。故选 C。

9.B 点拨：lend sth. to sb.“把某物借给某人”；show...around“带……参观”；compare... with“把……和……相比较”；brush off“被刷掉”。由后半句“你会见到每个人”可知彼得将带“你”参观这栋楼。

10.B

三、11.cows 12.excellent 13.farming

14.pick 15.grew

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus–3b)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.C 点拨：用关键信息法解答。根据问句中表示过去的时间 last winter vacation 可知，答语用一般过去时，谓语动词 go 变为过去式 went。故选 C。

2.B 3.B

4.B 点拨：根据前面“老师已经站在这儿了。”可知，“老师来”是过去发生的事情，所以用一般过去时。

5. D 点拨：用题眼法解题。由 when we were young 可知，该句是一般过去时，动词应用过去式。故选 D。

二、6.stayed

7.were 点拨：由 yesterday 可知事情发生在过去，用一般过去时；主语 My parents 是复数，故 be 动词用 were。

8.wrote 9.visited 10.spent

三、11.went fishing 12.stood up

13.did; meet 14.finished

15.had a good/great/wonderful time

Period 3 Section B（1a–1d）

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.B 2.C 3.B 4.A 5.C 6.A

Period 4 Section B (2a–2c)

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.C

二、2.B 3.D 4.C 5.A

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.gifts 点拨：gift 意为“礼物”，是可数名词。空格前的 some 表明要填其复数形式 gifts。

2.robots 点拨：用主谓一致法解题。由谓语动词 look 可知主语是复数。

3.dark 4.guides 5.expensive

二、6.fast 7.slow 8.cheap

9.lovely 10.heard

三、11. D 点拨：用常识法解题。be famous for 因……而出名；be afraid of 害怕；be worried about 为……担心；be interested in 对……感兴趣。句意为“不仅中国的孩子们，而且西方的孩子们都对《西游记》感兴趣”。故选 D。

12.A 点拨：考查不定代词辨析。everything 意为“一切；所有事物”；nothing 意为“没有什么”；anything 意为“任何事情”；something 意为“某事；某物”。根据句意及常识可知孩子是父母的“一切”。故选 A。

13.A

14. D 点拨：用词义辨析法解题。exciting 意为“令人激动的”，表事物本身的性质；excited“激动的，兴奋的”，强调人的主观感受。第一个空位于系动词 were 之后，主语为 We，表达说话者的主观感受应用 excited；第二个空修饰名词 match，故用 exciting。

15.A 点拨：用固定句式法解题。由句意可知要用“It + be + *adj.* + for sb. + to do sth.”句型，意为“对于某人来说做某事是……的”。故选 A。

四、16.Are; interested in 17.how to make

18.visited the museum

19.All in all 20.doesn't; at all

Period 5 Section B(3a–Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1.countryside 2.fast 3.showed; around

4.milk 5.fed 6.went fishing

7.dark 8.All in all 9.excellent

Unit 12 What did you do last weekend?

Period 1 Section A（1a–2d）

Ⅲ. 教材听力新题秀

一、1.went to the beach 2.camped 3.went boating

二、4.A 5.B 6.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.boating

2.beaches; Really 点拨：第一个空由前面的 different 可

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

知填 beach 的复数形式。第二个空填 Really“真的吗”。

3.visitors 4.camping 5.Natural

二、6.C 点拨：前面表明李明没去参观港珠澳大桥，由 but 可知“我”去参观了，故排除 D；为避免重复，所以要用 did 代替“参观港珠澳大桥”这一动作，故选 C。

7.B 点拨：由空格后的 cleaner 可知选 B。work as... 表示“从事……工作”。

8.D 点拨：How many 后跟名词复数，A、B 项都是单数，故排除；sheep 单复数都是 sheep，故选 D。

9.D

10.D 点拨：用语法分析法解题。感叹句结构：①What + (a/an) + *adj.* + *n.* + (主语 + 谓语)；② How + *adj.*/*adv.* + (主语 + 谓语)。分析本题句子结构可知，本题属于结构②。故选 D。

三、11.Did；go 12.with big eyes

13.living habits; tired 14.watched；yesterday

15.Where did；go

Period 2 Section A (Grammar Focus−3c)

Ⅳ. 单元语法专练

一、1.C 点拨：用语境判定法解答。由答语“他们在美国”可知问句是问“他们在哪儿”，主语是复数名词，根据 last year 可知 be 动词要用 were，故选 C。

2.B 3.B

4.C 点拨：问句的谓语动词为行为动词 clean 的过去式，故简短回答时，需要借助助动词 did。

5.D

二、6.How was 7.When did；have

8.Where did；go

9.Who did；go 10.What did；do

Period 3 Section B（1a−1e）

Ⅱ. 教材听力新题秀

1.B 2.A 3.B 4.C 5.A

Period 4 Section B（2a−2c）

Ⅱ. 课文阅读新题练

一、1.B

二、2.A 3.B 4.D 5.C

Ⅳ. 课时针对训练

一、1.moved 点拨：由“不在这儿了”以及首字母 m 可知搬到别处去了；last year 表明事情发生在过去，故填 move 的过去式 moved。

2.ago 3.forests 点拨：forest 意为“森林”，是可数名词，其前没有修饰词时用复数形式。

4.high

5.scared

二、6.A 点拨：用固定结构法解题。let sb.do sth. 是固定用法，表示“让某人做某事”。句意：中国计划今年让游客们参观在南海的西沙群岛。

7.C 点拨：肯定句中用 something；形容词修饰不定代词时要放在不定代词后面，故选 C。

8.B 点拨：give up 放弃；put up 张贴；set up 建立。根据“春节来临之前”可知，家人们通常张贴新的花或者鱼的图画，故选 B。

9.B 点拨：答语句意为“刚才我看到他与史密斯先生在走廊交谈”，故用 see sb. doing sth. 表示“看到某人正在做某事”。故选 B。

10.A 点拨：用固定句式法解题。答句句意为：它是如此令人兴奋以至于我想再看一遍。固定句式 such/so...that 表示“如此……以至于”；第一个空后是形容词，形容词前用 so 修饰。故选 A。

三、11.took；long bus ride；forest

12.keep each other warm

13.got a surprise; jumped up; down

14.woke；up；started/began to run 15.look out of

Period 5 Section B (3a−Self Check)

Ⅲ. 课时针对训练

1.ago 2.flew 3.scared/afraid 4.stayed up 5.ride

6.tired 7.shout to 8.to make 9.What

10.surprising 11.natural 12.visitors

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

教材习题参考答案

Unit 1 Can you play the guitar?

▶ Section A

1a **1.**e **2.**g **3.**d **4.**b **5.**c **6.**a **7.**f

1b 2，3，1

2a circled:chess club，English club，music club

2b **1.**chess，chess **2.**English，English **3.**sing，dance，music

3a **2.**Can Mike play basketball? No，he can't，but he can play tennis.

3.Can Jane and Jill dance? No，they can't，but they can sing.

4.Can Grace play soccer? No，she can't，but she can play volleyball.

5.Can Bill write stories? No，he can't，but he can tell stories.

3b dance，sing，play，tell

▶ Section B

1a drums 鼓　piano 钢琴　guitar 吉他　violin 小提琴

1b **1.**guitar **2.**drums **3.**piano **4.**violin

1d circled:sing，play the guitar，play the drums，play the piano，dance

1e

	Can	Can't
Bill	play the guitar	sing
Cindy	sing，play the drums	play the piano
Frank	play the piano	sing or dance

2a Peter:play basketball，speak English，play soccer
Alan:play the guitar and the piano，sing and dance
Ma Huan:play ping-pong and chess，play games

2b A.We need help at the old people's home...
B. Can you play the piano or the violin...
C. Are you busy after school...

2c C，B，A

3a music，dance，play，guitar，can，call

▶ Self Check

1 Music and arts:play the violin，play the guitar，play the piano，play the drums
Languages:speak English，speak Chinese
Sports:swim，play basketball，play volleyball，play baseball，play soccer
Other abilities:tell stories，write stories，ride a bicycle，cook

2 **1.**the piano，the guitar，the violin
2.Chinese，French，Japanese
3.Chinese，English，art，music
4.playing chess，speaking English
5.young people，children，babies

Unit 2 What time do you go to school?

▶ Section A

1a **1.**c **2.**d **3.**b **4.**f **5.**e **6.**a

1b get up: six thirty，brush teeth and take a shower: six forty，eat breakfast: seven，get dressed: seven twenty，go to school: seven thirty

2a two，two，one

2b Mary:5:50，Jack:6:15，Jim:6:30，Anna:6:45

3a **1.**I usually get up at six thirty.
2.What time does Rick always get up
3.I usually have breakfast at seven o'clock.
4.What time does Anna usually eat breakfast
5.He/She always goes to school at 8:20.

▶ Section B

1a 3，1，2，4

1c circled:get up，run，eat breakfast，go to school，go home，do my homework，eat dinner，go to bed

1d **1.**get up 5:30
2.run 6:00
3.eat breakfast 7:00
4.go to school 7:45
5.go home 4:15
6.do my homework 5:30
8.eat dinner 7:15
10.go to bed 9:00

2a go to bed early；eat vegetables；play sports；take a walk

2b Mary is healthier.
healthy activities:get up early；play basketball；brush teeth；take a shower；eat a good breakfast；eat lots of fruit and vegetables；play volleyball；swim；take a walk

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2c

Unhealthy habits	Healthy activities
Tony:eat very quickly eat hamburgers	eat slowly and have a good breakfast
Mary:eat ice-cream	eat fruit and vegetables, don't eat ice-cream

3a 3, 2, 5, 4, 6, 7, 1, 8, 9

▶ **Self Check**

1 **1**.tastes good **2**.take a walk
3.brush your teeth **4**.has a good job
5.get dressed **6**.clean my room

2 **1**.A: What time does your mother usually get up
B: She usually gets up at 5:45 in the morning
A: Why does she get up so early
B: Because she always makes breakfast for me
2.A: What time do you usually get to school
B: I usually get to school at 7:30 in the morning
A: What time does your class teacher usually get to school

Unit 3 How do you get to school?

▶ **Section A**

1a **1**.a **2**.d **3**.e **4**.b **5**.c

1b **1**.a—Bob takes the train.
2.e—Mary takes the subway.
3.d—John takes the bus.
4.c—Paul walks.
5.c—Yang Lan walks.
6.b—Jim rides his bike.

2a 61, 99, 72, 105, 84, 200

2b

	How?	How long? (minutes)	How far? (kilometers)
Tom	walks	about 20 minutes	about 2 km
Jane	takes the bus	about one hour and 30 minutes	about 60 km

3a **1**—c **2**—e **3**—d **4**—a **5**—b

3b **1**.How do you get to school
2.How long does it take to get to school
3.How far is it from your home to school
4.Do you walk to school
5.Do your friends ride their bikes to school

▶ **Section B**

1a **1**.b **2**.a **3**.c **4**.d

1c checked: how far he lives from his grandparents' home. how he gets to his grandparents' home. how long it takes to get to his grandparents' home.

1d checked:1

2b B

2c get; cross; afraid; love; play; difficult; bridge; true

3a get to; leave; walk; kilometers; takes; boring

▶ **Self Check**

1 take a train; by train; take/drive a car; by car; take a plane; by plane; take the subway; by subway; take a boat; by boat; ride a bike; by bike; walk

2 How far is it from Tony's home to school?
It is 5 kilometers.
How long does it take Tony to get to school?
It takes 20 Minutes.
How does Mary get to school?
She gets to school by bus.
How far is it from Mary's home to school?
It is 15 kilometers.
How long does it take Mary to get to school?
It takes 40 minutes.

Unit 4 Don't eat in class.

▶ **Section A**

1a **1**.the boy running through the door and looking at the watch
2.the boy saying "Sorry, Ms. Clark."
3.the girl eating an apple
4.the boy wearing headphones and listening to music
5.the two boys sitting near the teacher and fighting

1b 2, 3, 4

2a checked: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8

2b circled:**1**.can't **2**.can **3**.can **4**.can't **5**.can **7**.can't **8**.can't

3a **2**.Don't eat.
3.Don't listen to music.
4.Don't take photos.

3b Q:Does he have to eat in the dining hall?
A:Yes, he does.
Q:Can we listen to music in the hallways?
A:No, we can't.
Q:Can we wear a hat in the classroom?
A:No, we can't.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

▶ **Section B**

1a a, h, c, e, b, g, d, f

1b Refer to 1c.

1c a—go out—can't—on school nights
h—see friends—can't—on school days
c—do his homework—have to/must—after school
e—practice the guitar—have to/must—before dinner
b—do the dishes—have to/must—after dinner
g—watch TV—can't—in the evening
d—help his mom make breakfast—have to/must—every morning
f—clean his room—have to/must—every Saturday

2a My parents.(答案不唯一)

2b Get up now and make your bed; Don't leave the dirty dishes in the kitchen; can't be late; don't be noisy; don't eat in class; can't play basketball after school; must do my homework; can play only on weekends; must read a book before I can watch TV; have to go to bed before 10:00

2c **1.**can't; can **2.**must
3.must; can
4.can't
5.have to

3a Can; have to; have to; must/have to; can't; must; can't; have to; can

▶ **Self Check**

1 arrive late; be noisy; listen to; is strict; follow the rules

2 **2.**Please listen to the teacher carefully./We have to listen to the teacher carefully.
3.Don't be noisy in the library./We can't be noisy in the library.
4.Please speak English in English class./We have to speak English in English class.
5.Please eat in the dining hall./We have to eat in the dining hall.

Unit 5 Why do you like pandas?

▶ **Section A**

1a **1.**a **2.**f **3.**c **4.**e **5.**d **6.**b

1b checked: panda, giraffe, koala

2a **1.**pandas—kind of interesting—China
2.koalas—very cute—Australia
3.lions—really scary—South Africa

2b pandas; kind of; China

3a Where; They're; like; don't; Why; because; do; cool

▶ **Section B**

1a **1.**d **2.**e **3.**b **4.**e **5.**c **6.**a **7.**f **8.**e

1b circled: smart, lazy, cute, beautiful, shy

1c

Animals	Mary's words	Tony's words
elephants	interesting, really smart	lazy
pandas	beautiful, kind of shy	kind of cute

2b checked:Let's Save the Elephants

2c Importance in Thailand:a white elephant on it; good luck
Facts and figures:cut down; ivory; only about 3,000 elephants; 100,000
Abilities: soccer or music; draw very; remember
How to save them:trees; buy; March 13th

3a beautiful; Africa; years; like; because; lives

3b Beibei is five years old. She lives in China. She is very cute, but she's shy. Now she is in Beijing Zoo.

▶ **Self Check**

2 A:What animals do you like?
B:I like lions.
A:Why do you like lions?
B:Because they're big and beautiful.
A:Where are they from?
B:They're from Africa.

Unit 6 I'm watching TV.

▶ **Section A**

1a **1.**i **2.**d **3.**g **4.**a **5.**h **6.**e **7.**b **8.**c **9.**f

1b a.1 b.8 c.5

2a **1.**—a **2.**—b

2b are; doing; watching TV; listening to a CD; boring; interesting; go to

3a **3.**Mary's parents drink tea after dinner.
4.Bill is talking on the phone now.
5.Becky and Bob watch TV on weekends.

3b 5, 8, 2, 7, 4, 1, 3, 6

▶ **Section B**

1a

Places	Activities
1.pool	swimming

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

2.supermarket	shopping
3.library	reading

1c

Names	Places	Activities
Alice	supermarket	shopping (buying milk and bread)
Mike	school	playing basketball
Lisa	library	reading

2b 1.Because today is the Dragon Boat Festival.
2.Yes, he does. He misses his family and wishes to have his mom's delicious *zongzi*.

2c living—with a family; reading—a story; making—food; talking—on the phone; studying—in the US; watching—a race

3a are watching TV; is reading a newspaper; is talking on the phone

▶ Self Check

2 What are you doing now
Do you want to play soccer
What is Tony doing
Is Steve studying, too

Unit 7 It's raining!

▶ Section A

1a 1.a 2.b 3.e 4.c 5.d

1b a.Toronto b.Boston d.Moscow e.Shanghai

2a From the left to the right: 2, 3, 4, 1

2b 1.c 2.a 3.d 4.b

3a 1.am doing; do 2.is playing; plays
3.Is; studying; is studying
4.are making; make
5.Is; talking; talks

3b a.It's sunny and warm. He's playing the guitar.
b.It's windy. They are hiking.
c.It's cold. They are cooking.
d.It's hot and humid. He is writing.
e.It's raining. They are playing football.

▶ Section B

1a 1.d 2.a 3.e 4.b 5.c

1c

Mary	not bad	I'm visiting my grandmother.	hot, dry, sunny
Eric	great	I'm having a party.	terrible, cold, raining

2b Top postcard:Picture a
Bottom postcard:Picture b

2c

Su Lin	Canada	warm and sunny	sitting by the pool and drinking orange juice
Dave	Europe	cool and cloudy	taking a vacation in the mountains and writing to Jane

3a windy; snowy; buying; playing; skating; taking

▶ Self Check

1 Feelings:great, pretty good, terrible, not bad...
Weather:cool, warm, hot, cold, windy, cloudy, rainy, snowy, sunny...
Activities:playing ping-pong/volleyball/basketball/soccer/the piano, taking a photo, skating...

2 A: Hello? Jenny speaking.
B: Hi, Jenny. It's Steve here. May I speak to Laura, please?
A: Sorry, she's not at home. Can I take a message?
B: Yes. Could you ask her to call me at 8765-4321?
A: Sure, no problem.
B: Thank you. Bye.

3 4 5
2 3
6 1

Unit 8 Is there a post office near here?

▶ Section A

1a 1.f 2.a 3.e 4.i 5.c 6.b 7.h 8.g 9.d

1b restaurant; post office; hospital; street

2a From the left to the right: 4, 6, 2, 3, 5, 1

2b 2.across from 3.on 4.next to
5.in front of 6.behind

3a 1.It's between the hospital and the post office.
2.Yes, there is.
3.It's next to the police station.
4.It's next to the bank.
5.No, there isn't.

3b 1.The restaurant is on North Street and behind the police station.
2.The bank is on New Street, between the hospital and the post office.
3.The hotel is on Center Street and in front of the park.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

▶ **Section B**

1a 1.a 2.c 3.b

1b A.restaurant B.hotel

1c hotel; along; left; right; next to; bank; hotel; Go; Turn; across from

2b Anna—2; John—3; Lisa—1

2c **1.**She likes watching the monkeys climbing around in the zoo.

2.Yes, she does. Because she thinks when the monkeys fight, they look like her friends and her.

3.He likes to exercise at the park.

4.Yes, I do.

5.Just go down North Road and turn left. The library is across from the park.

3a library; supermarket; post office; library; park; hotel

▶ **Self Check**

1 free; enjoy; climb; spend

Unit 9 What does he look like?

▶ **Section A**

1a 2.b 3.a 4.a 5.h 6.f 7.g 8.c 9.d

1b tall; curly hair; h

2a **1.**He is tall. **2.**She has long straight hair.

3.He is short.

2b

is	heavy, tall	of medium height, thin	short
has	curly hair	long straight hair	short hair

3a is:heavy, thin, young, tall, short, of medium height

has:short hair, curly hair, straight hair, long hair

3b does; is; has; Is; isn't; is; have; has; is

▶ **Section B**

1a 2.a 3.c 4.b 5.c 6.a 7.c 8.b

1c Job singer movie actress

1d

Looks like	really tall, really thin, curly hair, funny glasses	long blonde hair, of medium height, cool, beautiful

2a young↔old; fat↔thin; tall↔short; short↔long; curly↔straight

2b The third picture shows the real criminal.

2c **1.**Joe Brown **2.**a picture of the criminal

3.the criminal

4.to draw a good picture of each criminal

5.many people **6.**the criminal

3a looks; handsome; straight; glasses; shoes

▶ **Self Check**

1 Height:tall, short, of medium height

Build:thin, fat, heavy

Hair:long, straight, short, curly, brown, blonde, black, grey

Other features:glasses, a round face, a small mouth, big eyes, a big nose...

Unit 10 I'd like some noodles.

▶ **Section A**

1a **2.**b **3.**c **4.**d **5.**e **6.**f **7.**a **8.**h

1b Special 1

2a **1.**noodles **2.**beef **4.**chicken **5.**tomatoes **6.**cabbage **7.**potatoes

2b (1) large (2) chicken (3) potato (4) cabbage (5) medium (6) beef (7) tomato

3a **2.**a **3.**f **4.**c **5.**e **6.**b

3b **1.**I'd like chicken/beef/tomato noodles.

2.What size would you like? I'd like a medium bowl, please.

3.Is there any cabbage in the beef noodles? No, there isn't.

▶ **Section B**

1a **2.**g **3.**a **4.**h **5.**c **6.**e **7.**i **8.**d **9.**f

1c 398-2845; chicken; cabbage; carrot; tomato soup; green tea; two; orange

2b

Country	Food	Special meaning
UK	a birthday cake with a candy in it	The child with the candy is lucky.
China	birthday cakes; long noodles; eggs	Long noodles are a symbol of long life. Eggs are a symbol of life and good luck.

2c **1.**He or she blows out all the candles in one go.

2.A candy.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3.Because the long noodles are a symbol of long life.

4.They eat special foods for good luck.

3a specials; kinds; strawberry; bowl; order

▶ **Self Check**

2 1.there is 2.There are 3.there isn't

Unit 11 How was your school trip?

▶ **Section A**

1a 2.b 3.a 4.c 5.f 6.d

1b circled:milked a cow; went for a walk; talked with a farmer

2a checked: What did you see? Did you ask him any questions?

Do they grow apples? Were they good?

2b 1.T 2.T 3.T 4.F 5.T

3a was; Did; go; Did; Did; see; went; was was; had; went; climbed; saw; ate; played; got; worried; didn't; came

▶ **Section B**

1a 1.a 2.c 3.b 4.e 5.d 6.f

1b 1.It was terrible. 2.It was great.

1c

	went to the countryside	climbed a mountain	went to an art museum	saw some paintings	drew pictures
Tony			√	√	√
Jane	√	√			

2a √:interesting; lovely; exciting; cool; lucky; delicious; great; ×:difficult; boring; terrible

2b 1.Yes, Helen and Jim went on the same trip.

2. Helen thought the trip was great, but Jim didn't like the trip at all.

2c

	Helen	Jim
the trip	exciting	terrible
the train	fast	slow
the museum	really interesting	big; boring; dark
the gift shop and gifts	lovely, not expensive	expensive

3a exciting; animals; gift shop; gifts

3b boring; saw a lot of animals; the gift shop; the things in the gift shop were expensive

▶ **Self Check**

2 1.was; was; did; do; fed; swam

2.Did; have; Did; go; went; was; saw

Unit 12 What did you do last weekend?

▶ **Section A**

1a 2.d 3.e 4.f 5.b 6.c

1b a.Sunday night b.Saturday afternoon

c.Saturday morning d.Saturday night

e.Sunday afternoon f.Sunday morning

2a underlined: 2.my homework 3.English 4.farm 5.cows

2b 2.B 3.C 4.J 5.J

3a 1.What; Who 2.How; Where 3.What; When

3b saw; was; climbed; ran away; said

▶ **Section B**

1a 1.d 2.c 3.f 4.e 5.a 6.b

1c

Sally	Jim
did her homework	sang and played the guitar
studied for a test	flew a kite in the park
went to the library	had dinner with his friends

2b 1.It was interesting but scary.

2.They went to a small village in India.

3.She was so scared that she couldn't move.

4.They shouted to their parents.

5.Their father jumped up and down to scare the snake. Because snakes can't hear but they can feel things moving.

6.Don't go near snakes.

2c 6 2 8 4 7 5 1 3

3a did my homework; helped my mother; went to the library; played football; watched TV

▶ **Self Check**

1 从上到下，从左到右：go; go; pick; take; kite; cow; by; for

2 Where did you go; Who did you go with; What did you do; Did you learn anything

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料